

FreeFlow®

Web Services

Print Provider

User Guide

Xerox Corporation
Global Knowledge & Language Services
800 Phillips Road
Building 845
Webster, New York 14580

Copyright © 1996-2007 Xerox Corporation. All rights reserved. XEROX®, Xerox Canada Ltd®, Xerox Limited®, FreeFlow®, The Document Company® and all identifying numbers used in connection with the Xerox products mentioned in this publication are trademarks of XEROX CORPORATION. Copyright protection claimed includes all forms and matters of copyrightable material and information now allowed by statutory or judicial law or hereinafter granted, including without limitations, material generated from the software programs which are displayed on the screen such as styles, templates, icons, screen displays looks, etc.

While every care has been taken in the preparation of this material, no liability will be accepted by Xerox Corporation arising out of any inaccuracies or omissions. Printed in the United States of America.

Other company trademarks are acknowledged as follows:

Adaptec®, the Adaptec logo, SCSISelect®, and EZ-SCSI® are trademarks of Adaptec, Inc.

Adobe PDFL - Adobe PDF Library Copyright © 1987-2005 Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Adobe®, the Adobe logo, Acrobat®, the Acrobat logo, Acrobat Reader®, Distiller®, Adobe PDF JobReady™, and PostScript®, and the PostScript logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries. All instances of the name PostScript in the text are references to the PostScript language as defined by Adobe Systems Incorporated unless otherwise stated. The name PostScript also is used as a product trademark for Adobe Systems' implementation of the PostScript language interpreter, and other Adobe products.

Copyright 1987 - 2005 Adobe Systems Incorporated and its licensors. All rights reserved.

Autologic® is a registered trademark of Autologic Information International, Inc.

Compaq® and QVision® are registered United States Patent and Trademark Office, for Compaq Computer Corporation.

DEC, DEC RAID, and Redundant Array of Independent Disks are registered trademarks of Digital Equipment Corporation.

Dundas - This software contains material that is (c) 1997-2000 DUNDAS SOFTWARE LTD., all rights reserved.

Imaging Technology provided under license by Accusoft Corporation.

ImageGear © 1996-2005 by AccuSoft Corporation. All Rights Reserved.

Intel® and Pentium® are registered trademarks of Intel Corporation.

Novell® and NetWare® are registered trademarks of Novell, Inc. in the United States and other countries.

Oracle® is a registered trademark of Oracle Corporation Redwood City, California

TMSSequoia - ScanFix® Image Optimizer Copyright © TMSSEQUOIA, Inc. 1991-2000. All rights reserved.

Sony™ and Storage by Sony™ are trademarks of Sony.

PANTONE™ and other Pantone, Inc. trademarks are the property of Pantone Inc.

Preps™ is a registered trademark of Creo Inc. All rights reserved.

Quark® and QuarkXpress® are registered trademarks of Quark, Inc.

StorageView™ is a trademark of CMD Technology, Inc.

TIFF® is a registered trademark of Aldus Corporation.

Windows®, Windows XP®, Windows Server® 2003, and Internet Explorer are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation; Microsoft® and MS-DOS® are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Portions Copyright © 2001 artofcode LLC.

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

Portions Copyright © 2001 URW++. All Rights Reserved.

This product includes software developed by the Apache Software Foundation.

Copyright © 1999-2003 The Apache Software Foundation. All rights reserved.

This software is based in part on the work of Graeme W. Gill.

© Press-sense Ltd. 2002-2007. All rights reserved.

Includes Adobe® PDF Libraries and Adobe Normalizer technology

The Graphics Interchange Format © is the Copyright property of CompuServe Incorporated. GIFSM is a Service Mark property of CompuServe Incorporated.

Portions contain an implementation of the LZW algorithm licensed under U.S. Patent 4,558,302.

Parts of this software Copyright © 2004-2006 Enterprise Distributed Technologies Ltd. All Rights Reserved.

Parts of this software Copyright © 1995-2003, The Cryptix Foundation Limited. All Rights Reserved.

Parts of this software are a SSLv3/TLS implementation written by Eric Rescorla and licensed by Claymore Systems, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

Parts of this software Copyright © 2002, Lee David Painter and Contributors. Contributions made by Brett Smith, Richard Pernavas, Erwin Bolwidt.

Parts of this software Copyright © 1995-2005, Jean-loup Gailly and Mark Adler.

All other product names and services mentioned in this publication are trademarks of their respective companies. They are used throughout this publication for the benefit of those companies, and are not intended to convey endorsement or other affiliation with the publication.

Companies, names, and data used in examples herein are fictitious unless otherwise noted.

Changes are periodically made to this document. Changes, technical inaccuracies, and typographical errors will be corrected in subsequent editions.

Contents

Chapter One:	Introduction	1
	Guide Overview	3
	Guide Structure	3
	Conventions Used in this Guide	3
	Frequently Used Terminology	4
	Getting Started	6
	Desktop Utilities.....	6
	Web Services Operation Tabs.....	7
	System Users Privileges	8
	Print Buyer User-Privileges Tables.....	9
Chapter Two:	Info Center	11
	Introduction to Info Center	13
	Info Center: Links.....	15
Chapter Three:	Tasks	17
	Overview	19
	Section I: Production	20
	Job Info Panel.....	23
	Preflight.....	41
	Attachments.....	42
	Printing Queue Panel	43
	Section II: Delivery	44
	Jobs for Delivery Pane	45
	Batch Order Panel	46
	Shipped Deliveries Panel	49
Chapter Four:	Customers	51
	Overview	53
	Customer Pane	53
	Customer Panels.....	56
	Section I: Account Panel	57
	Identity Elements	57
	Customer Administrator Elements.....	58
	Section II: Preferences Panel	61
	Utilities	61
	PDF Preview	62

Self Registration.....	63
Pricing	64
GUI	69
Branding	70
Section III: Users Panel	71
General.....	71
Shipping and Billing	74
Section IV: User Groups	78
General.....	78
Users.....	79
Section V: Departments Panel.....	80
Section VI: Cost Centers Panel	82
Cost Center List Pane.....	82
Configuration Panel.....	83
Section VII: Templates Panel.....	84
Templates Panel Elements	84
Section VIII: Catalog Library Panel	102
Toolbar	103
Add Templates	103
Template Setup	105
Properties / Export HTML / Send MailToPrint	106
Approval Workflow.....	109
Section IX: Account Links Panel.....	111
Account Link Pane	111
Section X: Image Library Panel.....	115
Section XI: E-Mail Panel.....	117
Events Contacts	118

Chapter Five: Management.....	121
Overview	123
Section I: Track Jobs	124
Job Status Bar	124
Job Status Panel	125
Search Window.....	127
Job Information Panel.....	132
Section II: Job Type Library.....	142
Simple Jobs.....	143
Job Type Pane	143
Job Subtype Pane.....	144
Paper Types Available.....	146
Job Type Library Taskbar.....	149
Job Type Groups.....	173
Section III: Inventory	174

	Search.....	175
	Column Selection	176
	Inventory Template Information Panel.....	176
	Section IV: Branding	185
	Skins.....	185
	Customization	186
	Select Language to Edit.....	192
Chapter Six:	Settings.....	195
	Overview	197
	Section I: General.....	198
	System Properties Window	199
	Pricing Window	203
	E-Mail Window	206
	Production Window	209
	Paper Sizes Window.....	210
	Languages Window.....	212
	Fonts Window	213
	Privileges.....	214
	Job Expiration	215
	Customize Fields.....	216
	Section II: Site	217
	Contact Information.....	217
	Print Provider Accounts.....	218
	Terms and Conditions	221
	Section III: Output Devices	222
	Output Devices Pane	223
	Output Device Parameters Panels	224
	Machine Panel	228
	General Panel.....	229
	Output Channels Panel.....	231
	Imposition Panel	239
	Press Setup Panel	246
	Speed and Waste	247
	Labor Charge Panel	254
	Click Charge Panel.....	256
	Section IV: Stock	257
	Stock.....	257
	Section V: Finishing	261
	Finishing Type Pane	262
	Pricing Setup Panels	262
	Section VI: Shipping	268
	Carriers Window.....	268
	Shipping Methods.....	269

Shipping Method Groups	270
Section VII: Integrations	271
Data Export	271
Credit Card.....	272
External Systems	273
Import/Export Resources	274
 Chapter Seven: Appendix.....	 277
Server and Client Specifications.....	279
Server Specifications	279
Generic Pricing Mechanism	281
Production Cost Pricing	282
The Job Price	290
Anti-virus Scanning	291
Parent Customer	293
Print Provider Side.....	294
The Print Buyer Side	296
Index	299

Glossary of Terms

Account Link Contains all of the necessary order information to enable the Print Provider to create an *Order* report that can be used for invoicing. The *Order* report can also be transferred to any Print Provider accounting system, using the *Data Export* module.

Administrator Privilege Enables a Print Buyer or employee of a Print Buyer organization to take responsibility for the complete operation/ management of the *FreeFlow Web Services* system. In addition, a user with *Administrator* privileges has the ability to create *MailToPrint* Jobs.

Catalog Collection of templates containing Job designs from which the Print Buyer can choose in order to create an entirely new, unique Job. The templates themselves cannot be altered without Print Buyer Administrator permission.

Copier Output Device Output device similar to the *Digital* output device but without supporting spot colors.

Crash Numbering *Crash Numbering* is the printing of the same number on several succeeding copies, using carbon copies or carbonate-backed pages.

Designer Privilege Enables an employee of the Print Buyer organization to save Jobs and create *Forms*. A *Designer* can only create Jobs using the *Form Editor* or *Variable Data*.

Digital Output Device Printing device that is computer driven and capable of changing images from one copy to the next.

Factor A multiplier that enables computing the actual speed at which *Run Sheets* are produced as well as the actual amount of waste that has accumulated during the production process. These speed and waste figures are then used in computing the final price of the Job.

Flat Page Size The dimensions of a sheet of paper, before having been folded (as opposed to *Job Page Size*).

Folder Balance Target folder for the output imposition PDF.

GSM The unit of measurement for paper weight (grams per square meter).

Guest New or occasional users who can create Jobs based on Print Provider catalogs.

Imposition The positioning of one or more pages on a *Press Sheet* such as to minimize wastage in paper and labor.

Data Export *Data Export* is an add-on module for *Web Services* that implements the concept of *Web Services* as an open system which can be easily integrated with and conveyed to the various peripheral systems existing in an organization (such as *Accounting* and *Estimating*).

Transference of data is “Event Driven”, whereby data is transferred at the time that a specific event occurs. Data transference is accomplished by the establishment of links in the *Web Services* Job processing workflow.

FreeFlow Web Services A workflow-management backbone, designed specifically for the Printing industry. *FreeFlow Web Services* addresses all of the needs of the Print Provider, provides production-flow management, a complete e-Commerce-ready platform, and information management capabilities. *FreeFlow Web Services* also enables the Print Provider to provide Print Buyers with such *e-Procurement* tools as *Variable Data*, one-to-one marketing, *Template* and *Image Library* management, and online pricing and estimating.

Job Page Size The dimensions of a sheet of paper, after having been folded (as opposed to *Flat Page Size*).

Job Ticket A document that specifies a Job's production and finishing materials and schedules as well as the delivery and pricing details.

Job Type Pricing The Print Provider has the ability to price a specific *Job Type*. This method carries out pricing according to *Price Lists*.

Launch Pad *Order Jobs* page that provides the user with quick/direct access to frequently used functions of Job ordering and Job tracking.

Manager Privilege Enables an employee of the Print Provider organization to view the *Info Center* as well as the *Task* and *Management* parameters. A *Manager* can create new *Job Tickets* and can modify templates and pricing.

Manual Impose An option that is selected by the Print Provider when a Job cannot be imposed by the system and has to be imposed by a third-party tool.

Manual Pricing When the Print Provider has decided not to provide the Print Buyer with automatic, online pricing, the Print Buyer receives a *Price Not Available* message. The Print Provider can then view the Job and its properties and determine the Job's price. After determining the Job's price, the Print Provider can manually enter the price into the system.

Markup An additional charge (as a percentage) to the production price, which serves as a part of the Print Provider's profit.

Offset Output Device *Offset* output devices utilize the process whereby a printing plate first transfers its inked image areas onto a rubber blanket mounted on a cylinder in the printing press and then the rubber blanket transfers (or offsets) the inked image onto the paper as it passes through the press.

Operator Privilege Enables an employee of the Print Provider organization to take responsibility of the operation of the workflow of the *Web Services* system.

Output Channels *Web Services* window that enables the Print Provider to direct files either to an output device or to a folder from where the file can later be retrieved and sent on to an output device.

Output Device Any machine that produces printed material.

OutSource Option that enables the Print Provider to forward orders to other Print Providers (Partner Printers) for production.

Page One side of a *Press Sheet*.

Parent Sheet The size of a sheet as a raw material, before being cut to the *Run Sheet* size.

PDF (Portable Document Format) The *Adobe Acrobat* file format that allows representing documents in a manner that is independent of the original application software, hardware and operating system that was used to create the documents.

PDF Spooler Enables directing *PDF's* to any output device in the Print Producer's system.

Print Buyer Any individual or organization that purchases printed material produced by a printing facility.

Print Buyer Side *Web Services* is a two-sided system that provides an open line of communication between the Print Provider and the Print Buyer. The *Print Buyer Side* refers to the *Web Services* interface that is viewed by the Print Buyer.

Print Driver A feature that serves as the communication link between Print Buyer and Print Provider. Working with the *Print Driver*, the Print Buyer can send a Job order it directly to the Print Provider in the same manner as printed matter is sent to an in-house printer.

Print Provider Individual or organization that produces printed material.

Print Provider Side *Web Services* is a two-sided system that provides an open line of communication between the Print Provider and the Print Buyer. The *Print Provider Side* refers to the *Web Services* interface that is viewed by the Print Provider.

Production Cost Pricing This is the basic pricing method. The system calculates the Job price, according to the cost of labor, price per click, raw materials (paper) and finishing.

Process Colors The four basic colors of ink used in process color printing are cyan, magenta, yellow and black. These ink colors are transparent and "process" with each other when overprinted in predetermined amounts. i.e. when cyan overprints yellow, it produces green, when yellow overprints magenta, it produces orange. Controlled screen tint combinations of the four basic colors allow the full spectrum of colors to be produced on a printing press.

Re-impose The *Web Services* system enables the Print Provider to change the imposition of Jobs arriving at the *Approval Queue*, using new imposition parameters. These new parameters over-ride any former parameters chosen by the system.

RIP *Raster Image Processor*; the hardware and/or software that translate *PDL (Page Description Language)* files into device specific data in a printer or image setter.

Run (length of run) The total number of sheets ordered.

Run Size *Press Sheet* size, chosen by the system, to be used for printing the selected Job on the chosen output device.

Selective Upload A feature that allows the Print Buyer to create a *Form* template from a closed file, without the use of code or script. The modifications and changes are carried out through the use of professional, generic tools that do not require expertise.

Setup All activities that are required in order to prepare an output device for a production run.

Sheet Wise Technique of printing one side of a sheet with one set of plates, then the other side of the sheet with a set of different plates.

Spot Colors Colors that are specified in a document, for text or graphical features. A preferred system of *Spot Color* classification is The *Pantone Matching System (PMS)* colors, which were developed specifically for color identification. The system assists clients, designers and Print Providers in the communication process for color specification on print orders. Each *PMS* color has a unique number and formula for ink mixing.

Super User Privilege Enables an employee of the Print Buyer organization to create Jobs through the use of *Templates*, the *Form* and *Variable Data*. After creating a Job, the *Super User* can also order the Job.

Supervisor Privilege An employee of the Print Buyer organization who has been enabled by the Print Buyer Administrator to be the operative manager of the *Web Services* system.

Surcharge An additional charge that is levied as a percentage of the original charge when extra demands are made to the printing process (i.e. *Urgent* and *Express* time printing).

System Administrator Privilege A Print Provider or employee of the Print Provider organization who is responsible for the administration of the Print Provider side of the *Web Services* system and the general settings of the system.

Template A Job file which has been saved in order to serve as the basis for the structure and general layout of future Jobs.

Template Pricing The Print Provider can price specific templates. Identical templates can be priced differently for different Print Buyers. This method carries out pricing according to *Price Lists*.

Type One Fonts Industry-standard outline font technology that enables type to be scaled to any size while staying sharp and clear.

URL (Uniform Resource Locator) Name scheme used to access Web documents or resources.

User Any individual in the Print Provider and Print Buyer organization who is working with the *Web Services* system.

User Privilege Enables an employee of the Print Buyer organization to order Jobs through the use of *Templates*, *Variable Data Form* and *Variable Data*. Orders placed by an employee with a *User* privilege require *Supervisor* approval before they are submitted to the Print Provider.

Variable Data Job A print Job that utilizes *Web Services'* ability to incorporate *Variable Data* with the Job's content. Using printing technology unique to *Web Services*, all Print Jobs can be personalized with text and images, to give superior presentation without the expense of buying, printing and affixing additional printed material.

Waste Unusable paper or paper damage during normal Setup, printing or binding operations.

Chapter One: Introduction

Guide Overview

FreeFlow Web Services is the workflow-management backbone, designed for the Printing industry. Addressing all of the needs of the Print Provider, *Web Services* provides production-flow management, a complete e-Commerce-ready platform, and information management capabilities. *Web Services* also enables the Print Provider to provide Print Buyers with such e-Procurement tools as Variable Data, one-to-one marketing, Template and Image Library management, and online pricing and estimating.

The *Print Provider Guide* is designed for all Print Providers that intend to work with the *Web Services* system and encompasses all facets of Print Provider administration and production workflow. The primary goals of the *Print Provider Guide* are as follows:

- To acquaint the Print Provider with the distinctive software features of the *Web Services* system
- To provide step-by-step instruction for entering and organizing data that will be processed by the *Web Services* application for automatic price generation and Job production
- To assist the Print Provider in configuring the *Web Services* system settings
- To assist in carrying out a fast implementation of the *Web Services* system with the objective of improving and enhancing the business of Print Provider

Guide Structure

The *Print Provider Guide* has been divided into seven chapters. Chapter One outlines the structure, conventions and terminology used in the Guide while the succeeding chapters describe the concepts and procedures involved in performing application tasks. Each chapter has been sub-divided into sections that correspond to the names of the tabs appearing at the top of each main window. Each section opens with an introduction to the application features, a general screenshot and the interface structure. The interface structure is followed by a more detailed description, additional screenshots and operating instructions. The application features are described in a logical manner so that initial administrative and production tasks can be easily carried out.

Conventions Used in this Guide

The following list describes the conventions used in this *Guide*:

Note: Notes provide additional information for the purpose for clarification.

Caution: Cautions identify actions or procedure steps that can result in incorrect system output or loss of data.

Frequently Used Terminology

The following is a description of the terminology used in describing the Print Provider interface structure:

- **Screen** Refers to the entire monitor screen, including the operating system toolbars.
- **Window** Part of the screen; opens by clicking on any of the *Workflow* or *Administration* tabs in the *Web Services* taskbar.
- **Panel** Part of a window; can contain sub-panels.
- **Sub-panel** Part of a panel.
- **Pane** A large box, usually located on the left side of the window.
- **Box** Usually used for typing in an entry; appears in a pane, panel or a sub-panel.
- **Dropdown Box** Accesses a menu of options. The menu is opened by clicking on the dropdown menu button; appears in a panel or a sub-panel.
- **Checkbox** Used for enabling or disabling a feature; can be selected or cleared; appears in a panel or a sub-panel.
- **Radio Button** Used for choosing a feature; can be activated or disabled; appears in a panel or a sub-panel.
- **Operation Button** Used for carrying out various operations; appears in a panel or a sub-panel, or below a pane.
- **Save Button** Used for saving the changes made by the user; usually appears in the bottom right-hand corner of a window or a panel.
- **Cancel Button** Used for canceling the changes made by the user; usually appears in the bottom right-hand corner of a window or a panel.

Terminology used in describing the Print Provider interface structure is graphically represented in the following figures. All names connected with this terminology will be highlighted in bold.

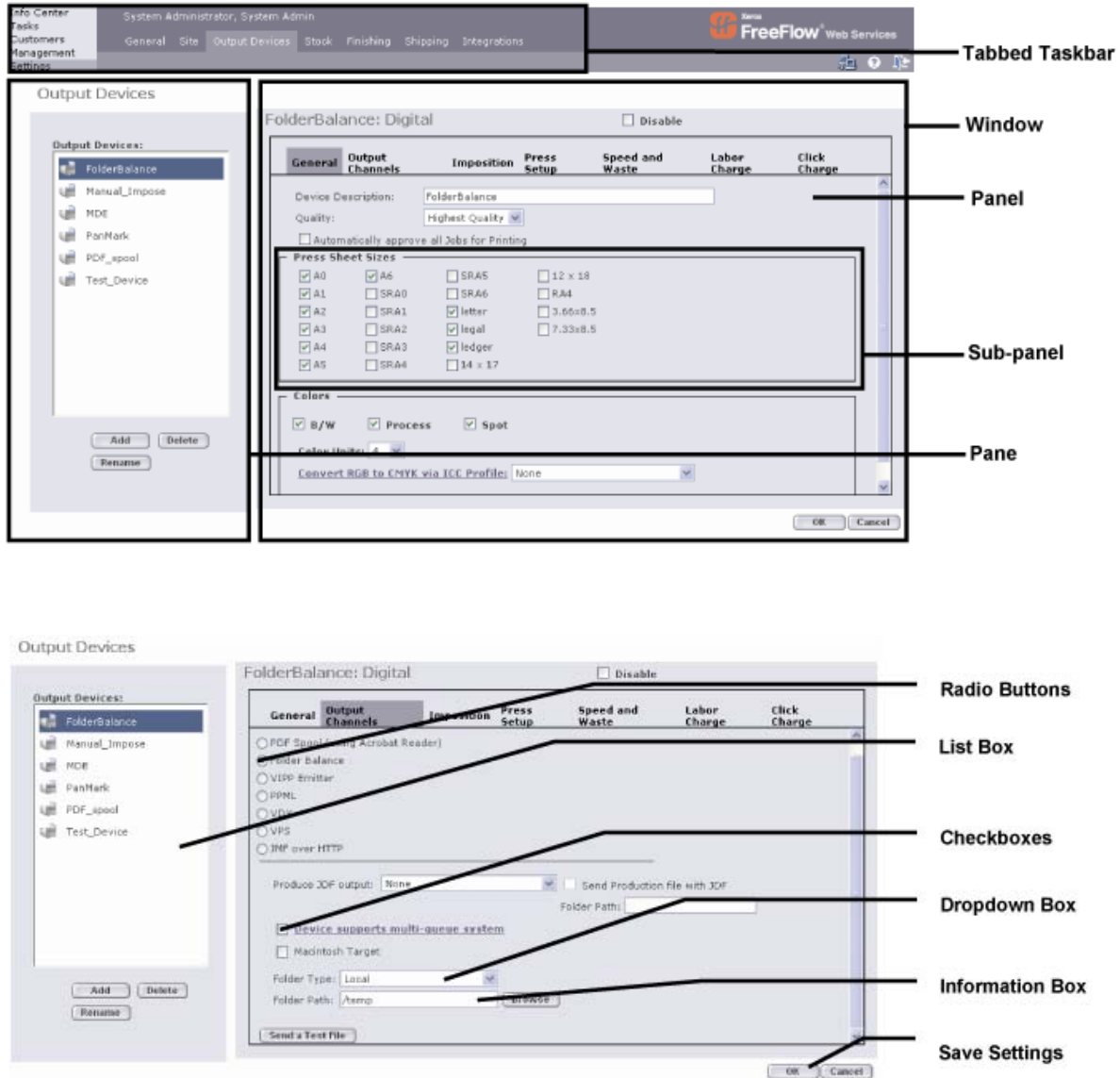


Figure 1: Frequently Used Terminology



Figure 2: Links

Getting Started

The *Web Services* system operates in the *Windows* environment, using the *Internet Explorer* as its browsing interface. In addition, Print Buyers can access the Print Buyer application pages from the MAC operating system.

Desktop Utilities

The desktop contains the following *Web Services* utilities:

- FreeFlow Web Services Toolbox
- Status Icon

FreeFlow Web Services Toolbox



Figure 3: FreeFlow Web Services Toolbox

The *FreeFlow Web Services Toolbox* appears, by default, in the top-right corner of the desktop. The following describes the *FreeFlow Web Services Toolbox* buttons:



- **Start FFWS** Starts running the *Internet Information Server* and the *Web Services* application.
- **Stop FFWS** Stops running the *Internet Information Server* and the *Web Services* application.
- **Restart FFWS** Stops and restarts the *Internet Information Server* and the *Web Services* application.
- **Log Window** Opens the system feedback window.
- **Task Manager** Opens the *Windows Task Manager*.
- **Explorer** Opens the *Windows Explorer* (file explorer).

Status Icon




Figure 4: Status Icon

The *Status* icon is located on the *Status* bar, in the bottom-right corner of the desktop. The two *Status* icon colors indicate the two operation modes. The following is a description of the *Status* icon colors:

- **Red FreeFlow Icon**  Indicates that the system is operating correctly; both the *Internet Information Server* and the *Web Services* application are running.
- **Red Exclamation Mark**  Indicates that the system is not operating correctly; either the *Internet Information Server* or the *Web Services* application is down. The *Connection Failure* prompt appears

Minimizing the FreeFlow Web Services Toolbox

In order to minimize the *FreeFlow Web Services Toolbox*, click the  button on the *FreeFlow Web Services Toolbox* title bar.

Maximizing the FreeFlow Web Services Toolbox

In order to maximize the *FreeFlow Web Services Toolbox*, click on the *Status* icon, located on the *Status* bar.

Closing the FreeFlow Web Services Toolbox and Icon

In order to close the *FreeFlow Web Services Toolbox* and the *Status* icon from the *Desktop*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Right-click on the *Status* icon; a pop-up menu appears.
- 2 In the pop-up menu, click on *Exit*.

Note: This action does not stop the *Web Services* application.

Web Services Operation Tabs

After the Print Provider has logged in to the Print Provider interface, **DO NOT USE** the browser toolbar buttons. Click the selected tab to refresh the display and use the tabs to navigate in the application. Back and Next buttons appear when appropriate.

Note: All of the browser buttons remain active.

Caution: **Do not** use *Back*, *Next* and *Refresh* buttons on your internet browser toolbar.

System Users Privileges

The following table lists the default *Web Services* system *Users* and describes their responsibilities.

System User	Description
Print Buyer Side	
Administrator	Has full <i>User Privileges</i> , including <i>Account Administration</i> . The <i>Administrator</i> can design Jobs, send the Jobs to the <i>Shopping Cart</i> and ultimately place orders. In addition, the <i>Administrator</i> has the responsibility to determine the <i>User Privileges</i> of all members of his or her organization.
Supervisor	Privileges are similar to <i>Administrator</i> but without access to <i>Account Administration</i> . The <i>Supervisor</i> can design Jobs, send the Jobs to the <i>Shopping Cart</i> and place orders.
Designer	Is responsible for designing Jobs and creating <i>Forms</i> . The <i>Designer</i> can create Jobs using <i>Variable Data Fields</i> and <i>Variable Data</i> .
Super User	Creates Jobs through the use of <i>Templates</i> , <i>Forms</i> and <i>Variable Data</i> and can ultimately order Jobs.
User	Creates Jobs through the use of <i>Templates</i> , <i>Form</i> and <i>Variable Data</i> but cannot order Jobs.
Guest	New or occasional users who can create Jobs based on <i>Print Account</i> catalogs.
Custom	As a default, creates Jobs through the use of <i>Templates</i> , <i>Form</i> and <i>Variable Data</i> but cannot order Jobs. Custom allows the Print Provider to create an additional user type and privileges.
Print Provider Side	
System Administrator	Responsible for the administration of the Print Provider side of the system and the general settings of the system.
Operator	Responsible for operating the workflow of the system.
Manager	Has the ability to view the <i>Info Center</i> as well as the <i>Task</i> and <i>Management</i> parameters. Can create new <i>Job Types</i> and can modify templates and pricing.

Print Buyer User-Privileges Tables

Print Buyer Privilege Level abilities are set as defaults by *Web Services*. However, the Print Provider has the option to change the abilities according to need.

To change *Privilege Level* abilities, clear or checkmark the various privileges in the *Settings/General/Privileges* window and then click on *OK*. To restore the *Privilege* defaults, click on *Reset Defaults*.

Privileges	Admin	Supervisor	Designer	Super User	User	Guest	Custom
User Administration	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Manage Template Library	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
View Jobs of other Users (from the same Customer)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Place an Order / Get Quote	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Upload Job Content	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Edit Job Properties	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Use Form Editor	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Use Variable Data	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Use Variable Data Archive	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Send MailToPrint	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Download Plug-ins	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
View Address Book	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Edit Contact Details (on My Account tab)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Use Get Quote Wizard	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Figure 5: Print Buyer User Privileges

Default Print Buyer User-Privileges

To change *User Type* abilities, clear or checkmark the various privileges in the *Settings/General/Privileges* window and then click on *OK*. To restore the *Privilege* defaults, click on *Reset Defaults*.

Privileges	Privilege Level						
	Administrator	Supervisor	Designer	Super User	User	Guest	Custom
User Administration	✓						
Manage Template Library	✓	✓	✓				
View Jobs of other Users (from the same Customer)	✓	✓	✓				
Place an Order/Get Quote	✓	✓		✓		✓ must self register	
Upload Job Content	✓	✓	✓				
Edit Job Properties	✓	✓	✓				
Use Form Editor	✓	✓	✓				
User Variable Data	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓
User Variable Data Archive	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓
Send MailToPrint	✓	✓					
Download Plugins	✓	✓	✓				
View Address Book	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

Print Provider User-Privileges

Feature	Privilege		
	System Admin	Operator	Manager
Print Provider Administration	✓		
Print Provider Track Jobs	✓	✓	✓
Print Provider Production	✓	✓	✓
Print Provider Delivery Desk	✓	✓	✓
Print Provider Info Center	✓	✓	✓
Pricing	✓		✓
Job Ticket Library	✓		✓
Customers	✓		✓

Chapter Two: Info Center

Introduction to Info Center

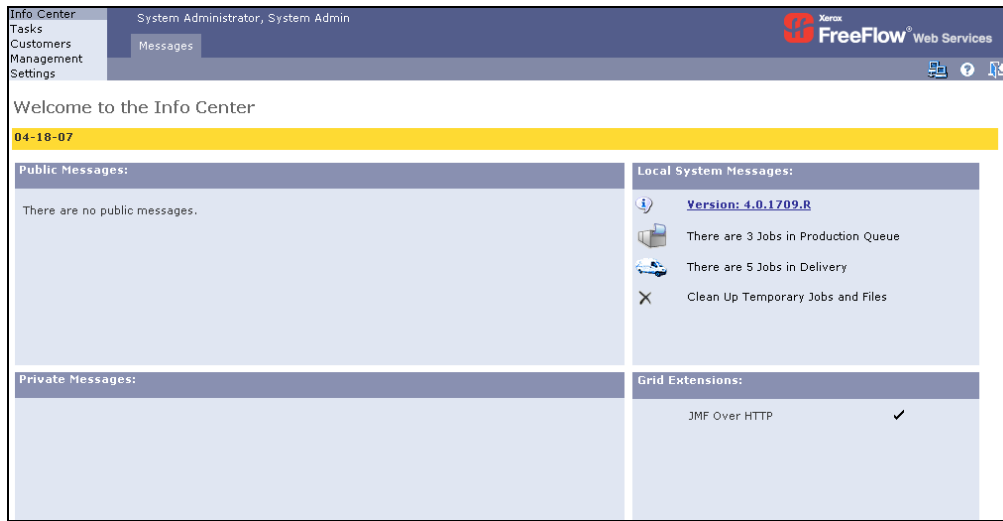





Figure 6: Web Services Info Center






The *FreeFlow Web Services Info Center* window opens immediately after logging in to the Print Provider interface. The window is divided into the following three panels:

- | | |
|-----------------------|---|
| Public Messages | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Platform from where Xerox can inform the Print Provider public of newsworthy events concerning <i>Web Services</i>. – Designed to display all messages concerning software updates, events, new products and additional marketing and product |
| Private Messages | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Platform from where Xerox can relay information to specific Print Providers – Designed to display only those messages that Xerox has sent specifically to the receiving Print Provider |
| Local System Messages | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Platform from where <i>Web Services</i> informs users of the status of the local system – Displays such workflow messages as the number of new Jobs in the <i>Production</i> and <i>Delivery</i> queues, as well as informs the user when licensed hours are running low. The <i>Local System Messages</i> panel also provides the <i>Version</i> link, which accesses the <i>Version Information</i> dialog box, containing all information concerning the version. |
| Grid Extensions | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – List of additional modules designed to enhance the capabilities of the system (when a checkmark appears, the modules are activated in the system). |

The *Web Services Info Center* displays the following links:

Connections 	For accessing the <i>Connected Users</i> dialog box, in order to gain information on the Print Buyers presently working with the system.
Help 	For accessing <i>Online Help</i> .
Logout 	Enables logging out of the system

The following table lists and describes the icons that appear in the *Local System Messages* panel

Icon	Description
Version 	Accesses the <i>Version Information</i> dialog box.
Production 	Notifies as to how many Jobs there are in the <i>Production</i> window.
Delivery 	Notifies as to how many Jobs there are in the <i>Delivery</i> window.
Warning 	Notifies that there is a specific problem or several simultaneous problems, such as: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The license is about to expire in a certain number of days • The license has already expired • There is a Decimal Symbol problem • There is a low amount of available disk space • There is a File Integrity problem
Clean Up 	Deletes all temporary Jobs and files from the system.

Info Center: Links

This section provides the following information:

- Username and User's Privilege (the username and privilege will appear in the same location, in each window, throughout the system)
- Connections Link
- Logout Link
- Web Services Version Link

Connections Link

Connected Users					
Customer	User Name	Privilege Level	Connections	e-Mail	Phone
Printer	System Administrator	System Admin	3	177vmadmin@press-sense...	

Figure 7: Connected Users Dialog Box

Clicking on the *Connections* link accesses the *Connected Users* dialog box, which contains a dynamic list of all of the users concurrently logged into the Print Provider's *Web Services* system. In addition to the *User's* names, the *Connect Users* dialog box displays the *Users* designated privilege, the number of connections at the customer site and the *User's* e-Mail and phone number.

Note: *Account Users* also appear in the *Connected Users* list under the *Customer* name "Printer".

Logout Link

The *Logout* link  allows the *User* to conveniently *Logout* from the *Web Services* system.

Note: As a default, when logging out, the *User* automatically accesses the *Print Provider Home Page*. To access a different page after logging out, see *Customize Link*, page 187).

FreeFlow Web Services Version Link

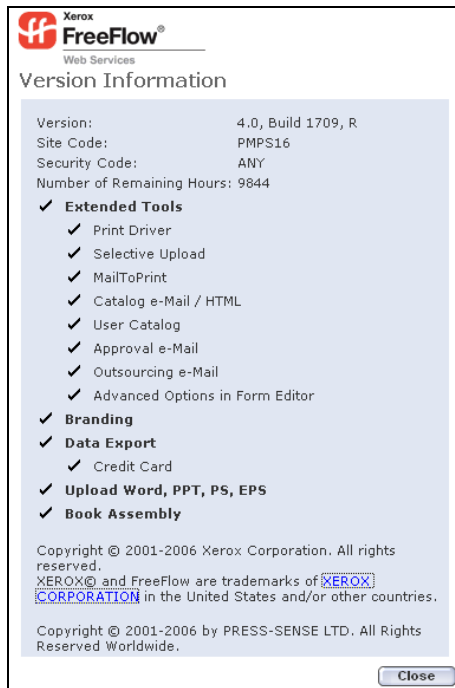


Figure 8: FreeFlow Web Services Version Link

Clicking on the *FreeFlow Web Services Version* link accesses the *Version Information* window which displays the following information:

- Version Number
- Site Code
- Security Code
- Number of remaining (Licensed) hours
- Branding Abilities
- Data Export Abilities
- Upload Abilities
- Book Assembly Abilities

Chapter Three: Tasks

Overview

The *Tasks* area of the application is the place where the Print Provider manages the production and delivery of all the incoming Jobs.

All production oriented tasks that are carried out by the Print Provider, have been divided up into the following two groups:

- Production, which includes all elements involved in the production of a print Job
- Delivery, which deals with the delivery of a print Job from the Print Provider to its final destination

Section I: Production

The *Production* window enables the Print Provider to manage the production workflow; from monitoring all of the Print Buyer's ordered Job information and automatic imposition schemes to previewing the Job as a high-res *PDF* and transferring the Job to the required output devices. The Print Provider can also preview *Job Tickets* with detailed information about production, finishing, delivery and pricing information that are being created automatically by the system for every single Job. The Jobs automatically appear in the *Production* approval queue window after the Print Buyer submits an order.

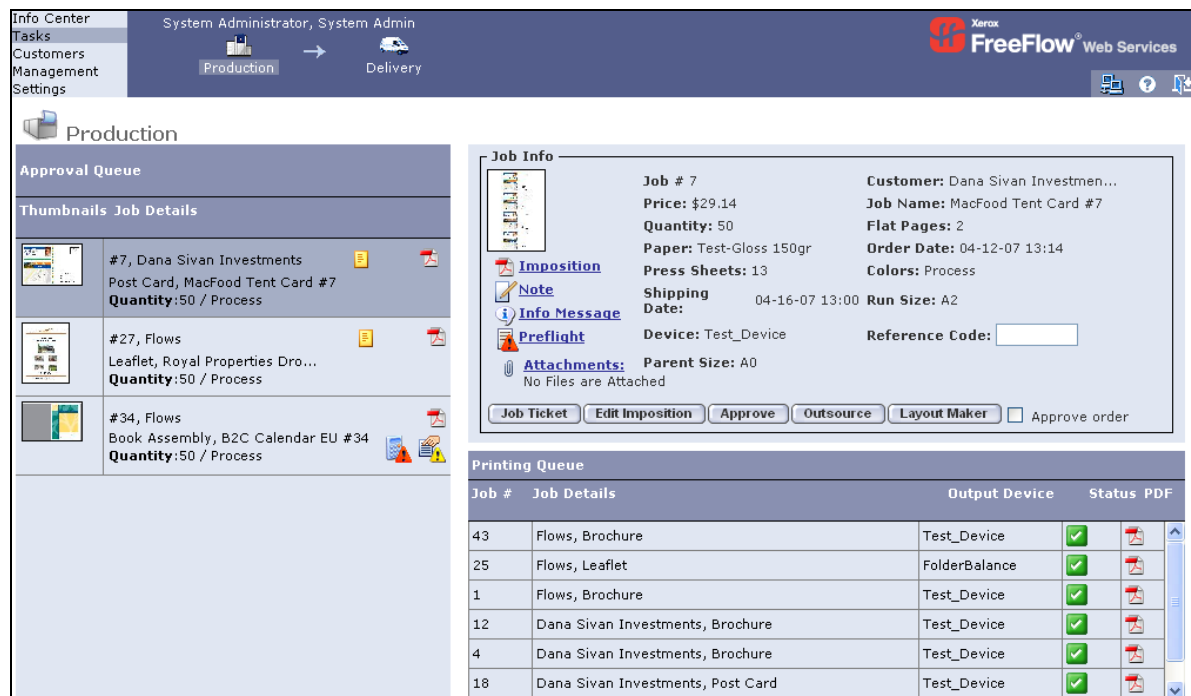


Figure 9: Production Queue

The *Production* window is composed of the following elements:














- **Approval Queue Pane** Displays Jobs ordered by the Print Buyer users and are awaiting approval and routing to production by the Print Provider.
- **Job Info Panel** Displays detailed information of a Job selected in the *Approval Queue* pane or in the *Printing Queue* panel, such as the imposition scheme, the output device and the press sheet (run) size for printing the selected Job. In addition, the Print Provider can use various operation buttons in order to create and print a *Job Ticket*, re-impose the Job, approve the Job for printing, and also outsource the Job to a partner Print Provider.
- **Printing Queue Panel** Displays Jobs that have been approved for printing.

In the *Approval Queue* pane, the Print Provider selects a Job in order to display all of its information in the *Job Info* panel. Jobs that are transferred to the *Approval* queue already have all of the printing parameters selected (such as press, run sheet size etc.) These settings are optimized according to the parameters entered by the Print Provider in the *Administration* windows and can be changed by re-imposing the Job (see *Edit Imposition*, page 29).

Jobs automatically enter the *Production Approval Queue* pane when the Print Buyer submits the order. In the panel, Jobs are presented chronologically, by the order of arrival to the *Approval Queue* pane.

Note: Presently, the *Production Approval* queue can display 800 Jobs, which are divided into 16 pages of 50 Jobs. If the queue exceeds 800 Jobs, the latest Jobs will be displayed only when space becomes available in the *Production Approval* queue.

The following table lists and describes the *Approval Queue* pane elements:

Element		Description
Job Thumbnail		Displays a thumbnail image of the Job's front page.
Job Details		Contain such Job information as the Job #, Print Buyer name, Job type, number of Job copies and color model.
PDF Preview Icon		The <i>PDF Preview</i> icon accesses a Hi-Res <i>PDF</i> preview of the Job. Where the Job is part of a combined Job, the <i>PDF Preview</i> icon accesses an <i>Imposition</i> proof.
Mismatch Icon		Warns of a disparity between the Job's properties and the uploaded file parameters. Clicking on a <i>Mismatch</i> icon accesses the <i>Mismatching Parameters</i> dialog box, which provides the Print Provider with an additional opportunity to match the Job's properties with the uploaded file parameters.
Price Error Icon		Notifies the presence of pricing problems. The system automatically links the Job to <i>Manual Impositioning</i> (the Print Provider has the option to re-impose the Job on any other machine). Clicking on the <i>Price Error</i> icon accesses the <i>Job Pricing</i> dialog box, which allows the Print Provider to modify the price, discount, <i>Express</i> charges and <i>Tax</i> . The <i>Job Pricing</i> dialog box also provides an option to notify the Print Buyer of these modifications.
Hidden Price		Indicates that the Job price cannot be accessed by the specific user.
Print Driver Icon		Notifies that the Job has arrived from the <i>Print Driver</i> .
Form Icon		Indicates that this Job has been created from a <i>Form</i> .
Variable Data Icon		Indicates that this Job contains <i>Variable Data</i> .
Combined Job Icon		Indicates that this Job has been imposed together with one or more other Jobs. Combined Jobs are created using the <i>Layout Maker</i> feature (see <i>Operation Buttons</i> , page 24).
VIPP Icon		Indicates a VIPP Variable Data Job.
Book Assembly Icon		Indicates that this is a <i>Book Assembly</i> Job.
Blank Files		Indicates a Job that does not contain data.
Jobs to Inventory		Indicates a Job that is to be printed and stored as inventory.
Job From Inventory		Indicates a Job that is to be shipped from inventory.

Job Info Panel

The *Job Info* panel contains a detailed *Job Description* that includes the *Job* and *Account* name, the *Job #*, the price, the number of copies, and the paper properties. In the *Job Info* panel, the Print Provider approves the selected Job. Before approving, the Print Provider can view the Job imposition scheme, review a *Job Ticket*, or re-impose the Job in order to carry out any changes. In addition, the *Job Info* panel provides the Print Provider with the ability to outsource the particular Job or to impose the Job together with other Jobs (See *Layout Maker*, page 39). The system automatically chooses the most cost-effective output device, press sheet (run) size and Job imposition. Job imposition is optimized according to the settings entered in the *Output Devices* windows and depends upon the run (press sheet) size and the selected duplex mode.







Job Info Panel Fields

The following is a description of the *Job Info* panel fields:

- **Job #** The Job serial number
- **Price** The Job price, in the currency defined in the *Settings: General/Pricing* window
- **Quantity** The number of copies requested by the Print Buyer
- **Paper** The *Paper Brand* name, texture and weight as specified in the *Paper Brand* panel of the *Settings: Stock Library* window
- **Press Sheets** The number of *Press Sheets*
- **Requested Date** The date of delivery that the Print Buyer has requested
- **Device** The output device on which the selected Job will be printed
- **Parent Size** The size of the paper that exists in the stock
- **Customer** The Print Buyer name
- **Job Name** The Job name designated by the Print Buyer
- **Flat Pages** The number of *Flat Pages* (unfolded size)
- **Order Date** The date that the Job was ordered
- **Colors** The color model: *B/W*, *Process* or *User Defined*
- **Run Size** Shows the press sheet size, chosen by the system, to be used for printing the selected Job on the chosen output device
- **Reference Code** The Print Provider reference code

Operation Buttons

The following table lists the *Job Information* panel operation buttons and icons and describes their functions:

Button		Function
Job Ticket		Accesses the <i>Job Ticket</i> window. After completing the <i>Job Ticket Timeline Properties</i> , the <i>Job Ticket</i> appears and can be printed out.
Re-impose		Allows the Print Provider to alter the various Job imposition parameters. After carrying out imposition changes, the Job momentarily disappears from the queue and is then returned to the head of the <i>Approval</i> queue. In order to view the parameter changes, the Print Provider must re-select the Job.
Approve		Transfers the Job to the assigned output device according to the <i>Job Type</i> . Moves the Job from the <i>Approval</i> queue to the <i>Printing Queue</i> .
Outsource		A feature that enables the Print Provider to outsource specific Jobs to partner-Print Providers.
Layout Maker		Enables the Print Provider to impose more than one Job on a press sheet, in order to reduce production costs.
Approve Order Checkbox		When the Print Provider selects a Job, selects this checkbox and clicks <i>Approve</i> , the <i>Approve</i> is applied to all the Jobs that were in the same order with the selected Job.
Imposition		Enables the Print Provider to preview the imposed Job.
Note		Accesses the <i>Edit Note</i> dialog box for editing internal notes as well as notes for the customer.
Problem		Where there is a problem (as with fonts), <i>Problem</i> accesses the <i>Job Report</i> dialog box. The <i>Job Report</i> displays the font types in use in the <i>PDF</i> preview and in the <i>Imposition</i> proof and provides a platform for presenting messages that can explain system warnings (i.e. when imposition could not be carried out with the specified parameters).
Info Message		<i>Info Message</i> accesses the <i>Job Report</i> dialog box. The <i>Job Report</i> displays the font types in use in the <i>PDF</i> preview and in the <i>Imposition</i> proof.
Preflight		Accesses the <i>File Upload Report</i> , which provides the Print Provider with the ability to examine the <i>PDF</i> file parameters before processing the Job.
Attachments		<i>Attachments</i> reports the number of attached files and accesses the <i>Attachments</i> dialog box, which enables uploading and downloading files.

Job Ticket

Job Ticket Creation Window

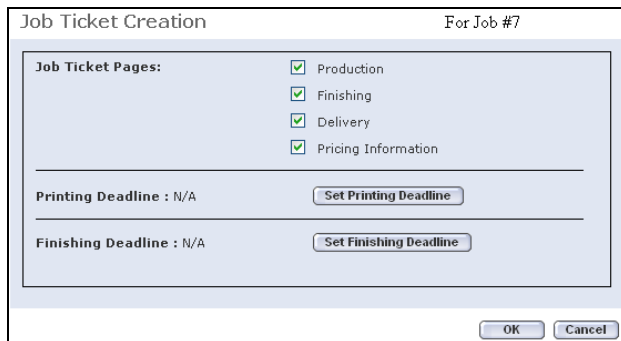


Figure 10: Job Ticket Creation Window

The *Job Ticket Creation* window is accessed when clicking on the *Job Ticket* button. In this window, the Print Provider chooses any combination of *Job Ticket* pages to be displayed. *Job Ticket* pages contain detailed information about production, finishing, delivery, and pricing. The *Job Ticket Creation* window also enables the Print Provider to set printing and finishing deadlines. After completing the *Job Ticket Creation* window and clicking on *OK*, the Print Provider enters the *Job Ticket* window to view, annotate and if required, print out a *Job Ticket* copy.

The *Job Ticket Creation* window is composed of the following elements and operation buttons:

- **Job Ticket Pages Checkboxes** Used for including detailed production, finishing, delivery and pricing information into the *Job Ticket*. Each checkbox reflects one *Job Ticket* page. The selected *Job Ticket* pages appear successively, one after the other
- **Printing Deadline** Internal, Print Provider printing deadline, which was determined in the *Calendar* dialog box
- **Finishing Deadline** Internal, Print Provider finishing deadline, which was determined in the *Calendar* dialog box
- **Set Printing Deadline** Accesses the *Calendar* dialog box where the Print Provider can set the printing deadline
- **Set Finishing Deadline** Accesses the *Calendar* dialog box where the Print Provider can set the finishing deadline
- **OK** Creates a *Job Ticket* and accesses the *Job Ticket* window
- **Cancel** Cancels *Job Ticket Creation* and closes the *Job Ticket Creation* window

Previewing a Job Ticket

In order to preview a *Job Ticket*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Select a Job and then click on the *Job Ticket* button; the *Job Ticket Creation* window appears.
- 2 In the *Job Ticket Creation* window, checkmark the appropriate *Job Ticket Page* checkboxes.
- 3 Click on the *Set Printing Deadline* button in order to set the printing deadline; the *Printing Date* dialog box appears.
- 4 Click on the target date in the *Printing Date* dialog box; the selected date is highlighted (the current date in the window is selected and highlighted by default).
- 5 Click on OK to confirm the selection; the chosen date is displayed in the *Printing Deadline* field of the *Job Ticket Creation* window.
- 6 Click on the *Set Finishing Deadline* button in order to set the finishing deadline; the *Finishing Date* dialog box appears.
- 7 Click on the target date in the *Finishing Date* dialog box; the selected date is highlighted (the current date in the window is selected and highlighted by default).
- 8 Click on OK to confirm the selection; the chosen date is displayed in the *Finishing Deadline* field in the *Job Ticket Creation* window.

Note: If printing and/or finishing dates are not set, this information will not be available in the *Job Ticket*.

- 9 Click on OK in the *Job Ticket Creation* window; the *Job Ticket* window appears

Job Ticket




	177vm on 175pc 30600 Tel: Fax: Email: 177vm@press-sense.com	Job Ticket: Production Job #7
	Job # 7 Job Name: MacEgg Tent Card #7 Job Type: Post Card Subtype: Two Sides Copies: 50 Price: 31.47 USD Status: printing Order # 3	
	Ordered On: 04-12-07 13:14 Requested Date: 04-16-07 13:00 Internal Reference Code:	Printing Deadline: 04-19-07 15:30 Finishing Deadline: 04-25-07 15:30
Production		
Job Properties Number Of Pages: 2 Page Size: Width: 8.2639, Height: 5.5139 inch Colors: Process: 4 Paper Description: Standard Quality Bleeds: Top: 0, Right: 0, Bottom: 0, Left: 0	PDF Properties Number Of Pages: 2 Page Size: Width: 8.2639, Height: 5.5139 measure Colors: Process: 4 2 Color Pages: 1-2	
Printing Parameters	Notes	

Figure 11: Job Ticket

The *Job Ticket* is a *Word* document that contains all information about the Job production and enables the Print Provider to print out a *Job Ticket* copy to be used on the production floor. The *Date* and *Signature* fields in the printed *Job Ticket* pages are left empty, to be filled out by the relevant personnel on the Print Provider's production floor.

Note: The *Job Ticket* appears in *Word* format. Working with a *Word* document allows any printed text to be manually altered. However, care must be taken not to delete links to the data concerning the Job information.

All notes (i.e. from the Print Buyer, for the Print Buyer, internal notes etc) are entered manually and directly into the specified locations.

To print the pages from the *Word Document* form, click on the *Print This Page* button, to access the *Print* window. The *Job Ticket* is printed on a local or connected printer that is installed on the client PC.

The *Job Ticket* is composed of the following elements:

- **Job Ticket Top Header** Upper panel contains the Print Provider icon and Print Provider site information. Remains the same for all the Job Ticket pages.
- **Job Ticket Lower Header** Lower panel contains a Job thumbnail and general information concerning the Job. Both panels appear on all of the Job Ticket pages.
- **Job Ticket Pages** Appear consecutively and according to the *Job Ticket* selection carried out in the *Job Ticket Creation* window. Contain detailed information about production, finishing, delivery and pricing.
- **Information Boxes** Area(s) reserved for manually adding comments or instructions concerning the specific processes.
- **Notes:** Area reserved for manually adding notes concerning the specific process.
- **Job Ticket Footer** Contains the date and signature spaces to be manually completed by the relevant employee at the different stages of production. The footer also contains the *Printing* buttons.

Edit Imposition

The *FreeFlow Web Services* system enables the Print Provider to edit the imposition of Jobs arriving at the *Approval* queue, using new imposition parameters. These new parameters over-ride any former parameters, chosen by the system.

Edit Imposition

Run Size: A4

Output Device: Copier

Duplex Mode: Centered

Convert RGB to CMYK via ICC Profile: None

Optimization: Sheet Wise

Orientation: Best Match

Margins

Left Margin: 0.5 Inches

Right Margin: 0.5 Inches

Top Margin: 0.5 Inches

Bottom Margin: 0.5 Inches

Bleeds

Left Bleed: 0.0000 Inches

Right Bleed: 0.0000 Inches

Top Bleed: 0.0000 Inches

Bottom Bleed: 0.0000 Inches

☒ **Regular Bleeds:** Bleeds are outside of the Job page

☐ **Re-scale Jobs:** The Job has been enlarged and then cropped to the original page size

☐ **Reduce Job Size:** Bleeds are inside of the Job page; the Job is cropped and the final page size is smaller than the original page size

Gutters

Horizontal Gutters: 0.156 Inches

Vertical Gutters: 0.156 Inches

Labels and Marks

☒ Job Info

☒ Registration Marks

☒ Color Bar And Separation Names

☒ Crop Marks and Folding Info

☒ Gutters, Job Width and Height

Digital Printing OK Cancel

Figure 12: Edit Imposition Dialog Box

The *Edit Imposition* dialog box contains the following elements.

- **Run Size** The *Paper Run Size* to be used for the imposition
- **Output Device** The output device to be used in printing the Job
- **Duplex Mode** The *Duplex* mode according to which the Job is imposed
- **Convert RGB to CMYK via ICC Profile** The *ICC* profile to be used while creating the imposed file
- **Optimization** The optimization method for imposing the file: *Job*, *Plate*, or *Sheet Wise*
- **Orientation** The orientation of the imposed Jobs
- **Margins** The width of all four margins: left, right, top and bottom
- **Bleeds** The width of all four bleeds: left, right, top and bottom. There are three options to configure bleeds:

- **Regular Bleeds** This is the default option, which is appropriate for cases where a bleed has been properly defined and is outside of the final Job page size.

If you discover a bleed problem, you can either enlarge the file and crop to the planned Job size or make the final Job size smaller. Both options are available in the *Edit Imposition* dialog box.



- **Re-scale Jobs** Enlarges the size of the Job so that it can be cropped to its original page size. The difference between the Job and the enlarged Job equals the *Bleeds* configurations
- **Reduce Job** Reduces the Job size. The difference between the Job and the reduced Job equals the *Bleeds* configurations. The final Job is smaller than the original Job
- **Gutters** The width of horizontal and vertical gutters
- **Labels and Marks** All of the imposition information that is added to the imposed Job margins
- **Job Info** Information that identifies the Job
- **Registration Marks** The four accepted registration marks
- **Color Bar and Separation Names** CMYK and *Gray Scale* color bars and separation names that appear according to the separation color
- **Crop Marks and Folding Info** The required crop marks and the required fold marks, orientation number and name
- **Gutters, Job Width and Height** The recorded gutter width, Job width and Job height
- **Custom Color Bar**
- **Color Bar File** Dropdown box selection of color bars

Note: *Web Services* provides horizontal, vertical, *Gray Scale* and *CMYK* options. To add additional *Color Bar* options to the dropdown box, copy and paste a new *Color Bar* file to *D:\NewEditon\lpane\Db\Imposition\Colorbars*; the new Job name appears in the *Color Bar File* dropdown menu (after carrying out refresh by clicking on the *Output Devices* tab).

- **Position** The color bar location on the imposed Job
- **Dimensions** The color bar width and height on the imposed Job

Modifying the Imposition Scheme

In order to modify the imposition scheme, carry out the following steps:

- 1 In the *Approval Queue* pane, select a Job.
- 2 Click on the *Edit Imposition* button; the *Edit Imposition* dialog box appears.
- 3 Carry out all of the necessary changes and click on *OK*; the Job appears at the head of the *Approval Queue* pane.
- 4 Click again on the Job in the *Approval Queue* pane.
- 5 In the *Job Information* panel, click on the *Imposition Proof* icon to view the modified imposition scheme.

Manual Impose

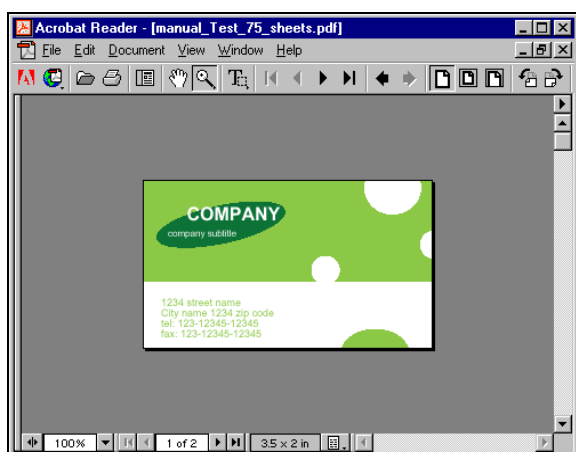


Figure 13: A PDF for Manual Imposition

The *Manual Impose* option is accessed from the *Output Device* dropdown menu in the *Edit Imposition* dialog box. The *Manual Impose* option is used for saving the Job as a non-imposed *PDF* and imposing it by a third party imposition tool. *Manual Impose* is also automatically selected when the *PDF* cannot be imposed by the system, in which case, the following icon appears in place of the Job Info thumbnail:



After approval, a manually imposed Job is transferred to a folder that the Print Provider has specified in the *Output Device* window (see: Enabling Manual Imposition, page 227).

Imposition Link

The *Imposition* link enables the Print Provider to view the high resolution imposed *PDF*. The system enables an onscreen preview of the imposed file with crop, registration and fold marks, Job page dimensions, the gutter, Job information, and the Job color bars embedded. Below is a description of the *Imposition* scheme:

Note: These elements will be a part of the imposition, according to the *Labels* and *Marks* that were chosen in the *Edit Imposition* window.

- **Registration Marks** By default, there are four registration marks located on each edge of the press sheet.
- **Crop Marks** Are marked by a solid line
- **Fold Marks** Are indicated by a dashed line at the location of each fold. 'In' or 'Out' above the dashed line refers to the fold direction and a number under the line reflects the fold order
- **The Gutter** Indicates the trimming space between the Job pages in the signature. If Job pages have bleeds, they are located within this space

Note: To change the default gutter dimensions, see *Modifying Gutters*, page 210.

- **Job Page Dimensions** Width and height of a Job page in the signature, appearing adjacent to the Job at the bottom-right side of the imposition page
- **Color Bar** A color bar is displayed in the imposition scheme as defined in the *Output Devices* window

Imposition Schemes

The following sections discuss the imposition schemes.

Horizontal and Vertical Orientation

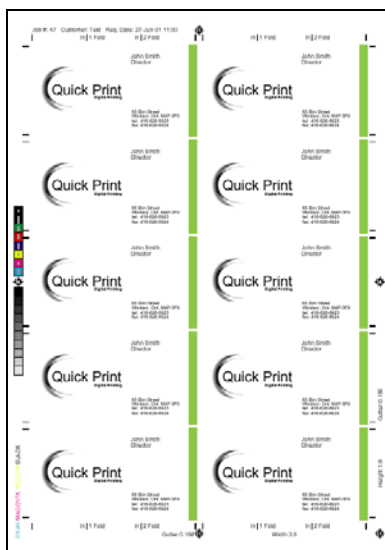


Figure 14: Imposition Scheme: Horizontal Orientation



Figure 15: Imposition Scheme: Vertical Orientation

Close Up View

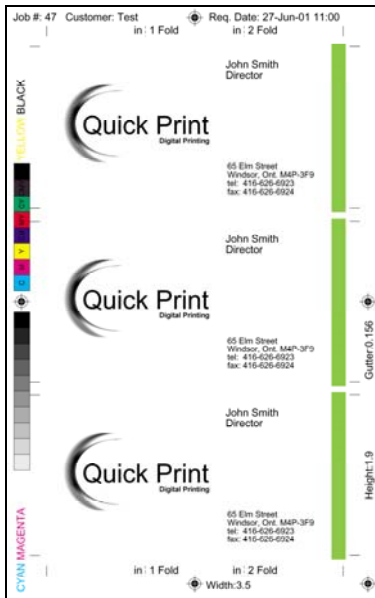


Figure 16: Imposition Scheme: Close Up View

Note: When *Manual Impose* is selected, the *Imposition Proof* icon allows a high-res preview of one Job page.

Approve

The following sections discuss the *Approval* queue.

Approving a Job for Production

In order to transfer a Job from the *Approval Queue* to the assigned output device (i.e. approve it for production), carry out the following steps:

- 1 In the *Approval Queue* pane, select a Job.
- 2 Click on the *Approve* button in the *Job Information* panel; the Job is transferred to the output device. As a result it is removed from the *Approval* queue and appears at the of the *Printing* queue.

Returning a Job From the Printing Queue to the Approval Queue

In order to return a Job from the *Printing* queue to the *Approval* queue, carry out the following steps:

- 1 In the *Printing Queue* panel, select a Job.
- 2 Click on the *Back to Approval* button in the *Job Information* panel; the Job is returned to the *Approval Queue* pane.

Outsource

Clicking on *Outsource* activates the *Web Services Outsourcing e-Mail* feature.

Web Services Outsourcing e-Mail

Web Services Outsourcing e-Mail allows the Print Provider to manage all communication with partner Print Providers. Working with the *Outsourcing e-Mail* feature, the Print Provider is able to outsource Jobs from the *Web Services* system, directly to a partner Print Provider, by sending an *e-Mail* message containing links to an imposed file and a *Job Ticket*.

On The Print Provider-side

In order to work with *Web Services Outsourcing e-Mail*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 In the *Approval* queue, click on the target Job that is to be sent to the partner Print Provider; the Job parameters appear in the *Job Info* panel.
- 2 In the *Job Info* panel, click on *Outsource*; the *Outsource Job* dialog box appears.


Figure 17: Outsource Job

- 3 Click on the *Print Provider Name* dropdown box, to select a partner Print Provider; the Print Provider details appear in the *Select Partner Print Provider* panel.

- 4 In the *Job Shipping* panel, click on one of the following radio buttons in order to determine where the Job is to be sent:
 - *Ship to Customer* (send the finished Job directly to the Print Buyer)
 - *Ship to me by date* (return the completed Job to the outsourcing Print Provider – clicking on the *Select Date* link enables determining a time limitation for returning the Job to the sender)
- 5 Click on *Outsource Job*; the *Outsource e-Mail Sent* dialog box appears and an *Outsource e-Mail* message was sent to the partner Print Provider.



Figure 18: Outsource e-Mail Sent

- 6 Click on *OK*; the *Production* window appears; the Job appears in the *Printing* queue and features the  icon, indicating that the Job is waiting to be accepted by the partner Print Provider.

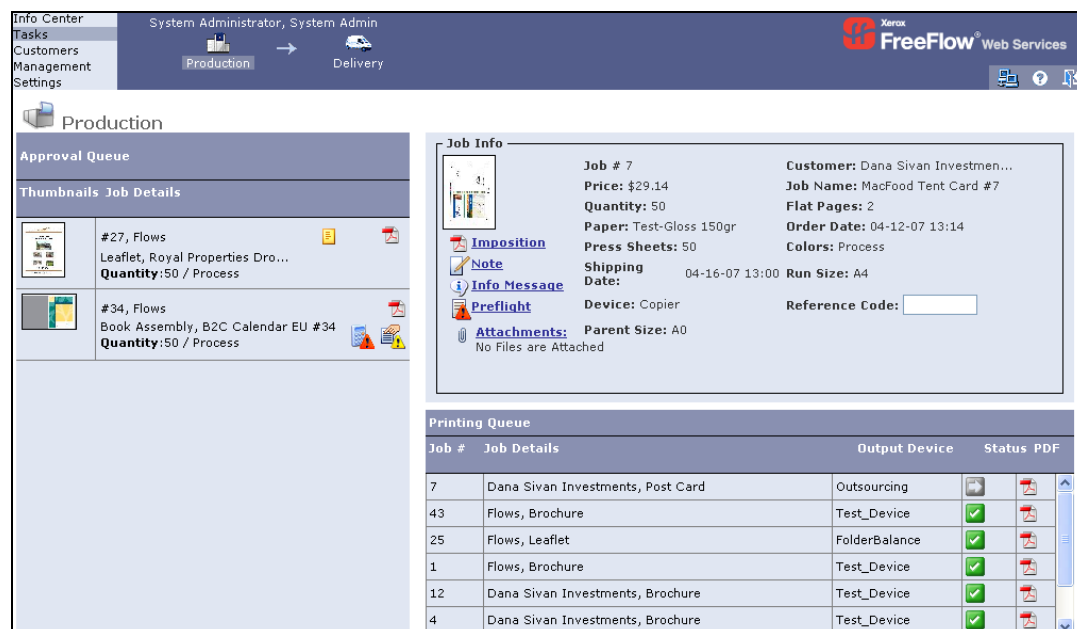


Figure 19: Production Window

- 7 In the *Printing Queue* pane, you can select the target Job that has been outsourced; the Job details appear in the *Job Info* panel and the *Outsourcing Information* link appears in the *Job Info* panel.

- 8 Click on the *Outsourcing Information* link; the *Outsourcing Information* dialog box appears.



Figure 20: Outsourcing Information Dialog Box

Outsourcing Information is an initial status report of the Job sent to the partner Print Provider.

- 9 To close the dialog box, click on *OK*.

Note: *Relocate to Delivery* allows the Print Provider to transfer outsourced Jobs to the *Jobs For Delivery* queue, in the *Delivery* window when the Partner Print Provider has neglected to click on either the *Accepted* and/or the *Shipped to* button(s), in the *e-Mail* message.

Partner Print Provider-Side

After the *Outsource e-Mail* message has been sent, the partner Print Provider receives the following *e-Mail* message.



Figure 21: Partner Print Provider e-Mail Message

- 1 To download the *PDF* file of the Job, click on the *Job PDF* link.
- 2 To download the *Imposed PDF* file of the Job, click on the *Imposed Job PDF* link.
- 3 To view the *Job Ticket*, click on the *View Job Ticket* link.
- 4 When accepting the Job (and when starting the printing process), click on *Accept*; both the Print Provider and the partner Print Provider receive an *e-Mail* message notifying that the Job has been accepted and that the printing process has begun. The Job appears in the *Jobs for Delivery* queue of the *Delivery* window.
- 5 After the partner Print Provider has completed the Job and has shipped the Job (either directly to the Print Buyer or back to the Print Provider), the Partner Print Provider clicks on the *Job Shipped* button within the *e-Mail* message; the Print Provider then receives a message that the Job has been shipped and can change the Job's status in the *Delivery* window.



Figure 22: The e-Mail Message Received (by both the Print Provider and the partner Print Provider)

Layout Maker

Layout Maker Layout #47

Paper Size: A2 Job Size: 1.9583x3.5 Inches Number Of Press Sheets: 3 Copies

Layout Name: Units on Page: 44 Utilization: 75 %

Include	Thumbnail	Job #	Customer	Colors	Paper	Units On Page	Required Copies	Total Copies
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		13	Dana Sivan Investments	custom	-, 0 gr	22	50	66
<input type="checkbox"/>		14	Dana Sivan Investments	custom	-, 0 gr	-	50	-
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		31	Dana Sivan Investments	process	-, 0 gr	22	50	66

Create Layout Preview Layout Cancel

Figure 23: Layout Maker Window

Layout Maker is a feature that allows the Print Provider to print more than one Job on a single press sheet. The purpose of this feature is to reduce production costs through the following:

- Maximum utilization of the press sheet
- Minimum amount of cutting and stacking

To start the *Layout Maker* function, the Print Provider must choose a Job (base Job) in the *Production* queue. After the Print Provider chooses the base Job, the *Layout Maker* automatically selects additional Jobs from the *Production: Approval* queue according to the following criteria:

- The base Job can have 1 or 2 pages (2 pages can be either 2 pages or a double-sided Job)
- Jobs that are the same size as the base Job
- The number of pages in the additional Jobs must be equal or smaller than the base Job.

The *Layout Maker* is divided into the following two panels:

- **Layout Information Panel** Displays the *Layout* information.
- **Job Information Panel** Displays the various Jobs that are suitable to be included in the *Layout*.

The *Layout Information* panel is composed of the following elements:

- **Paper Size Field** Displays the paper size
- **Layout Name** For entering the *Layout* name
- **Job Size** Displays the Job size
- **Units on Page** Total number of units, of the selected Jobs, that can be printed on a *Press Sheet*
- **Number of Press Sheets** Number of press sheets required in order to complete this *Layout* Job
- **Utilization** A percentage that indicates the utilization of the press sheet. This percentage changes according to the Jobs that have been selected for the *Layout*

The *Job Information* panel is composed of the following elements:

- **Included Checkbox** For indicating which of the Jobs will be included in the *Layout*
- **Thumbnail** Image of the Job's front page
- **Job #** The number of the Job
- **Customer** The name of the Print Buyer
- **Color** Indicates the type of color channels
- **Paper** Paper name, type and weight
- **Units on Page** The number of units, of the selected Job, that can be printed on a press sheet
- **Required Copies** The number of copies that were ordered
- **Total Copies** The number of copies that must be produced in order to satisfy the *Layout* scheme
- **Create Layout** Closes the *Layout Maker* window and creates a *Layout*, according to the selected Jobs
- **Preview Layout** Enables viewing a *PDF Preview* of the *Layout* before the *Layout* has been created
- **Cancel** Closes the *Layout Maker* window, without creating a *Layout*. All selections and parameters entered into the *Layout Maker* window are cancelled

Note: When selecting Jobs to be included in the *Layout*, it is advisable not to combine Jobs with different bleed settings

Working with the Layout Maker

In order to print Jobs through the *Layout Maker*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 In the *Approval* queue, click on a target Job that will serve as the basis of the *Layout* (the base Job).
- 2 Click on *Layout Maker*; the *Layout Maker* window appears.
- 3 Select the Jobs to be included in the layout.
- 4 To preview the layout, click on *Preview Layout*; a *PDF Preview* of the layout appears.
- 5 To create a layout, click on *Create Layout*; the Jobs appear combined as a *Layout Job* in the *Production: Approval* queue.
- 6 To edit the layout, click on *Edit Layout* in the *Job Info* panel; the *Layout Maker* reappears.

Note: When a *Layout* is in the *Approval* queue, the Print Provider cannot *Edit Imposition* or *Outsource* the Job.

Preflight

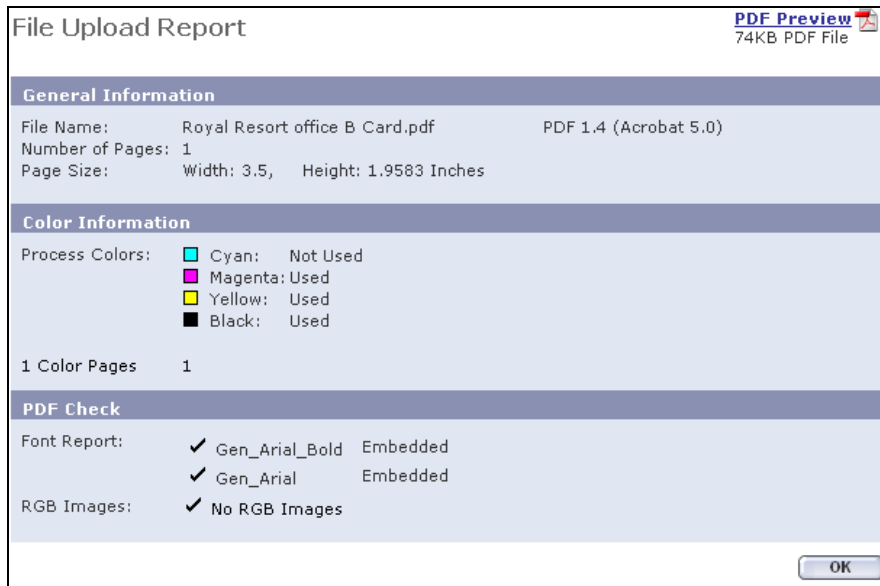


Figure 24: File Upload Report

The *Preflight* link accesses the *File Upload Report*, which enables the Print Provider to examine Job files in order to prevent problems at the production stage. The *File Upload Report* displays the following parameters for convenient inspection:

- General (file) information
- Process and Spot color information
- Font report listing which fonts in the file are embedded and which fonts are not embedded
- List of RGB images
- List of Low-resolution images (when *Low-res* images are present)

Attachments

The *Attachments* link accesses the *Attachments* dialog box.

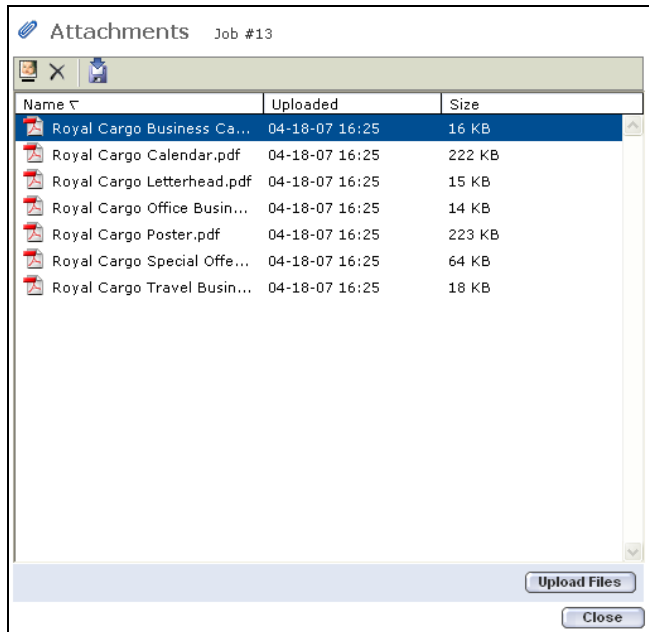


Figure 25: Attachments

The *Attachments* dialog box enables attaching additional files to the Job. These files are individually uploaded into the Job, according to the *Attachments* instructions. Additionally, files residing in the *Attachments* library can be downloaded to any folder in the Print Provider system.

Printing Queue Panel



















Printing Queue				
Job #	Job Details	Output Device	Status	PDF
43	Flows, Brochure	Test_Device		
25	Flows, Leaflet	FolderBalance		
1	Flows, Brochure	Test_Device		
12	Dana Sivan Investments, Brochure	Test_Device		
4	Dana Sivan Investments, Brochure	Test_Device		
6	Dana Sivan Investments, Business Card	Test_Device		

Figure 26: Printing Queue Panel

In the *Printing Queue* panel, the Print Provider can view up to 25 of the most recently approved Jobs and monitor the Job status as indicated by three types of icons. When selecting a Job in the Printing queue, the Print Provider has the option to print *Job Tickets*, work with the *Layout Maker* or return the Job to the *Approval* queue.

Icons

The following table lists and describes the *Printing Queue* panel icons:

Icons	Description
In Process, 'Gear' Icon 	Comes into view while the Job is being transferred to the output device.
Waiting Icon 	Indicates that there is a suitability problem between the Job and the output device. Job transfer is delayed until this problem is solved.
Transferred, 'V' Green Icon 	Indicates that the Job has been successfully transferred to the output device.
Alert, Red Icon 	Indicates a transfer problem to the output device.
PDF Preview Icon 	Opens <i>PDF</i> preview of the imposed Job.
Outsourced 	Indicates that the Job has been outsourced to a partner Print Provider.

Moving a Job Back to the Approval Queue

In order to move a Job back to the *Approval* queue, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the Job to be returned to the *Approval* queue; the *Back to Approval* button appears.
- 2 Click on *Back to Approval*; the Job is returned to the *Approval* queue.

Section II: Delivery

Jobs that are approved for production are sent to the *Jobs for Delivery* queue of the *Delivery* window. The *Delivery* window options enable handling the Print Provider's *Delivery Desk*. From the *Delivery* window, the Print Provider prints the shipping labels and then approves the printed Jobs for shipping.

The screenshot displays the Xerox FreeFlow Web Services interface for the Delivery window. The top navigation bar includes 'Info Center', 'Tasks', 'Customers Management', and 'Settings'. The main content area is titled 'Delivery' and features a search bar and a 'Column Selection' link. The interface is divided into three main sections:

- Jobs For Delivery:** A table listing jobs with columns: Thumbnail, Job #, Job Name, Customer, and Req. Date. The table contains five rows of data.
- Batch Order:** A table listing jobs with columns: Job #, Order #, Shipping Address, Copies, Shipping Date, Carrier, Tracking #, and Status. The table contains three rows of data.
- Shipped Deliveries:** A table listing jobs with columns: Job #, Order #, Shipping Address, Copies, Shipped, Carrier, Tracking #, and Customer. The table is currently empty.

Below the 'Batch Order' table, there are buttons for 'Create Delivery Labels', 'Approve Selected Deliveries', and 'Shipping Calculator'. The 'Shipped Deliveries' section includes a dropdown menu for 'Shipped in the last' and a 'Day' selector.

Figure 27: Delivery

The *Delivery* window is composed of the following panels:

- **Jobs for Delivery** Displays Jobs that have been transferred to the output device, printed and are waiting to be delivered.
- **Batch Order** Shows all Jobs in the same order.
- **Shipped Jobs** Displays Jobs that have been shipped to the Print Buyer.

Jobs for Delivery Pane

The *Jobs for Delivery* pane displays Jobs being printed or already printed and are waiting to be delivered. The *Jobs for Delivery* pane is composed of *Jobs for Delivery* columns. Clicking on the *Column* headers enables the *Column Sorting* mechanism. The *Jobs for Delivery* pane also includes the *Jobs For Delivery Search Mechanism*.

The *Column Selection* link accesses the *Column Selection* dialog box, which contains numerous labeled checkboxes that reflect the various Job information columns in the *Jobs for Delivery* pane.

Column Selection

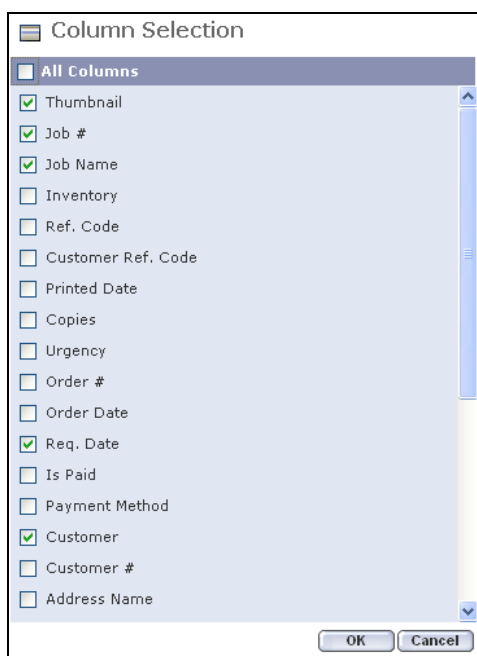


Figure 28: Select Fields

The *Column Selection* checkboxes enable the Print Provider to add or remove the viewable columns in the *Jobs for Delivery* pane.

Adding a Column to the Jobs for Delivery Pane

In order to add a column to the *Jobs for Delivery* pane, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the *Column Selection* link; the *Column Selection* dialog box appears (note that the number of checkmarked checkboxes corresponds to the number of columns that appear in the *Jobs for Delivery* pane).
- 2 Checkmark a checkbox; the matching column is added to the *Jobs for Delivery* pane.

Caution: Adding too many columns can distort the view.

Removing a Column from the Jobs for Delivery Pane

In order to delete a column from the *Jobs for Delivery* pane, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the *Column Selection* link; the *Column Selection* dialog box appears (note that the number of checkmarked checkboxes corresponds to the number of columns that appear in the *Jobs for Delivery* pane).
- 2 Uncheck the checkbox that reflects the target column; the target column is deleted from the *Jobs for Delivery* pane.

Search Mechanism

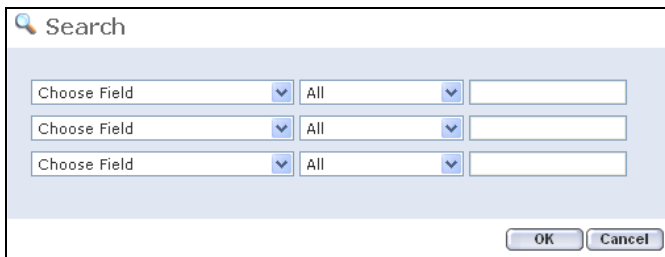


Figure 29: Search

Search enables a narrowed search scope by simultaneously running up to three search criteria.

To work with the *Search* option, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the *Search* link; the *Search* dialog box appears.
- 2 In the *Status* dropdown menus, select one or more *Search* options.
- 3 Select a *Search* command for each selected *Search* option.
- 4 Enter the search criteria into the *Search for* box for each *Search* option.
- 5 Click on *OK*.

The search is carried out; all Jobs matching the various *Search* options are displayed in the *Jobs for Delivery* pane (For a more in-depth explanation on *Search* mechanisms, see *Search Options*, page 127).

Batch Order Panel

When a Job is selected in the *Jobs for Delivery* queue, the system searches for other Jobs ordered by the Print Buyer in the same *Order* and displays these Job in the *Batch Order* panel. In the *Batch Order* panel, the Print Provider can choose whether to ship these Jobs separately or in batches, and preview the Job status (*Printing*, *Shipped* or *Received*). Using the operation buttons, the Print Provider can print-out a label for the shipment using the *Label Selected Deliveries* and *Approve Selected Deliveries* buttons.

Note: To view the carrier tracking status of a Job, where a carrier is used, click on the *Tracking Number* link. To edit the shipping information and the shipping address of Jobs in the *Ready* status, click on the *Edit* link to access the *Delivery Information* dialog box. To view and calculate *Shipping* costs, click on the *Shipping Costs Calculator* link.

Delivery Information


The *Delivery Information* dialog box is accessed by clicking on the *Edit* link in the *Batch Order* panel.

Job Information

Job #: 4
Copies: 50
Shipping Date: 16/04/2007
Status: Ready for Shipping

Shipping Address: Myron
Shipping Method: Pickup 1\$

Tracking Information

Carrier: 
Tracking #:

OK Cancel

Figure 30: Delivery Information Dialog Box

To modify shipping information, enter the appropriate information into the field boxes.

- 1 To modify the shipping address, click on the *Shipping Address* link and then enter the appropriate information into the *Edit Address* field boxes.
- 2 To select a *Shipping Method*, click on the *Shipping Method* link and then select the appropriate shipping method.
- 3 Click on *OK* in all dialog boxes to save the changes.

Shipping Calculator

Shipping Price Calculator

Job #: 4
Copies: 50
Shipping Date: 16/04/2007

Job Information

Shipping Address: Myron

Shipping Method:

Carrier: UPS

Weight: (pounds)

Carton Size Length: Width: Height: (inches)

Shipping Cost Estimation

Actual Cost

Cost: (\$)

Figure 31: Shipping Calculator

The *Shipping Calculator* enables estimating a *Shipping* price based on the *Shipping Method*, as determined in *Settings/Shipping/Shipping Methods* and on the following criteria:

- Shipment Weight
- Carton Size

Estimating a Shipping Cost

To estimate a shipping cost, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Select a *Shipping Method*.
- 2 Enter the weight of the parcel to be shipped.
- 3 Enter the carton size (dimensions of the parcel).
- 4 Click on *Estimate Price*; the *Estimation Price* appears to the right of the *Get Estimation* button.
- 5 Where a precise *Shipping Cost* is available (i.e. price received from the *Carrier*), enter into the *Cost* field to be saved for future reference.

Batch Shipments

In order to send a shipment containing several Jobs from the same order, carry out the following steps:

- 1 In the *Jobs for Delivery* panel, click on a Job; the Job appears in the *Batch Order* panel in the *Printing* status. (If there are other Jobs to be included in the batch order, select each Job by pressing on the *Ctrl* key and then clicking on the Job).

Note: Only Jobs that were “approved” for printing in the *Production* window can be approved for delivery.

- 2 Click on *Approve Selected Deliveries*; the Job/Jobs are removed from the *Jobs for Delivery* panel and appear in the *Shipped Jobs* panel. The approved Jobs also appear in the *Shipping* window in the *Print Buyer* interface.

Labeling an Order Package


		Job Name: Royal Resort Business Card #43 Job #: 43, Customer Ref. Code: Copies: 500	
From: Central Print 104W 36 St. New York New York, 10018, United States Contact Person: Robert Smith Tel: 212-238-6161 Fax: 212-238-6162 e-Mail: rsmith@central.com		To: ssssssss ssssssss ssssssssssss ssssssssssss sssss, United States	
Carrier: Tracking Number: Weight: Cost: Shipping Method:			

Figure 32: Label

In order to label an order package, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Ensure that the relevant Jobs are selected in the *Batch* order.
- 2 Click on the *Label Selected Delivery* button; the *Label Word* or *HTML* document opens.
- 3 Verify that the *Label* address information is correct and then click on *Print*.

Note: For *Multiple-delivery* Jobs, when a *Word* document appears, the system will display each delivery page separately, accessed by scrolling down. When an *HTML* document appears, each page is accessed by clicking on the appropriate tab.

Shipped Deliveries Panel

The *Shipped Deliveries* panel enables the Print Provider to track both shipped and received Jobs and to inspect the status of other Jobs of the same order, which appear in the *Batch Order* panel. When a Job has been shipped by a recognized carrier, the user can click on the *Tracking Number* link in order access the carrier's *Tracking Page* and then view the carrier's shipping status of the Job.

Note: In the Print Buyer interface, when the Print Buyer clicks on the *Received* button (in order to transfer the Job to the *Received* queue) the Job status inside the batch order panel changes automatically.

The *Shipped Deliveries* panel is composed of the following elements:

- **Shipped in the last Dropdown Box** Enables limiting the display to the list of deliveries shipped in the last month, week or day.
- **Back To Approval Button** Returns the selected Job back to the *Approval* queue.
- **View Label Button** Enables displaying the Job label for verification and printing.

Chapter Four: Customers

Overview

Figure 33: Customers

The *Customers* window contains a series of panels that incorporate all of the data that is relevant to each Print Buyer in the Print Provider *FreeFlow Web Services* system.

The *Customers* window is composed of the following elements:

- **Customer Pane** A list of all Print Provider customers, sorted alphabetically, together with a *Customer Search* engine
- **Customer Panels** Designed for entering all customer information
- **OK Button** Saves the settings that have been entered into the *Customer Information* panel (Note that any changes to the *Customer* will be completed only after clicking on the OK button and after the *Confirmation* dialog box has appeared)
- **Cancel Button** Cancels all the changes made to the settings since the last *Save*.

Customer Pane

The *Customer* pane contains the following elements:

- **Customer Search Engine** Mechanism for searching out customers through entire or partial names. The search results replace the comprehensive *Customer* list
- **Search Button** Activates the search mechanism, after a name or partial name has been entered into the search field box
- **Reset Button** After carrying out a search, *Reset* restores the entire *Customer* list
- **Customer Pane Toolbar**
- **Customer List** Complete list of all Print Buyer-customers as a default; the list focuses on the individual Print Buyer or narrower lists, when using the search engine
- **Add Button** Adds a customer to the customer list and all customer information is entered into the *Customer* panel

The *Customer* pane contains a comprehensive and unlimited list of all the Print Buyers that are associated with the Print Provider. Clicking on a customer name accesses a series of *Customer* panels, where the Print Provider enters all relevant data concerning the specific Print Buyer.

To add a new Print Buyer to the *Customer* list, carry out the following steps:

- 1 In the *Customer* pane, click on *Add*; *New Customer #* appears in the *Customer* list. The *General* panel appears as a default and is devoid of data.
- 2 In the *General* panel, enter all relevant data.
- 3 Click on the tabs at the top of the *Customer* panels, to access the other panels.
- 4 Enter the relevant data into all of the other panels.
- 5 Click on *OK*.

To remove a Print Buyer from the *Customer* list, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the target Print Buyer in the *Customer* list.
- 2 Click on the *Delete* button in the *Toolbar*; the *Delete Customer* dialog box appears.
- 3 Click on *Yes*; the target Print Buyer information is removed.




Customer Search Engine

The *Customer Search Engine* aids the Print Provider in quickly accessing a specific Print Buyer or group of Print Buyers. To work with the *Customer Search Engine*, carry out the following steps:

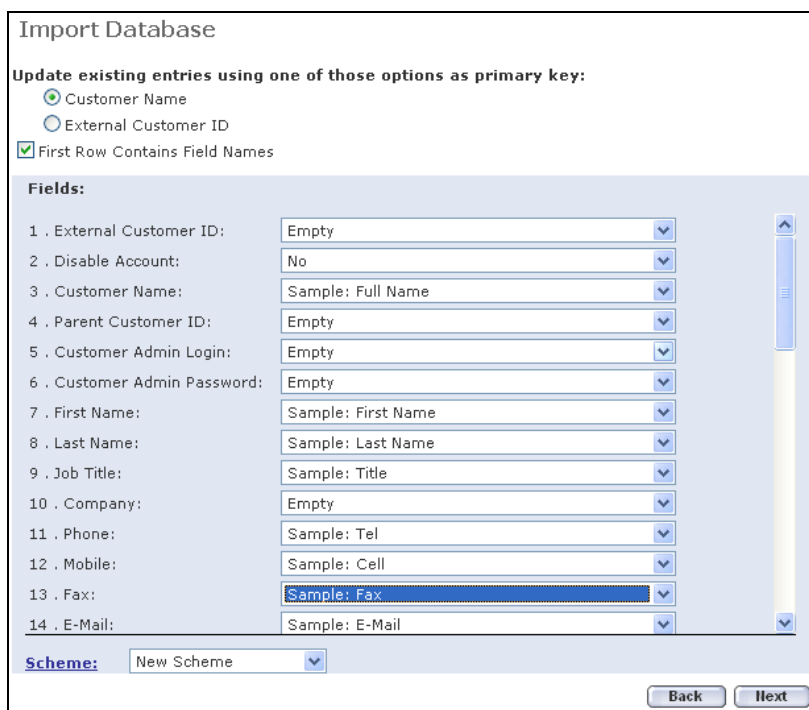
- 1 In the field box titled: *Search for Customers*, enter a partial or complete target name.
- 2 Click on *Search*; the name(s) appear in the *Customer* list.
- 3 To restore the complete *Customer* list, click on *Reset*.

Customer Toolbar

The *Customer* toolbar contains the following elements:

- | | | |
|------------------|---|---|
| Import Customers |  | Enables importing a CSV file (Comma Separated Values) containing a list of customers. |
| Export Customer |  | Enables exporting the <i>Customer</i> list. The export is through a CSV (Comma Separated Value) file. |
| Delete Customers |  | Enables deleting a target customer. |

Import Customers



Import Database

Update existing entries using one of those options as primary key:

☒ Customer Name
☐ External Customer ID

☒ First Row Contains Field Names

Fields:

1 . External Customer ID:	Empty
2 . Disable Account:	No
3 . Customer Name:	Sample: Full Name
4 . Parent Customer ID:	Empty
5 . Customer Admin Login:	Empty
6 . Customer Admin Password:	Empty
7 . First Name:	Sample: First Name
8 . Last Name:	Sample: Last Name
9 . Job Title:	Sample: Title
10 . Company:	Empty
11 . Phone:	Sample: Tel
12 . Mobile:	Sample: Cell
13 . Fax:	Sample: Fax
14 . E-Mail:	Sample: E-Mail

Scheme: New Scheme

Back Next

Figure 34: Import Customers

When importing files containing lists of customers, the *Import Database* dialog box is accessed. *Import Database* allows the Print Provider to identify, edit and create customer records according to one of the following criteria:

- Customer Name
- External Customer ID

The purpose of using different file identification criterion is to prevent data loss when two or more records coincidentally bear the same name. Assuming that the *External Customer ID* is unique, the possibility of one record replacing another is substantially reduced.

Note: The *External Customer ID* can be supplied as one of the *Customer* fields.

Customer Panels

Customer Panels is composed of eleven sub-panels, accessed by clicking on the associated tabs found at the top of the panel. Below is a description of the *Customer* panels:

- **Account** For entering all information concerning the Print Buyer organization.
- **Preferences** For determining the preferred utilities, pricing and payment methods and the look and feel of the interface.
- **Users** For entering all information concerning the *Users* within the Print Buyer organization.
- **User Groups** Enables creating groups of users within the Print Buyer organization.
- **Departments** For entering all information concerning the various departments within the Print Buyer organization.
- **Cost Centers** For entering all information concerning the various cost centers within the Print Buyer organization and managing cost center budgets.
- **Templates** Library of templates from where Print Buyers can create and order new Jobs. The templates have either been created by the Print Provider or by Print Buyers with the specific template-creating *Privilege*.
- **Catalog Library** Assesses and enables the Print Provider to manage a specific customer's *Catalog* library
- **Account Links** Contains all of the necessary order information to enable the Print Provider to create an *Order* report that can be used for invoicing. The *Order* report can also be transferred to any Print Provider accounting system, using the *Data Export* module.
- **Image Library** Enables uploading and sorting images into one centralized location and enables downloading images from the *Image Library* to a target folder.
- **E-Mail** Enables directing order confirmation, Job price change, and Job shipped *e-Mail* notification, to the Print Buyer.

Section I: Account Panel

Figure 35: Account Panel

The *Account* panel displays the specific information regarding the lead contact or *Account Administrator*.

The *Information* fields in the *Account* panel are composed of the following elements:

Identity Elements

- **Customer Name** Name of the Print Buyer organization
- **Customer ID** Customer ID, as provided by the system
- **Disable Account** Allows the Print Provider to disable the specific customer account. When the checkbox is checkmarked, the customer account is on standby and all *Users* of the specific customer are restricted from having access to the system
- **Parent Customer** Enables entering customers into “*Parent/child*” relationships with other Print Buyer accounts who are commercially united. With the *Parent Customer* option, the “*Parent*” customer possesses a library of templates and images, which the “*Child*” can access in its entirety. For more information on the *Parent Customer* feature, see *Parent Customer*, page 293.

Customer Administrator Elements

Customer Administrator Elements has been divided into the following views:

- General
- Shipping and Billing
- Shipping Method Groups

General

The *General* view enables entering the account contact information into the system:

- The contact person's first and last names and Job title
- The contact person's phone, mobile phone and fax numbers and *e-Mail* address
- The contact person's address

Contact Address

To enter a contact address, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the *Edit Address* link; the *Edit Address* dialog box appears.

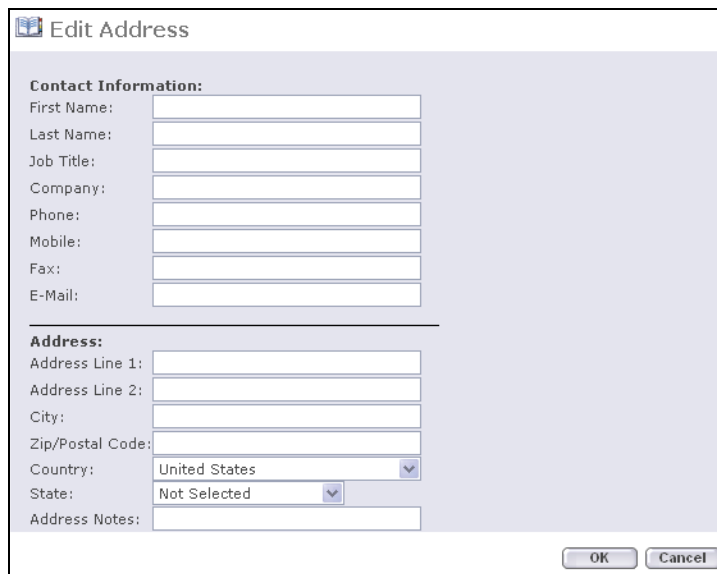


Figure 36: Edit Address

- 2 Enter all appropriate contact and address information and then click on *OK*; the address information appears in the *General* view panel.

Note: Information entered into the *Edit Address* dialog box is automatically entered into the *Address Book* when clicking on *OK*. For more information, see *Address Book*, page 74.

Shipping and Billing

Figure 37: Shipping and Billing View

The addresses that appear in *Shipping* and *Billing* panes are the default *Shipping and Billing* addresses of this customer. To modify the addresses, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on an *Address* link; the *Address Book* appears.

Figure 38: Address Book

- 2 Select a target address in the *Address* pane and click on *Select*; the new address appears in the *Shipping* or *Billing* pane (see *Address Book*, page 74).

Default Shipping Method

The *Default Shipping Method* dropdown box enables the Print Provider to select the default *Shipping Method* for this customer.

Shipping Method Groups

Figure 39: Shipping Methods Groups

Shipping Method Groups enables selecting which *Shipping Method Group* (see *Settings/Shipping/Shipping Method Groups*) will be available to the users of this customer. *Shipping Methods Groups* is composed of the following two elements:

- **All Shipping Methods Checkbox**

When the *All Shipping Methods* checkbox has been selected (this is the default selection) all of the *Shipping Methods* are activated for the customer.

When the *All Shipping Methods* checkbox is clear, all of the available *Shipping Method Groups* appear and the Print Provider must select which of the groups to activate for this customer.

All the *Shipping Methods* in the selected groups will appear as options for selection, on the Print Buyer side, during the ordering process.

- **Default Shipping Method Dropdown Box** The selected *Shipping Method* option will appear as the default *Shipping Method*, on the Print Buyer side, during the ordering process.

Section II: Preferences Panel

The screenshot shows the 'Preferences' panel with the following settings:

- Utilities:**
 - ☒ Enable Print Driver
 - ☒ Enable Selective Upload
 - Job Type Group:
 - ☒ Force Terms and Conditions confirmation before ordering
 - ☒ Allow Ordering Jobs Without Content
 - ☒ Allow File Attachment
 - ☐ Force Complex Password Security
 - Maximum Password Age: ☒ Never Expires, ☐ 30 Days
- PDF Preview:**
 - Footer File:
 - Watermark: Disabled
 - Watermark Text:
 - Font:
- Self Registration:**
 - ☐ Enable Guest Workflow
 - ☐ Approval Required
 - ☐ Send an e-Mail message each time a user has registered
 - [Contacts:](#)
- Customer Pricing:**

Figure 40: Preferences Panel

The *Information* fields in the *Preferences* panel are composed of the following elements:

- Utilities
- PDF Preview
- Self Registration
- Pricing
- GUI
- Branding

Utilities

- **Enable Print Driver** Enables the Print Buyer to download and use the *Print Driver*.
When the *Enable Print Driver* checkbox is unselected, the *Print Driver Download* option in the *Software Downloads* window will not be available to the specific Print Buyer customer.
- **Enable Selective Upload** Enables the Print Buyer to download and use the *Selective Upload* feature.
When the *Enable Selective Upload* checkbox is unselected, the *Selective Upload Download* option in the *Software Downloads* window will not be available to the specific Print Buyer customer.
- **Job Type Group** Enables limiting the Print Buyer to a predefined set of Job Types (see *Job Type Groups*, page 173).
- **Force Terms and Conditions Confirmation Before Ordering** When selected, a Terms and Conditions confirmation checkbox is added to the Print Buyer *Shopping Cart* and to all the *Catalogs* created by the specific Print Buyer. The Print Buyer is obliged to confirm acceptance of the Terms and Conditions by selecting this checkbox in order to complete the order.

- **Allow Ordering Jobs Without Content** Enables the Print Provider to allow Print Buyers to order Jobs that have no file content
When this option has been selected, the *Send Files Separately* option appears in the *Select File to Print* window, on the Print Buyer side, during the *Print Documents for Your Computer* procedure. When the *Send Files Separately* option is selected, the Print Buyer can continue with the Job-ordering procedure without uploading a content file.
- **Allow File Attachment** Enables the Print Buyer to attach one or more files to the Job.
- **Force Complex Password Security** When enabled, the user must create a password that complies with the following rules:
 - Passwords must not contain the user's entire login name.
 - The password must contain characters from 3 of the following four categories:
 - English uppercase characters (A through Z)
 - English lowercase characters (a through z)
 - Base 10 digits (0 through 9)
 - Non-alphanumeric characters (e.g., !, \$, #, %).
- **Maximum Password Age** Enables the Print Provider to determine how often (if ever) the Print Buyer must change his/her password.

PDF Preview

- **Footer File** Enables the Print Provider to add footer images to the low-res *PDF* previews for the Print Buyer preview.
- **Watermark** Enables placing a watermark onto to all *PDF* previews. The watermark can be System Default (inherited from the Settings / General / System) or defined per customer.
- **Watermark Text** When the *Custom* watermark option has been selected in the *Watermark* dropdown menu, the user can enter any desired text to appear as the watermark.
- **Font** When the *Custom* watermark option has been selected in the *Watermark* dropdown menu, the *Font* option becomes enabled, allowing *Font* selection.

Entering a PDF Preview Footer

PDF Preview Footers are selected from the *PDF Preview Footers* dropdown box. To enter new footer images into the dropdown box, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the *Upload* link; the *Image Folder* dialog box appears.
- 2 To upload an image into the *Image Folder*, follow the *Image Folder* instructions.
- 3 To enter an *Image Folder* image into the *PDF Preview Footer* dropdown box, select the target image and click on *Select Image*.

Self Registration

The *Self Registration* feature is useful for B2C situations and for large corporate customers. It enables users arriving at the Print Provider's *Home Page* to enter the site without a username and password and perform activities as defined by the Print Provider. This "guest" is required to register during the checkout process. In B2C situations, it is customary to allow the user to self-register and complete the order with a credit card without the need for administrative intervention. In corporate environments, on the other hand, an administrator approval might be required to complete this user's registration.

- **Enable Guest Workflow** When selected, the *Guest Access Path* appears.
- **Guest Access Path** Access to the *Guest* workflow is enabled only through the *Home Page* accessed with this URL.
- **Approval Required** When selected, a supervisor will receive an e-Mail message where he must approve the specific *Guest* user before this user is allowed to place orders.
- **Send an e-Mail message each time a user has registered**
- **Contacts** When *Send an e-Mail message* has been selected, *Contacts* enables entering an e-Mail address for sending the notification e-Mail message.

Pricing

Figure 41: Pricing

- **Customer Pricing Model** – Enables the *Pricing Model* per customer (for an in-depth review of pricing, see the *Generic Pricing Mechanism*, page 281).
- **Hide Price from Customer** – Allows the Print Provider to refrain from providing prices to the specific Print Buyer. This is an account preference and therefore applies to all the users in the account.
- **Disable Shipping Date** – Allows the Print Provider to deny the Print Buyer the ability to request *Shipping* dates. This is an account preference and therefore applies to all the users in the account.
- **Allow Ordering Unpriced Jobs** – Enables the Print Buyer to order Jobs that have not been priced. This is an account preference and therefore applies to all the users in the account.
- **Hide Shipping Price From Customer** – Allows the Print Provider to refrain from providing shipping prices to the specific Print Buyer. This is an account preference and therefore applies to all the users in the account.
- **Oblige Cost Center** – Forces the Print Buyer to enter a Cost Center for each order.
- **Oblige Reference Code** – Forces the Print Buyer to enter a Reference Code for each Job.
- **Customer Tax Rate** – A special tax rate for each Print Buyer. This rate overrides the default tax rate that was set in the *Pricing Tax* field box (see: *Pricing Window*, page 203)

Note: When the *Special Tax Rate* field is left empty, the system uses the default tax rate to calculate the total order price.

- **Customer Tax Name** – Name given to the specific *Customer Tax Rate*
- **Payment Method** – Allows the Print Buyer to determine, from a variety of the payment method(s), the payment method(s) most suited to the Print Buyer. Presently, the Print Buyer can choose from the following methods:

- **Purchase Order**

- **Oblige PO Number** When selected, the Print Buyer must enter the *PO* number when ordering the Job.

Note: In order to activate and therefore select the *Oblige PO Number* option, the *PO Payment Method* must first be selected.

- **Credit Card**

- **Electronic Direct Debit** (Enabled only for *Payment Services* that provide this service)

Note: *Payment Method* is available only upon installation of the *Data Export* module.

- **Default Payment Method** Active when one or more *Payment Methods* have been selected; enables selecting the default payment method selection for all ordering processes – *Shopping Cart*, *Catalog*, *MailToPrint*, and *Print Driver*.
- **Discount** – A permanent discount that is provided for this customer. This discount applies to all of the customer's *Users* and to all pricing modules

Customer Pricing Model

Figure 42: Customer Pricing Model

The *Customer Pricing Model* dropdown box provides the *Customer Print Buyer* with the following pricing option:

- **Not Defined for this level** – Signifies not to activate this *Pricing Model* but to scan the next *Pricing Model* in the hierarchy for activation (for an in-depth review of pricing, see *Generic Pricing Mechanism*, page 281)
- **Not Available** – Activates the *Pricing Model* but does not allow a price to be computed. *Not Available* results in the *Customer Print Buyer* receiving a *Price N/A* notice
- **Excel** – Activates the *Pricing Model* and accesses *Excel*-based pricing data
- **External** – Activates the *Pricing Model* and transfers Job data to an exterior *MIS* system (available upon *External Systems* activation; see *Section VII: ,* page 271)

Excel Pricing

Account **Preferences** **Users** **User Groups** **Departments** **Cost Centers** **Templates** **Catalog Library** **Account Links** **Image Library** **E-Mail**

Pricing: Customer Pricing Model: **Excel** **Excel File:** --- Select Excel File ---
☐ Hide Price From Customer
☐ Disable Shipping Date
☒ Allow Ordering Unpriced Jobs
☐ Hide Shipping Price From Customer
 Customer Tax Rate: %
 Customer Tax Name:
 Payment Method: ☐ CC (Credit Card)
☐ EDD (Electronic Direct Debit)
 Default Payment Method: **PO (Purchase Order)**
 Discount: 0 %

GUI: GUI Version: **Version 3** Default Order Jobs Page: **Launch Pad**
 Default Template View: **Root Folder**

Branding: **Customer Logos:** **Use System Default** Main Title: **Print Provider Name**
 Skin: **Default**
[Preview](#)
 Access Path: <http://192.168.0.177/branding/>
OK **Cancel**

Figure 43: Excel Pricing

To price using *Excel*, carry out the following steps:


- 1 In the *Customer Pricing Model* dropdown box, select *Excel*; the *Excel File* link and dropdown box appear.
- 2 Click on *Excel File*; the *Pricing Excel Files* dialog box appears.

Pricing Excel Files

Name	Uploaded	Size
Sample Excel Pricing With...	01-03-07 13:02	43 KB
Sample Excel Pricing.xls	10-04-06 17:18	39 KB

Upload Files **Select File** **Close**

Figure 44: Pricing Excel Files

- 3 Select a target *Excel* file and then click on the *Download*  button.
- 4 Save the *Excel* file to the disk.
- 5 Open the file in *Excel*.
- 6 Select the *Calculation* tab.

	A	B	C	D	E	F
	Fields Exported From FreeFlow Web Services	Data Exported from FreeFlow Web Services	Fields Imported to FreeFlow Web Services	Data Imported to FreeFlow Web Services	Fields that well aid in calculating the price	The Field data that will aid in calculating the price
1	These are the Fields that you receive from FreeFlow Web Services	This is the Data that you receive from FreeFlow Web Services	These are the Fields that you send to FreeFlow Web Services	This is the data that you send to FreeFlow Web Services	Column for personally adding data that will aid in calculating the price	Column for personally adding data that will aid in calculating the price
2	Do not change these fields	Do not change these fields	Do not change these fields	Add the formulas that you want to use	You can add any fields that you want	You can add any formula
3	JobID	5019	Cost	120		
4	JobName	GM Mailer	Price	180	Cost Unit	1
5	JobStatusID	2	AdjustedPrice	180	Base Cost	20
6	JobStatusName	ready to order	CustomerPrice	144	Markup	150%
7	RefCode	0	DiscountRate	20%		
8	CustomerRefCode	0	Discount	36	Output Device	Test_Device
9	JobTypeID	Post Card	UrgencyRate	0%		
10	JobTypeName	Post Card	UrgencyPrice	0		
11	JobSubTypeID	custom	TaxRate	10%		
12	JobSubtypeName	Custom	Tax	14.40		
13	Copies	100	TotalNoTax	144		
14	FlatCount	2	Total	158.40		
15	FlatWidth	8.5	PressSheetSize	A3		
16	FlatHeight	5.5	OutputDeviceID	Test_Device		
17	FlatSize	5.5x8.5				
18	FlatOrientation	landscape				
19	FlatSides	TwoSidedHeadToHead				
20	PageCount	2				
21	PageWidth	8.5				
22	PageHeight	5.5				
23	PaperCategory	Coated				
24	PaperTexture	Gloss				

Figure 45: Excel File Sample

- 7 Enter your formulas in the purple colored cells.
- 8 Save the *Excel* with a new name, upload and select in the *Customer Pricing*.

Payment Method

Payment Method: ☒ PO (Purchase Order)
☒ Oblige PO Number
☒ CC (Credit Card)
☒ EDD (Electronic Direct Debit)
 Default Payment Method: PO (Purchase Order ▼)

Figure 46: Payment Method

Payment Method is composed of the following elements:

- Payment Method Options
- Default Payment Method

Payment Method Options provides the following payment options:

- **PO (Purchase Order)** Standard payment method. When *Purchase Order* has been selected, the *Oblige PO Number* option becomes activated. When the *Oblige PO Number* option has been selected, the Print Buyer will be required to enter the Job's *PO* number during the ordering process.
- **CC (Credit Card)** *Credit Card* enables Print Buyers to carry out payment for Print Provider services through the use of an online payment service. The *Credit Card* option will be displayed and available according to licensing authorization (see *Integrations, Section VII: , page 271*).
- **EDD (Electronic Direct Debit)** *EDD* enables Print Buyers to carry out payment for Print Provider services through the use of an online payment service that supports *Electronic Direct Debit*. The *EDD* option will be displayed and available according to licensing authorization (see *Integrations, Section VII: , page 271*).

Payment Method also provides the following option:

- **Default Payment Method** All selected *Payment Methods* appear in the *Default Payment Method* dropdown box. The selected *Default Payment Method* option will be automatically selected during the ordering process.

Note the following:

The Print Provider can select all of the available options or any combination of two or more options. However, at least one option must be selected.

GUI

GUI contains the following dropdown boxes:

- GUI Version
- Default Template View
- Default Order Jobs Page

GUI Version

GUI Version enables the Print Provider to provide the customer with the latest *GUI* look and feel or any previous *GUI* look and feel.

Default Template View

Default Template View dropdown box provides the following three options:

- **Root Folder** Enables selecting the top folder in the *Template Library* as the folder that the Print Buyer user accesses when initiating a Job from the *Template Library*.
- **Specific Folder** Enables selecting a specific folder in the *Template Library* as the folder that the Print Buyer user accesses when initiating a Job from the *Template Library*.
- **Catalog** Enables selecting a specific catalog in the *Template Library* as the catalog that the Print Buyer user accesses when initiating a Job from the *Template Library*.

Default Order Jobs Page

The *Default Order Jobs Page* enables determining which of the following *Order Jobs* view appears when the Print Buyer user enters the system:

- **Launch Pad** – A view that provides the user with direct access to frequently used functions of Job ordering and Job tracking.
- **Template View** – A view that provides the user with a Template view for Job ordering.

Branding

FreeFlow Web Services provides the capability to create a customized web site for each Print Buyer account. The level of customization depends on the unique needs of the Print Buyer. Branding contains the following elements:

- Customer Logos
- Skin
- Access Path
- Main Title

Customer Logos

Customer Logos enables the Print Provider to add a unique Print Buyer logo to the top left corner of the Print Buyer page. This is appropriate for situations where the standard *Web Services* look and feel is adequate and the only thing required is the addition of the Print Buyer's logo.

Working with Customer Logos

Customer Logos are selected from the *Customer Logos* dropdown box. To enter new *Customer Logos* images into the dropdown box, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the *Customer Logo* link; the *Image Folder* dialog box appears.
- 2 To upload an image into the *Image Folder*, follow the *Image Folder* instructions.
- 3 To enter an *Image Folder* image into the *Customer Logo* dropdown box, select the target image and click on *Select Image*.

Skin

When the *Branding* option has been enabled, *Skin* enables the Print Provider to select a personalized skin to the Print Buyer application.

Note: The *Preview* link enables previewing the skins featured in the dropdown box.

Access Path

Access Path provides the Print Buyer with the path necessary for accessing the branded homepage for this Print Buyer.

Main Title

Main Title enables changing the Print Provider name to the Print Buyer name in the following application locations:

- The tooltip that appears over the *Application* tab in the tab bar located on the bottom of the screen
- Browser name bar located at the top of the screen

Section III: Users Panel

The screenshot shows the 'Users' panel with a top navigation bar containing tabs: Account, Preferences, Users (selected), User Groups, Departments, Cost Centers, Templates, Catalog Library, Account Links, Image Library, and E-Mail. On the left, there is a 'Search for Users:' field with 'Search' and 'Reset' buttons, and a 'Users:' list box containing 'Abigail Jeffrey', 'Dana Sivan' (highlighted), and 'Whitburn Tavistock'. An 'Add' button is at the bottom of the list. The main area displays the 'General' settings for 'Dana Sivan', with a 'Disable User Account' checkbox. The 'Settings' section includes fields for 'Login Name' (Dana Sivan), 'Password' (masked), 'Privilege Level' (Admin), 'Department' (None), 'Cost Centre' (Assign Cost Centers), 'Order Jobs Page' (Use Customer Default), and 'Template View' (Use Customer Default). There is also an 'IP Filter' field and a link to 'Approval E-Mail Settings'. A 'Contact Information' section contains fields for 'First Name' (Dana), 'Last Name' (Sivan), 'Job Title' (President), 'Company' (Dana Sivan Investments), 'Phone' (212-239-4431), 'Mobile' (212-239-4223), and 'Fax' (212-239-4435). 'Ok' and 'Cancel' buttons are at the bottom right.

Figure 47: Users Panel

The *Users* panel enables the Print Provider to view and modify all information concerning *Users* in each Print Buyer organization.

The *Users* panel has been divided into the following two views:

- General
- Shipping and Billing

General

The *Users General* panel has been divided into the following panes:

- Users List
- User Search Engine
- Settings
- Contact Information

Users List Pane

The *Users List* contains a list of all the *Users* that are associated with the specific Print Buyer. Clicking on a *User* name accesses a series of *User* information boxes, where the Print Provider enters all relevant data. The *Users List* pane also contains the *Users List* toolbar, which enables uploading a database of users, exporting the *Users List* and removing a target user from the list.

To add a new *User* to the *User List*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 In the *Users List*, click on *Add*; *New User* appears in the *Users List*. The *Information Fields* appear without data.
- 2 In the *Information Fields*, enter all relevant data.
- 3 Click on the *Edit Address* link to enter the *Address* details.
- 4 Click on *OK*.

User Search Engine

The *User Search Engine* aids the Print Provider in quickly accessing a specific *User* or group of *Users*. To work with the *User Search Engine*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 In the field box titled: *Search for Users*, enter a partial or complete target name.
- 2 Click on *Search*; the name(s) appear in the *Users List*.
- 3 To restore the complete *Users List*, click on *Reset*.

Settings

The *Users* panel is composed of the following *User Information* fields:

- **Login Name** – A login name that the *Users* must enter into the *Login* field on the *Home Page* in order to access the system
- **Password** – *User's* password, displayed in asterisks (***) instead of the typed characters. The *Users* uses this password to access the system from the *Home Page*
- **Privilege Level** – A dropdown box for selecting the level of user privileges (see *System Users Privileges*, page 8)
- **Department** – A dropdown box for selecting the department that the *User* is associated with.
- **Cost Center** – Clicking on the *Assign Cost Centers Link* accesses the *Cost Center Assignment* dialog box.
- **IP Filter** – The *Internet Protocol* that regulates computer *Internet* connections. The *IP Filter* allows access to the system only from a computer with the specified *IP*
- **Order Jobs Page** A dropdown box that provides a selection of *Order Jobs Page* views available to the Print Buyer
- **Template View** Dropdown box that enables the Print Provider to select which *Template* locations will be available to the Print Buyer:
 - **Use Customer Default** This default has been set in the *GUI* panel of the *Preference* window. See *Default Template View*, page 69.
- **Approval E-Mail Settings** Accesses the *Approval E-Mail Settings* dialog box for determining who must approve the Jobs and to where the *Approval* replies will be sent.

Cost Center Assignment

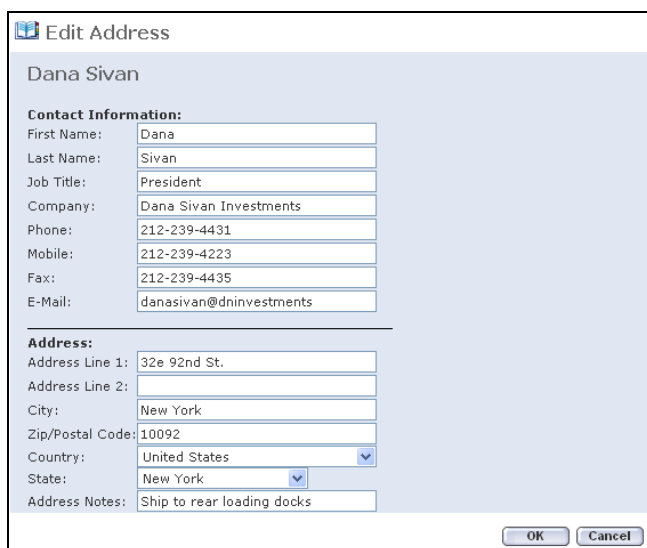
Each Print Buyer user can have one or more *Cost Centers* assigned to him/her. During Job ordering, the Print Buyer user can select to which *Cost Center* to charge the Job.

Contact Information

Contact Information enables entering the following *Users* information and displays the *Edit Address* link and address details:

- First Name
- Last Name
- Job Title
- Company
- Phone
- Mobile Phone
- Fax
- e-Mail Address

Edit Address



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Edit Address" with a light blue background. At the top, the name "Dana Sivan" is displayed. Below this, there are two sections: "Contact Information:" and "Address:". The "Contact Information:" section contains fields for First Name (Dana), Last Name (Sivan), Job Title (President), Company (Dana Sivan Investments), Phone (212-239-4431), Mobile (212-239-4223), Fax (212-239-4435), and E-Mail (danasivan@dninvestments). The "Address:" section contains fields for Address Line 1 (32e 92nd St.), Address Line 2 (empty), City (New York), Zip/Postal Code (10092), Country (United States, shown as a dropdown), State (New York, shown as a dropdown), and Address Notes (Ship to rear loading docks). At the bottom right of the dialog box are "OK" and "Cancel" buttons.

Figure 48: Edit Address

The *Edit Address* link accesses the *Edit Address* dialog box, which enables placing all of the *User Contact* details into the *Address Book*.

Shipping and Billing

The screenshot shows a web application interface for managing user accounts. At the top, there is a navigation bar with tabs: Account, Preferences, Users, User Groups, Departments, Cost Centers, Templates, Catalog Library, Account Links, Image Library, and E-Mail. The 'Users' tab is selected. Below the navigation bar, there is a search area labeled 'Search for Users:' with a text input field and 'Search' and 'Reset' buttons. A list of users is displayed below the search area, with 'Dana Sivan' selected. The main content area is titled 'Dana Sivan' and has a sub-tab 'Shipping and Billing'. It contains two sections: 'Shipping Address' and 'Billing Address'. Both sections have a checkbox for 'Use Default' (checked) and a text area for the address details. The address details for both are: Address Line 1: 32e 92nd St., City: New York, Zip/Postal Code: 10092, Country: United States, State: NY, and Address Notes: Ship to rear loading docks. There is an 'Add' button at the bottom left and 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom right.

Figure 49: Shipping and Billing

Shipping and Billing displays which shipping and billing addresses will be associated with the user. It is possible to associate with this user the default Shipping and Billing addresses of the Print Buyer account, or to select these addresses from the *Address Book*.

Address Book

Address Book facilitates the creation and maintenance of various lists of contacts and accompanying contact information. *Address Book* is accessible throughout the system, through the various workflows, both for entering additional contacts and for selecting shipping or billing addresses.

The screenshot shows the 'Address Book' application window. On the left, there is a search bar with a magnifying glass icon and a 'Search' button. Below it, a 'Show Group' dropdown menu is set to 'Users'. A list of contacts is displayed, with 'Dana Sivan' selected. The main area on the right shows the contact details for 'Dana Sivan'. The 'Contact Information' section includes fields for First Name (Dana), Last Name (Sivan), Job Title (President), Company (Dana Sivan Investments), Phone (212-239-4431), Mobile (212-239-4223), Fax (212-239-4435), and E-Mail (danasivan@dninvestments). The 'Address' section includes fields for Address Line 1 (32e 92nd St.), Address Line 2, City (New York), Zip/Postal Code (10092), Country (United States), and State (New York). There is also an 'Address Notes' field with the text 'Ship to rear loading docks'. At the bottom right, there are 'Select' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Figure 50: Administration – Address Book

Address Book is composed of the following elements:

- Search Mechanism
- Contact Pane
- Contact Information Panel
- Belongs to Group

Note: The *Belongs to Group* feature appears only in the *Administrator* view and allows the *Administrator* to move addresses from the *Personal* group to the *Public* group or vice-versa.

Search Mechanism

The *Search Engine* enables quickly accessing a specific contact or group of contacts.




The *Search Engine* is composed of the following elements.

- **Search Address Text Box** – Enables entering a complete or partial *Contact* name to be searched.
- **Search** – Begins the search.
- **Reset** – Resets the search and displays the entire *User* list.

Contacts Pane

The *Contacts Pane* provides access to several lists of contacts that are associated with the specific Print Buyer and/or user.

There are three types of contacts:

- | | | |
|------------------|---|---|
| System User |  | <i>System User</i> within the customer's organization. The <i>System User</i> is set in the <i>Users/General</i> window |
| Public Contact |  | Addresses of customer contacts available to all <i>System Users</i> |
| Personal Contact |  | Addresses of customer contacts available only to the specific <i>User</i> |

Group

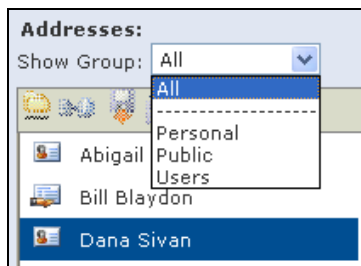


Figure 51: Groups






Group provides a dropdown box that enables the user to classify the contacts into the following categories:

- **Personal** – Allows users to manage and view their own private group of contacts.
- **Public** – Administrator-managed group of contacts that can be viewed by all users.
- **Users** – All Print Buyer users are entered into the *Address Book* from the *Customers/Settings/Users* panel.

Note: The *All* option enables simultaneously viewing all of the groups.

Contacts Toolbar

The *Contacts Toolbar* contains the following elements:

- | | | |
|--------------------------|---|---|
| Rename Address |  | Enables renaming the target address. |
| Duplicate Address |  | Enables duplicating the target address. |
| Import Addresses |  | Enables importing a file containing a list of addresses. |
| Export Addresses |  | Enables creating and exporting a file containing the list of addresses. |
| Delete Addresses |  | Enables deleting a target contact. |

Contact Information

The screenshot shows a web application titled "Address Book". On the left, there is a search bar labeled "Search Address:" with "Search" and "Reset" buttons. Below it, an "Addresses:" section shows a "Show Group:" dropdown set to "Public". A list of contacts is displayed, with "Dana Sivan" selected. A "New" button is at the bottom of this list. The main area displays the "Contact Information" for Dana Sivan, including fields for First Name, Last Name, Job Title, Company, Phone, Mobile, Fax, and E-Mail. Below this is the "Address" section with fields for Address Line 1, Address Line 2, City, Zip/Postal Code, Country (a dropdown set to "United States"), State (a dropdown set to "New York"), and Address Notes. "Select" and "Cancel" buttons are at the bottom right.

Address Book

Search Address:

Addresses:
Show Group:

Bill Blaydon
Dana Sivan

Dana Sivan

Contact Information:
 First Name: Dana
 Last Name: Sivan
 Job Title: President
 Company: Dana Sivan Investments
 Phone: 212-873-4452
 Mobile: 212-873-4453
 Fax: 212-873-4990
 E-Mail: danasiva@dninvestments.com

Address:
 Address Line 1: 34E 94th St.
 Address Line 2:
 City: NYC
 Zip/Postal Code: 1098
 Country:
 State:
 Address Notes: All deliveries through rear loading d

Figure 52: Address Book Contact Information

Contact Information is composed of the following elements:

- **Contact Information** – Enables entering the appropriate contact details
- **Address** – Enables entering the appropriate address details
- **Belongs to Group** – Enables changing the contact's status to either *Public* or *Personal*

Section IV: User Groups

The *User Groups* window enables creating groups of users within the Print Buyer organization.

User Group is composed of the following two elements:

- User Groups Pane
- User Groups Panel

User Groups pane is composed of the following elements:

- **User Groups List** A list of all the various groups of users
- **Add Group Button** Enables creating a new *User Group*
- **Delete Group Button** Enables deleting a selected *User Group*

User Groups panel provides the following two views:

- General
- Users

General

Figure 53: General-User Groups

General enables naming a new group or renaming an already-created group. In addition, *General* allows the user to add a description of the group.

Users

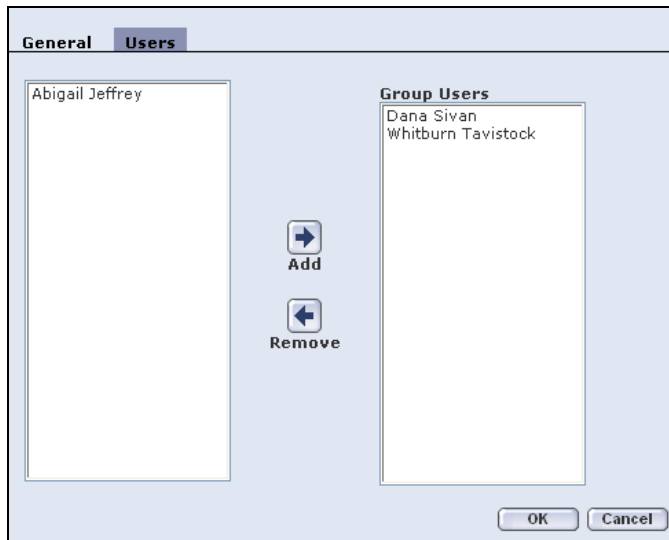


Figure 54: User-User Groups

Users is composed of the following elements:

- **Customer User List** A list of all the system users in the *Customer* organization
- **Group User List** List of all the users in the specific *User Group*
- **Add and Remove** Enables adding users to and removing users from the specific *User Group*

To create and populate a new *User Group*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on *Add Group*; the *General* view appears in the *User Groups* panel and a new *Group* name appears in the *User Groups* list.
- 2 Enter an appropriate name into the *Group Name* field and, if desired, enter a description.
- 3 Click on the *Users* tab; the *Users* view appears.
- 4 Double-click on a target user name or select a target user name and click on *Add*; the user name is transferred to the *Group Users* list.
- 5 To remove a user from the *Group Users* list, double-click on the target user name or select the target user name and click on *Add*; the user name is transferred to the *Users* list.
- 6 Click on *OK* to save the settings.

Note: 1. A user can belong to more than one group.

Section V: Departments Panel

Department Management

Departments	
Name	Number of Users
Marketing	1
Purchasing	1
R&D	1

Department Name:

Figure 55: Departments Panel

The *Departments* panel contains a list of departments in the Print Buyer organization and the number of *Users* in each department. The Print Provider can manually add or delete departments from the list.

Note: Departments are intended for the Print Buyer's internal use and have no consequence in regard to the Print Provider.

The *Department* panel is composed of the following elements:

- **Name List** – Names of the various departments
- **Number of Users List** – Number of *Users* in each department
- **Department Name Text Box** – For entering or modifying the name of the target department
- **Update Button** – Enables the Print Provider to enter the correct name of a newly entered department
- **Add Department Button** – Allows adding a new department
- **Delete Department Button** – Allows removing a target department
- **Import Link** Enables importing a list of departments by accessing the *Import Departments* dialog box
- **Export Link** Enables exporting a list of all users, within a csv file, to a target folder within the system

Adding a Department

In order to add a department to the *Department* list, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Enter a department name into the *Department Name* text box.
- 2 Click on *Add Department*; the new department appears in the list.

Note: In order to assign a *User* to a *Department*, in the *Users* window, for each user, select a department from the *Department* dropdown box.

Deleting a Department


In order to delete a department from the *Department* list, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the target *Department*.
- 2 Click on *Delete Department*; the department is deleted from the list.

Importing a Department List

In order to import a *Department* list, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the *Import* link; the *Import Departments* window appears
- 2 Browse to the target file (containing the *Department* list), select the appropriate *File Type* and *Encoding* and then click on *Start Uploading*; the *Import Database* dialog box appears.
- 3 Map the *Department Name* with the appropriate field name and click on *Next*; the *Import Finished* window appears.

Note: 1. Problematic *Department* names will be tagged with the *Error*  icon and an explanation will appear in the *Message* column.

2. The *Link to Import Report File* link accesses an *Excel* file worksheet containing the imported *Department* names.

Exporting the Department List

To export the *Department List* residing in the system, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the *Export* link; the *Export Departments* dialog box appears.
- 2 Select the appropriate *File Type* and *Encoding* and then click on *Export*; the *Download File* dialog box appears.
- 3 Carry out the instructions that appear in the dialog box and save the file in an appropriate folder.

Section VI: Cost Centers Panel

FreeFlow Web Services enables management of *Cost Centers* and relating order charges to the *Cost Centers*. For this purpose, it is possible to assign a budget to a *Cost Center*. The price of all the orders charged to the *Cost Center* is deducted from the budget. When the budget reaches a predefined minimum level, an administrator is notified by e-Mail. When an order exceeds the remaining budget balance, the application prevents the user from charging the order to the *Cost Center*. The user either has to postpone the order until the budget is updated, charge the order to another *Cost Center* or pay with a credit card.

Figure 56: Cost Centers Panel

- *Cost Centers* is composed of the following elements:
- Cost Center List Pane
- Configuration Panel

Cost Center List Pane

The *Cost Center List* pane displays a list of the cost centers in each Print Buyer organization and includes the code number for each cost center. The Print Provider can manually add or delete cost centers from the list as well as change the code number listed for each cost center.

Note: *Cost Centers* are intended for the Print Buyer's internal use and have no consequence in regard to the Print Provider.

Configuration Panel

The *Configuration* panel contains the following elements:

- **Cost Center Name** Name of specific *Cost Center* selected in the *Name List*
- **Cost Center Code** A unique identifier for each *Cost Center*, as determined by the user
- **Cost Center ID** System-generated identification number
- **Description** Field for entering a description of the *Cost Center*
- **Enable Budget Checkbox** Enables budget management for this *Cost Center*
- **Budget Name** Field for entering the name of the budget
- **Total** Total budget as was set in the *Set Cost Center Budget* dialog box
- **Set Budget Button** Enables setting up the total budget amount
- **Cost Center Minimum Budget** The *Minimum* budget – when the *Budget Left* amount is equal or less than this amount, a notification e-Mail is sent to the budget administrator
- **Used Budget** Displays the amount of expended budget
- **Remaining Budget** Displays the amount remaining in the budget
- **Administrator' e-Mail** The e-Mail address to which the notification e-Mail is sent
- **Add Cost Center** – Accesses the *Add Cost Center* dialog box for entering a new *Cost Center*
- **Update Cost Center** – Enables updating all *Cost Center* settings
- **Delete Cost Center** – Allows the Print Provider to delete a selected *Cost Center*

Adding a Cost Center

In order to add a *Cost Center* to the *Cost Center* list, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on *Add Cost Center*; the add *Cost Center* dialog box appears.
- 2 Enter a relevant *Cost Center* name and *Cost Center* code and click on *OK*; the new name and code appear in the *Cost Center* configuration pane.

Deleting a Cost Center

In order to delete a *Cost Center* list, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the target *Cost Center*.
- 2 Click on *Delete Code Center*; the *Cost Center Delete* dialog box appears.
- 3 Click on *Yes* to delete the selected *Cost Center* or *No* to cancel the *Delete* activity.

Section VII: Templates Panel

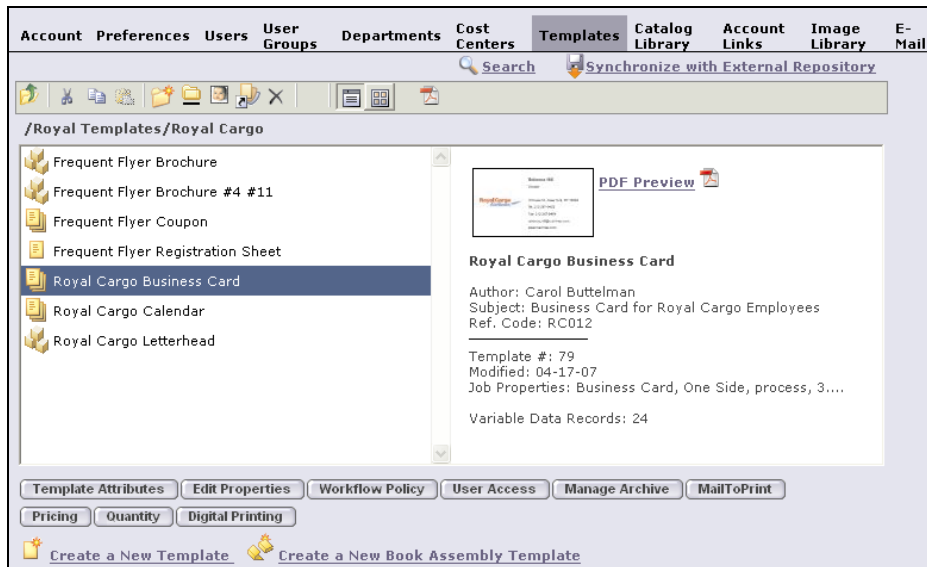


Figure 57: Customer Templates

Templates Panel Elements

The *Templates* panel enables the Print Provider to view the parameters of all templates residing in each Print Buyer *Template Library*.













The *Templates* panel contains the following elements:

- **Templates Toolbar** Contains various buttons for modifying the content of the *Template* panel
- **Search Link** Accesses the *Template Search* panel
- **Synchronize with External Repository Link** Accesses the *Choose Document Source* window for importing documents from an external document repository
- **Templates List Pane** Alphabetically lists all template folders and files
- **Templates Description Pane** Describes the folder or file that has been selected in the *Template List* pane
- **Template Attributes Button** Accesses the *Template Attributes* dialog box, which allows the Print Provider to enter information that can be used when searching for a specific template. See *Search*, page 88.
- **Edit Properties Button** Accesses the *Edit Properties* dialog box for examining the various parameters
- **Workflow Policy Button** Accesses the *Workflow Policy* dialog box
- **User Access** Accesses the *User Access* dialog box
- **Manage Archive** Accesses the *Manage Template Archive* window
- **MailToPrint** Accesses the *MailToPrint* dialog box
- **Pricing Button** Accesses the *Template Pricing* window for modifying the price of the templates

- **Quantity Button** Accesses the *Template Quantity* window where the Print Provider determines the possible ordering quantities for the template. See *Template Quantity*, page 96.
- **Digital Printing** Accesses the Digital Printing dialog box where the Print Provider can define instructions for a digital printing device
- **Create New Template Link** Accesses the *New Template* creation wizard
- **Create a New Book Assembly Template Link** Accesses the *New Book Assembly Template* wizard

Templates Toolbar


The following table lists the *Templates Toolbar* buttons and describes their functions:

Button		Function
Up One Level		Moves one folder level up
Cut		Cuts a folder or a template for pasting into a new location (cutting can also be carried out by pressing on <i>Control+X</i>).
Copy		Copies a folder or a template for pasting into a new location (copying can also be carried out by pressing on <i>Control+C</i>)
Paste		Enables pasting a cut or copied folder or template into a new location in the <i>Templates List</i> pane. This folder or template can be pasted into any folder and at any level. Additionally, templates can be pasted into the list as single templates (pasting can also be carried out by pressing on <i>Control+V</i>).
Create New Folder		Creates and adds a new folder to the current folder/template level folder
Rename		Renames templates and folders
Change Icon		Opens the <i>Image Library</i> for changing a folder icon
Catalog Link		Enables placing catalogs of templates into the <i>Templates List</i> pane.
Delete		Permanently deletes templates and folders from the <i>Template Library</i>
View List		Accesses the <i>View</i> list, which divides the <i>Templates</i> pane into the <i>Templates List</i> pane and the <i>Templates Description</i> pane.
View Thumbnails		Accesses the <i>Thumbnails</i> list, which features thumbnail views of the various folders and files.
PDF Preview		Accesses a <i>PDF</i> preview image of selected files.

Note: It is possible to select several templates and folders using the *Ctrl* or *Shift* keys and perform on them *Cut*, *Copy* and *Delete* operations.


Creating a New Folder

In order to create a new folder, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the *Create New Folder*  button; the *New Folder* dialog box appears.
- 2 Enter a new folder name into the provided field.
- 3 Click on *OK*; the new folder appears in the current list.

Renaming a Template or a Folder

In order to rename a template or a folder, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on a template/folder; the selected template/folder is highlighted.
- 2 Click on the *Rename*  button; the *Rename* dialog box appears.
- 3 Highlight the template or folder name and enter a new name in the dialog box (an unlimited number of characters and spaces can be used).
- 4 Click on *OK*.

Note: *Template/Folder* names can be no longer than 50 characters.

Image Library

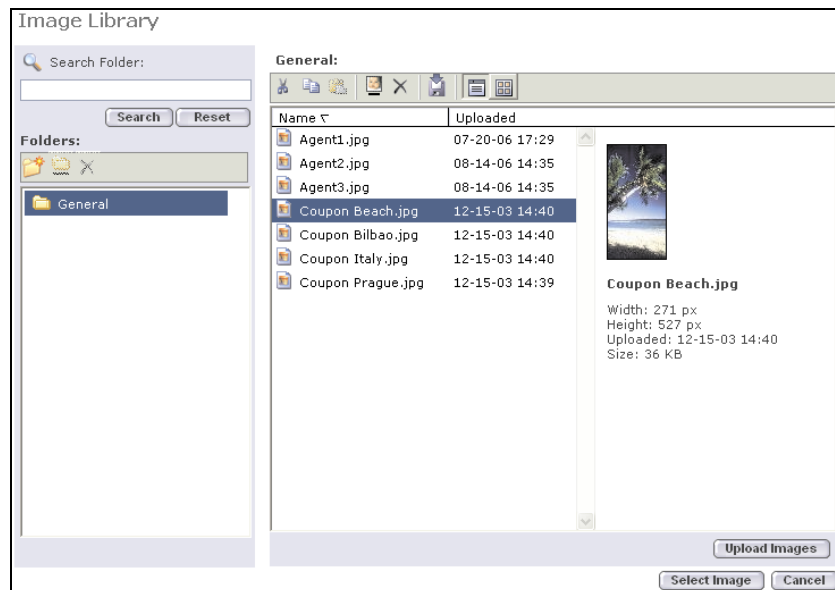









Figure 58: Image Library

The system provides the Print Provider with the means by which to change the icons that represent the various folders featured in the *Templates* panel. This is accomplished by accessing the *Image Library* window, which appears when clicking on the *Change Icon*  button. From the *Image Library* window, the Print Provider can upload any image to the *system's* server either by selecting the *Use FTP Multi-File Upload* checkbox and following the instructions that appear or by clearing the *Use FTP Multi-File Upload* checkbox and following the associated instructions.

The following tables list and describe the *Image Library* window:

Element	Description
Folders List Pane	Contains a dynamic list of folders containing icons.
Image Parameters Panel	Displays the images contained in the folders that are selected in the <i>Folders List</i> pane.
Search Folder	Engine for searching for specific folders in the <i>Folders List</i> pane.

Button	Description
New Folder 	Enables entering a new folder into the <i>Folders List</i> pane.
Rename 	Enables renaming a target folder in the <i>Folders List</i> pane.
Delete 	Enables deleting a target folder from the <i>Folders List</i> pane.
Cut 	Enables cutting an image from one file, for pasting into another file (cutting can also be carried out by pressing on <i>Control+X</i>).
Copy 	Enables copying an image from one file, for pasting into another file (copying can also be carried out by pressing on <i>Control+C</i>).
Paste 	Enables pasting a cut or copied image into a file (pasting can also be carried out by pressing on <i>Control+V</i>).
Upload Images	Accesses the <i>FTP Upload</i> window.
Select Images	Selects the target image from the <i>Image Parameters</i> panel.
Close	Closes the <i>Image Library</i> window.

Changing an Icon Image

In order to change an *Icon* image, carry out the following steps:

- 1 To upload a single file, click on the *Upload a File* radio button and carry out the instructions.
- 2 To upload multiple files, it is recommended to use the *FTP Multi-File Upload*; where available, click on the appropriate radio button and carry out the instructions.

Search

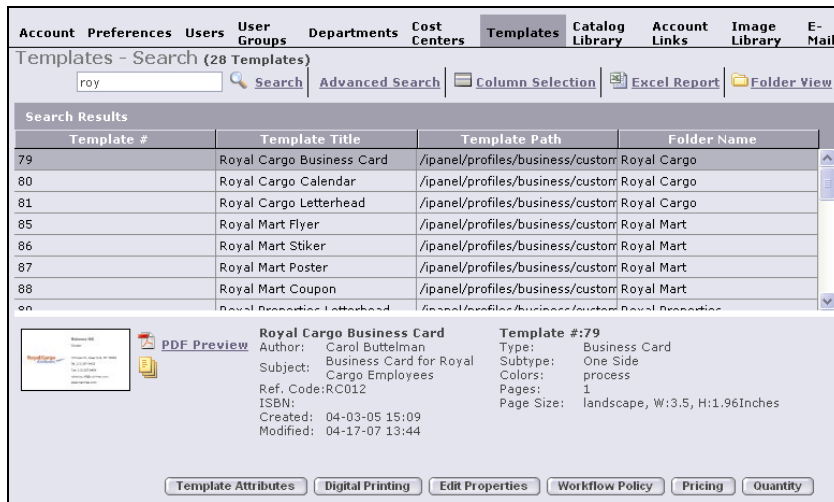


Figure 59: Templates - Search

Search offers a variety of methods to locate a specific template or a group of templates that bear a common denominator.

Search is composed of the following elements:

- Search Data Box
- Search Results Panel
- Job Properties Panel
- Advanced Search Link
- Column Selection Link
- Excel Report Link
- Folder View Link
- Templates Attributes Button
- Digital Printing Button
- Edit Properties Button
- Workflow Policy Button
- Pricing Button
- Quality Button

Search Data Box

Search Data Box allows the Print Provider to enter a complete or partial template name (the more complete the name, the more precise the search results).

Search Results Panel

Search Results lists the templates that have been discovered by the search. *Search Results* is divided up into *Attribute Columns*. Clicking on the *Attribute Columns* tabs vertically sorts the templates. Presence or absence of *Attribute Columns* is determined in *Column Selection*.

Advanced Search

The *Advanced Search* link accesses the *Advanced Template Search* dialog box.

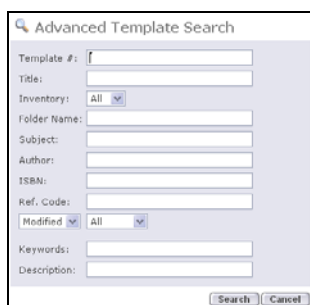
The image shows a dialog box titled "Advanced Template Search". It contains several input fields and dropdown menus for searching templates. The fields are: Template # (text), Title (text), Inventory (dropdown menu with "All" selected), Folder Name (text), Subject (text), Author (text), ISBN (text), Ref. Code (text), Modified (dropdown menu with "All" selected), Keywords (text), and Description (text). At the bottom right, there are "Search" and "Cancel" buttons.

Figure 60: Advanced Templates Search

Advanced Search enables the user to enter specific template attributes that will narrow the scope of the search. *Advanced Search* also provides an advanced date search mechanism, which divides templates into created and modified templates.

Column Selection

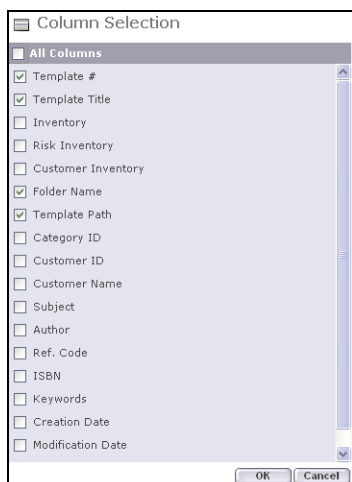
The image shows a dialog box titled "Column Selection". It contains a list of template attributes with checkboxes next to them. The attributes are: Template # (checked), Template Title (checked), Inventory (unchecked), Risk Inventory (unchecked), Customer Inventory (unchecked), Folder Name (checked), Template Path (checked), Category ID (unchecked), Customer ID (unchecked), Customer Name (unchecked), Subject (unchecked), Author (unchecked), Ref. Code (unchecked), ISBN (unchecked), Keywords (unchecked), Creation Date (unchecked), and Modification Date (unchecked). At the bottom right, there are "OK" and "Cancel" buttons.

Figure 61: Column Selection

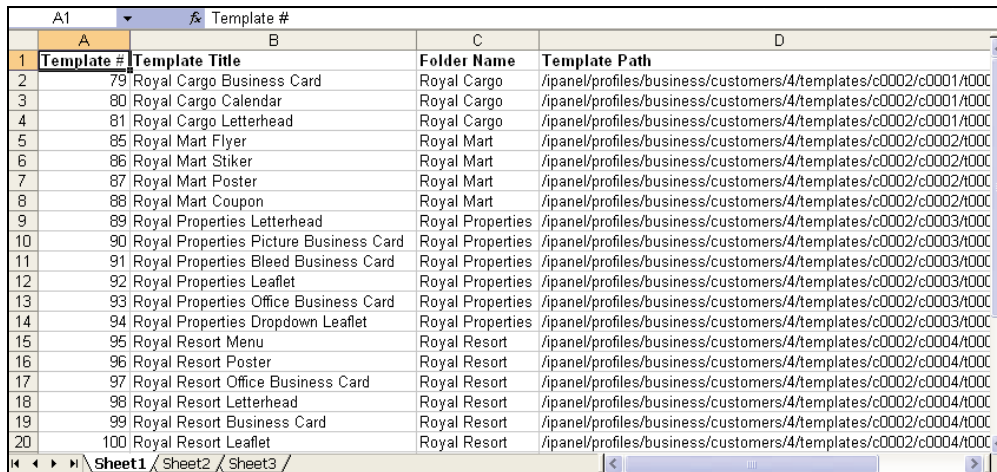
Column Selection lists the template attributes. When an attribute is checkmarked, a column bearing this attribute name appears in the *Search Results* panel. Clearing an *Attribute* checkbox removes the *Attribute* column.

Folder View

Clicking on *Folder View* returns the user to the *Templates* panel.

Synchronize with External Repository

For systems that have access to the *FreeFlow Repository* or *XMPie PersonalEffect*, *Synchronize with External Repository* accesses the *Choose Document Source* window and enables importing templates from external systems.



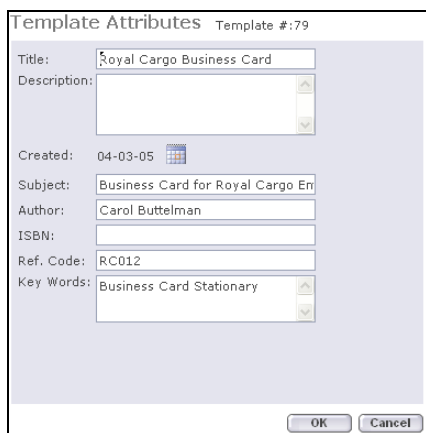
	A	B	C	D
	Template #	Template Title	Folder Name	Template Path
2	79	Royal Cargo Business Card	Royal Cargo	/ipanel/profiles/business/customers/4/templates/c0002/c0001/000
3	80	Royal Cargo Calendar	Royal Cargo	/ipanel/profiles/business/customers/4/templates/c0002/c0001/000
4	81	Royal Cargo Letterhead	Royal Cargo	/ipanel/profiles/business/customers/4/templates/c0002/c0001/000
5	85	Royal Mart Flyer	Royal Mart	/ipanel/profiles/business/customers/4/templates/c0002/c0002/000
6	86	Royal Mart Sticker	Royal Mart	/ipanel/profiles/business/customers/4/templates/c0002/c0002/000
7	87	Royal Mart Poster	Royal Mart	/ipanel/profiles/business/customers/4/templates/c0002/c0002/000
8	88	Royal Mart Coupon	Royal Mart	/ipanel/profiles/business/customers/4/templates/c0002/c0002/000
9	89	Royal Properties Letterhead	Royal Properties	/ipanel/profiles/business/customers/4/templates/c0002/c0003/000
10	90	Royal Properties Picture Business Card	Royal Properties	/ipanel/profiles/business/customers/4/templates/c0002/c0003/000
11	91	Royal Properties Bleed Business Card	Royal Properties	/ipanel/profiles/business/customers/4/templates/c0002/c0003/000
12	92	Royal Properties Leaflet	Royal Properties	/ipanel/profiles/business/customers/4/templates/c0002/c0003/000
13	93	Royal Properties Office Business Card	Royal Properties	/ipanel/profiles/business/customers/4/templates/c0002/c0003/000
14	94	Royal Properties Dropdown Leaflet	Royal Properties	/ipanel/profiles/business/customers/4/templates/c0002/c0003/000
15	95	Royal Resort Menu	Royal Resort	/ipanel/profiles/business/customers/4/templates/c0002/c0004/000
16	96	Royal Resort Poster	Royal Resort	/ipanel/profiles/business/customers/4/templates/c0002/c0004/000
17	97	Royal Resort Office Business Card	Royal Resort	/ipanel/profiles/business/customers/4/templates/c0002/c0004/000
18	98	Royal Resort Letterhead	Royal Resort	/ipanel/profiles/business/customers/4/templates/c0002/c0004/000
19	99	Royal Resort Business Card	Royal Resort	/ipanel/profiles/business/customers/4/templates/c0002/c0004/000
20	100	Royal Resort Leaflet	Royal Resort	/ipanel/profiles/business/customers/4/templates/c0002/c0004/000

Figure 62: Templates Attributes

To access a template from the external repository, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Select either *FreeFlow Repository* or *XMPie PersonalEffect* and then click on *Start Import Wizard*.
- 2 Follow the wizard steps to completion.

Templates Attributes Dialog Box



Template Attributes Template #: 79

Title: Royal Cargo Business Card

Description:

Created: 04-03-05

Subject: Business Card for Royal Cargo En

Author: Carol Buttelman

ISBN:

Ref. Code: RC012

Key Words: Business Card Stationary

OK Cancel

Figure 63: Templates Attributes

Templates Attributes enables the Print Provider to enter template metadata that can be used for template *Search*. These attributes can also be entered by the Print Buyer when creating the template (see *Print Buyer Guide, Template Attributes*).

Digital Printing Properties Dialog Box

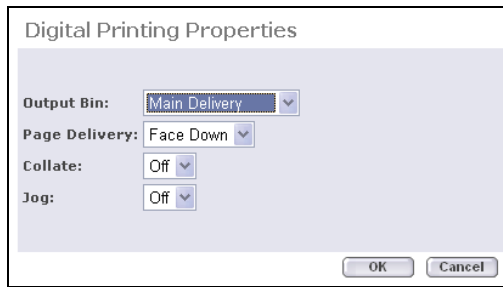


Figure 64: Digital Printing

Digital Printing enables setting the following digital parameters:

Output Bin When supported by the digital printer, enables sending the printing pages to the selected bin or tray

Page Delivery Enables selecting either the *Face Up* or *Face Down* option

Collate Enables the *Collate* option

Jog Enables physically separating groups of pages within the stack of printed pages

Edit Properties Dialog Box

Figure 65: Print Buyer Edit Properties

Clicking on the *Edit Properties* button accesses the *Edit Properties* window (the Print Provider *Edit Properties* window is identical to the Print Buyer *Edit Properties* window). In the *Edit Properties* window, the Print Provider can define the default properties for a template or override the Print Buyer settings (i.e. modify a problematic file or resolve a mismatch problem).

Edit Properties enables modifying the various *Template* properties and includes the following elements:

- **Type** Accesses the *Change Job Type* window
- **Finishing** Accesses the *Finishing* window for defining the finishing parameters for the given template
- **Paper** – Accesses the *Paper* window
- **Printing Quality** Accesses the *Printing Quality* window
- **Color Channels** Accesses the *Color Channels* window
- **Upload File** Allows the uploading of a new file to the *Template*
- **File Upload Report** Accesses the *File Upload Report*
- **PDF Preview** Accesses a PDF preview of the *Template*
- **Colors** Accesses the *Channels* window
- **Form Editor** Allows carrying out content changes to the *Template*
- **Mismatch** Accesses the *Mismatching Parameters* window that identifies any parameters in *Edit Properties* that do not match the parameters in the PDF file
- **Enter a Note** Accesses the *Note* window for viewing and or for modifying *Internal* notes and notes to the Print Buyer
- **Attachments** Accesses the *Attachment* dialog box for attaching additional files to the *Template*

Workflow Policy Dialog Box

Figure 66: Workflow Policy

The *Workflow Policy* dialog box defines the Job-ordering workflow and contains the following elements:

Mandatory Actions

- **Require Preview** Enables requiring the user ordering from this *Template* to always view the soft proof of the personalized Job prior to ordering. When *Require Preview* has been selected, the following options become active.
 - **Show JPG Preview**
 - **Show PDF Preview**
 - **The user must accept Preview before ordering** When selected, *I have examined the Job Preview and approve it for printing* appears in the Preview. In order to add the Job to the *Cart* or add the Job to the *Cart* and *Checkout*, this sentence must be selected.
- **Force Reference Code** Enables making a *Reference Code* mandatory when a Job is ordered from this *Template*.

Additional Input Fields

The selected fields will be displayed during the ordering process.

- Job Name
- Reference Code
- Cost Center

Approval Policy

Workflow Policy

Mandatory Actions:

☐ Require Preview

☒ JPG Preview ☐ PDF Preview

☐ The user must accept preview in order to continue

☐ Force Reference Code

Additional Input Fields:

☐ Job Name

☒ Reference Code

☐ Cost Center

Approval Policy:

☒ Apply Supervisor Approval By-pass Fields

Approval By-Pass Fields

Changes in the selected fields will require supervisor approval:

Field Name	Modification	Overflow/Emp
Name	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Title	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Full Address	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Tel	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Fax	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
e-Mail	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

OK Cancel

Figure 67: Approval Policy Panel

- **Apply Supervisor Approval By-pass Fields** For *Variable Data* templates, enables controlling which personalization fields and under which circumstances it would require *Supervisor* approval.
 - **Modification** when the default text or image were modified
 - **Overflow/Empty** when the entered text occupies an area wider than the text box or when the field has been left empty
- **OK** Enables saving the changes and closing the dialog box.
- **Cancel** Enables closing the dialog box without saving changes.

Template Pricing

Figure 68: Template Pricing Panel

Clicking on the *Pricing* button accesses the *Template Pricing* dialog box where the Print Provider can create a pricelist for the selected template. *Template* pricing overrides any price settings entered in the *Price List* (*Production Cost Pricing Model*) and in *Job Type Pricing Model*.

The *Template Pricing* dialog box initially displays a dropdown box with the following options:

- **Not defined for this level** – Signifies not to activate this *Pricing Model* but to scan the next *Pricing Model* in the hierarchy for activation (for an in-depth review of pricing, see *Generic Pricing Mechanism*, page 281).
- **Per Copy** – Activates the *Pricing Model* and enables determining prices per copy. Selecting the *Per Copy* option displays the controls for pricelist creation.

Note: Pricing boxes are described in the *Job Ticket Library* (see *Pricing Panel*, page 170 for details).

Per Copy

Per Copy allows the Print Provider to set a pricelist for a template according to a varying range of copies. The Print Provider is able to determine for each quantity range the suitable output device, press sheet size, base price and price per number of copies.

Job Pricing Panel

The *Pricing* panel enables entering additional *Template* quantity ranges. To enter an additional quantity range row, click on *Add Row*. To eliminate the last quantity range row, click on *Delete Last Row*.

Defining Special Tax Rate

In order to define *Special Tax Rate* for the template, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the *Pricing* button and then select *Per Copy*; the *Pricing: Per Copy* dialog box appears.
- 2 Enter a special tax rate into the field provided. The special tax rate overrides all other tax rates.


Note: When leaving the *Tax* field empty, the system uses the tax rate defined in the *Template Library* window. When this tax rate does not exist, the system uses the tax rate defined in the *Management: Customers/General* window. When this tax rate does not exist, the system uses the default tax rate defined in *Settings: General/Pricing* window, while calculating the total Job price.

Template Quantity

Figure 69: Template Quantity Panel

In *Template Quantity*, the Print Provider sets the number of copies that the Print Buyer can order. The quantity settings entered are reflected in a copies selection dropdown box in the Shopping Cart of the Print Buyer interface.

The following table lists the *Template Quantity* buttons and describes their functions:

Element	Description
Add	Adds an empty set of <i>Min/Max/Steps</i> .
Delete 	Deletes a selected row.
Save	Saves the settings and closes the <i>Template Quantity</i> window.
Close	Closes the <i>Template Quantity</i> window without saving the settings.

Note: When the *Template Quantity* list has been left empty, the system will provide the Customer with the *Quantity* list from the *Job Ticket* that the *Template* was based upon (see the *Quantity Panel*, page 165). If this list is empty as well, the system will provide the Customer with an open text field instead of the dropdown box.

User Access

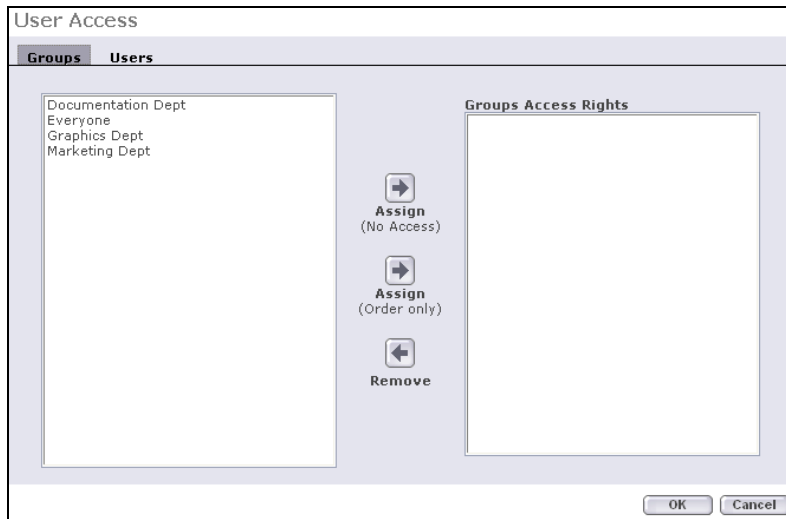


Figure 70: User Access

User Access enables defining whether specific *User Groups* or specific users will be able to view or order a Template.

- **No Access** The user group/user will not be able to view the Template
- **Order only** The user group/user will be able to view the Template but won't be able to order it.

Note: When a group or user has not been assigned *Access Rights*, the group or user will have full access rights.

Manage Template Archive

Manage Template Archive

Template Title : Royal
Properties Bleed Business Card PDF Preview

Field Name Field Value

Full Name: Tom Barnes

Title: Director

Full Address: 27 Mott Ave., New York, NY

Tel #: 212-947-5621

Mobile #: 646-987-5214

Fax #: 212-947-5621

E-Mail: tom_barnes @rproperties.com

Full Name

Tom Barnes

New Remove

Records: 1 - 1 of 1

Import Database Export Database Save Delete Archive

Figure 71: Manage Template Archive

For *Form* and *Variable Data* templates, *Manage Archive* accesses the *Manage Template Archive* window, which enables the following activities:

- Viewing the *PDF Preview* of the template
- Viewing all of the records
- Importing a new database which can either overwrite the original database or which can be added to the original database
- Exporting the template database out of the system
- Deleting the *Archive* which will return the template to the single default values

MailToPrint

In large organizations, it is common that a large number of employees require personalized printed matter (such as business cards) occasionally or on a regular basis. In traditional environments, all of these employees submit their requirements to purchasing or to a secretarial center (the “focus”) to be processed.

In many cases, the “focus” person must type in the personalized information, transfer it to the Print Provider, receive a proof and return it to the ordering employee for approval. This cycle is long and expensive, both for the Print Buyer and the Print Provider. In addition, it is not practical to teach a large number of employees to log into *FreeFlow Web Services* for an occasional order.

MailToPrint solves this problem by allowing the Print Buyer or the Print Provider administrator to generate an e-Mail message to all potential users who need to order a print Job. The users receive an e-Mail with the Template, where they can enter their personalized data and place the order.

The administrator has full control over Job properties and ordering process.

The screenshot shows a configuration window for MailToPrint, divided into two main sections: **Approval Parameters** and **E-Mail Options**.

Approval Parameters:

- ☐ The Job must be approved by a supervisor before being ordered from the Print Provider
- ☒ An order is created after the customer approves the Job
- 7 Days to Deliver (dropdown menu)
- ☒ Show Price Before Processing The Order
- ☒ Show the Reference Code Input Field
- ☐ Ask for User Login
- ☐ Allow File Attachments
- This e-Mail can be used: 1 time(s) (dropdown menu)
- Max number of copies allowed per order: 50 (dropdown menu)

E-Mail Options:

- Message Subject: MailToPrint E-Mail
- Recipient e-Mail: (text input field)
- [Address Book](#) (icon)
- Default Login Profile: Admin: user9 , Abigail Jeffrey (dropdown menu)
- Default Reference Code: (text input field)
- Personalized Message Header: (text input field)

At the bottom of the window are three buttons: **Export Html**, **Send MailToPrint**, and **Close**.

Figure 72: MailToPrint

MailToPrint is divided into the following two sub-panels:

- **Approval Parameters**
- **E-Mail Options**

Approval Parameters

Approval Parameters enables defining the *Job Order* and approval flow. *Approval Parameters* is composed of the following elements:

- **Supervisor Approval** The order will not be placed until approved by a *Supervisor*.
- **Order created after approval** The order will be placed immediately after ordering.
- **Days to Deliver** Enables choosing the number of days from order to delivery.
- **Show Price Before Processing** An option for showing the price before the Job is submitted; when the checkbox is cleared, Jobs are ordered without price verification.
- **Show the Reference Code Input Field** Enables displaying the *Reference Code* input box during ordering; when the checkbox is clear, the user does not have to enter a *Reference Code*.
- **Ask for User Login** An option that enables only users with a username and password to be able to order the Job; when the checkbox is clear, any user that has access to the *MailToPrint* e-Mail can order the Job.
- **Allow File Attachments** Enables attaching (additional) files to the Job.
- **This e-Mail Can Be Used** Enables choosing the number of times the same *e-Mail* can be used for ordering the Job.
- **Max no. of copies allowed per order** Enables choosing the maximum number of copies per order.

E-Mail Options

E-Mail Options enables specifying the *e-Mail* options and distribution. *E-Mail Options* is composed of the following elements:

- **Message Subject** Enables entering the text to appear in the *e-Mail* message subject line.
- **Recipient e-Mail** Enables entering the *e-Mail* addresses of people to receive the message. Use comma or semicolon to separate the addresses.
- **Address Book** Accesses the *Address Book* for convenient entry of frequently used *e-Mail* addresses.
- **Default Login Profile** Enables selecting the default username. When no login is required, all the Jobs ordered using the *e-Mail* will appear with the credentials of this user.
- **Default Reference Code** Enables entering the default *Reference Code*.
- **Personalized Message Header** Enables entering the text to appear in the *e-Mail* message header.

Buttons

- **Export Html** Enables exporting the *MailToPrint* to *Html*.
- **Send MailToPrint** Enables sending the *MailToPrint* via *e-Mail*.
- **Close** Enables canceling the *MailToPrint* and returning to the Templates panel.

Create a New Template

Create a New Template accesses the *Template-creation* wizard for quick and convenient template-creation.

Create a New Book Assembly Template

Create a New Book Assembly Template accesses the *Book Assembly Template-creation* wizard for quick and convenient *Book Assembly* template-creation.

Section VIII: Catalog Library Panel

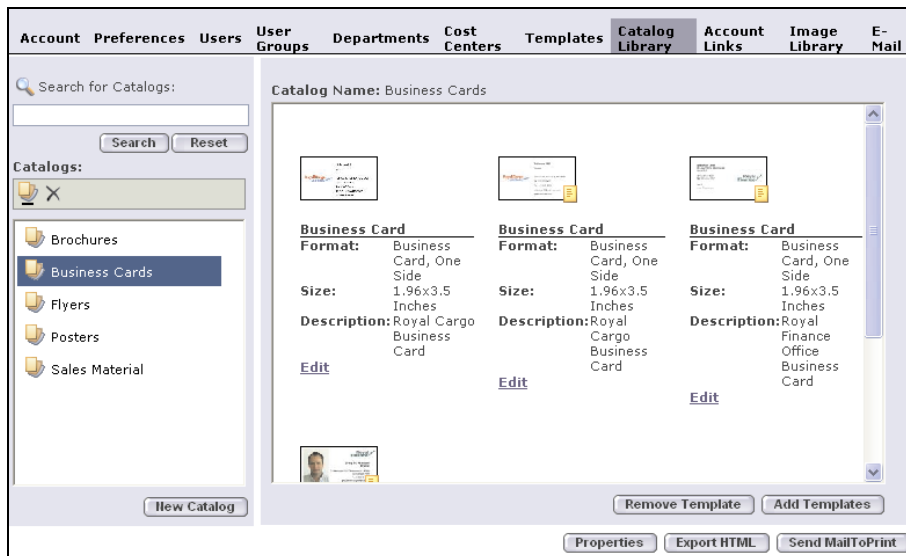


Figure 73: Catalog Library



A *Catalog* is a collection of templates that can be saved in HTML form and embedded in a Print Buyer's corporate website or sent in an e-Mail message. Print Buyers can order Jobs from a *Catalog*. The Print Provider can create *Catalogs* for each Print Buyer and then store them all in the *Catalog Library*.

Note: The *Catalog Library*, on the Print Buyer's side, is found at *Manage Templates/Catalog Library*.

The *Catalog Library* contains the following elements:

- **Search for Catalogs** Enables searching for and displaying specific *Catalogs* in the *Catalog* list pane. Entering a complete *Catalog* name directs the search to a specific *Catalog*. Entering a partial name will result in a more general search.
- **Search** Initiates the search process.
- **Reset** Clears the *Search* box and *Search* results.
- **Toolbar** Buttons for managing the *Catalog Library*.
- **New Catalog** Accesses the *New Catalog* dialog box for creating a new *Catalog*.
- **Edit** Appears beneath templates residing in the *Catalog* panel and enables editing the setup information of the selected template in the selected *Catalog*.
- **Remove Template** Enables removing the selected template from the selected *Catalog*.
- **Add Templates** Accesses the *Choose Template* dialog box, which enables adding templates to the selected *Catalog*.
- **Properties** Enables viewing and editing the properties of the selected *Catalog*.
- **Export HTML** Enables exporting the *Catalog* to an *HTML* page.
- **Send MailToPrint** Enables sending the *Catalog* within a *MailToPrint* message.

Toolbar

Icon		Description
Rename Catalog		Enables renaming a <i>Catalog</i>
Delete		Enables deleting a <i>Catalog</i>

Add Templates

Add Templates accesses the *Choose Template* dialog box, which enables adding templates to an existing *Catalog* or enables entering templates into a new *Catalog*.

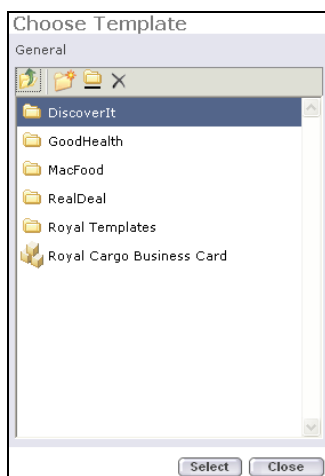






Figure 74: Choose Template Dialog Box

Choose Template is composed of the following elements:

- **Toolbar** Contains the following buttons for navigation and *Template* management.

Button		Description
Up One Level		Enables moving one level up in the hierarchy
Create Folder		Enables creating a new folder
Rename		Enables renaming a folder or a template
Delete		Enables deleting a folder or a template

- **Folders** Double-click to open the folder and display the folder's contents.
- **Templates** Click to select or double-click to select and add to the *Catalog*.
- **Select** Enables adding the selected template to the *Catalog*.
- **Close** Enables closing the dialog box.

To enter templates into a *Catalog*, carry out the following steps:

- 1** Select an existing *Catalog* from the *Catalog* list or create a new catalog.
- 2** Click on *Add Templates*; the *Choose Template* dialog box appears.
- 3** Browse to the target template and click on *Select*; the template appears in the *Template* panel.
- 4** Repeat the previous step for each target template and when the *Catalog* is complete, click on *Close* to close the dialog box.

Template Setup

When clicking on the *Edit* link beneath each template, the *Template Setup* dialog box appears. The *Template Setup* dialog box enables setting up the selected *Template* ordering and for displaying the parameters in the *Catalog*.

Figure 75: Template Setup Dialog Box

The *Template Setup* dialog box contains the following elements:

- **Max Number of Copies Allowed Per Order** A dropdown box that limits the number of copies that a user can order from this template when using the *Catalog*.
- **Price** Selecting this checkbox enables a *Price*, per selected number of copies, to be displayed with this *Template* in this *Catalog*.
- **Number of Copies** Enables selecting the number of copies for the *Price* calculation.
- **Calculate** Enables calculating the *Price*.
- **Format** Checkmark this checkbox if you want the *Format* (as appears in the input field) to be displayed with this *Template* in this *Catalog*.
- **Format** Enables entering the information to be displayed as *Template* format. The default value is the *Job Type* and *Subtype*.
- **Format Default** Enables displaying the default value in the *Format* box.
- **Size Checkbox** When selected, the *Size* (as appears in the input field) is displayed with this *Template* in this *Catalog*.
- **Size** Enables entering information to be displayed as *Template Size*. The default value is the default *Job Size Name*.
- **Size Default** Enables displaying the default value in the *Size* box.
- **Description** Enables entering the information to be displayed as *Template Description*. The default value is the *Template Name*.
- **OK** Enables saving the changes and closing the dialog box.
- **Cancel** Enables canceling the changes and close the dialog box.

Properties / Export HTML / Send MailToPrint

Catalog Properties enables controlling the *Job Ordering* workflow of the *Catalog*.

Catalog Properties

Catalog Name : Business Cards

Display Parameters

Thumbnail size : Small Width: 65 Height: 65 px , Items in row: 3

Header Message :

Workflow Parameters

This Catalog can be used : No Limit time(s)

Approval

☐ The Job requires supervisor approval before being ordered
Note: This rule can be overridden when the Supervisor Approval By-pass has been activated for the Template

Approvers :

☒ An order is created after the user approves the Job

Login

☐ Ask for User Login

Default Login Profile : Admin: user9 , Abigail Jeffrey

Variable Information

iForm default values will be selected from: The last entry

Order Parameters

☐ Allow Job Name Modification

☐ Show the Reference Code Input Field

Default Reference Code :

☐ Show Cost Center

☐ Allow File Attachments

Delivery Parameters

☐ Allow Shipping Date Modification

OK Cancel

Figure 76: Catalog Properties Dialog Boxes

Catalog Properties is composed of the following elements:

- **Catalog Name** The name of the *Catalog*.
- **Display Parameters** Enables specifying the *Template* display parameters
- **Workflow Parameters** Enables defining the *Job Ordering* and approval flow
- **E-Mail Options** Enables specifying the *e-Mail* options and distribution.
- **OK** Enables saving the changes, saving as an HTML, sending a *MailToPrint* and closing the dialog box.
- **Cancel** Enables canceling the changes and closing the dialog box.

Display Parameters

Display Parameters enables specifying the *Template* display parameters. *Display Parameters* is composed of the following elements:

- **Thumbnail Size** Enables selecting the thumbnail size to display in the *Catalog* from one of the following options: *Small*, *Medium*, *Large*, and *Custom*.
- **Width** Displays the thumbnail *Width* in pixels according to the selected *Size*. Entering a different number here will automatically change the *Thumbnail Size* dropdown box to *Custom*.
- **Height** Displays the thumbnail *Height* in pixels according to the selected *Size*. Entering a different number here will automatically change the *Thumbnail Size* dropdown box to *Custom*.
- **Items in Row** Enables specifying the number of thumbnails to be placed in one row of the *Catalog*.
- **Header Message** Enables entering the text to appear in the message header.

Workflow Parameters

Workflow Parameters enables defining the *Job Ordering* and approval flow. *Workflow Parameters* has been divided into the following panels:

- Approval
- Login
- Variable Information
- Order Parameters
- Delivery Parameters
- Quote Parameters

This Catalog Can Be Used Enables selecting the number of times that this *Catalog* can be used for ordering the Job.

Approval

- **Approval Workflow** Enables sending an *Approval e-Mail* prior to placing the order (see *Approval Workflow* below).
 - **Approvers** Enter the *e-Mail* addresses of people to receive the *Approval* message. Use comma or semicolon to separate the addresses.
 - **Address Book** Accesses the *Address Book* for convenient entry of frequently *used e-Mail* addresses.
- **Order Created After Approval** Enables automatically creating an order upon ordering user approval (see *Approval Workflow* below).

Login

- **Ask for User Login** For enabling only users with a username and password to be able to order the Job. Clear the checkbox to enable any user that has access to the *MailToPrint* e-Mail to order the Job.
- **Default Login Profile** Enables selecting the *Default Login*. When no login is required, all the Jobs ordered using the *e-Mail* appear with the credentials of this user.

Variable Information

- **Default Values** Select *The last entry* to display the *Default Form* values according to the last time a Job was ordered from this *Template*. Select *The recent entries* to have the *Default Values* selected from the recent entries. Select *The original design values* to have the *Default Values* set according to the original design.

Order Parameters

- **Allow Job Name Modification**
- **Show the Reference Code Input Field** Enables displaying the *Reference Code* box during ordering; clear the checkbox when the user does not have to enter the reference code.
- **Default Reference Code** Enables entering the *Default Reference Code*.
- **Show Cost Center**
- **Allow File Attachments**

Delivery Parameters

- **Allow Shipping Date Modification**
- **Default time from Order to Shipping** Enables selecting the number of days from *Order* to *Delivery*.
- **Allow Shipping Address Modification** Enables changing the *Shipping Address*. Clear the checkbox to block this option.
- **Always Approve Shipping Address** Forces the user to check and approve the *Shipping Address*.
- **Disable Address Book Access (recommended for B2C applications)**

Quote and Preview

- **Show Price to the User** Enables showing the *Price* before the Job is submitted; clear the checkbox if the Job is to be ordered without *Price* check.

Approval Workflow

When the *Approval* option is selected, the Job is placed in the *Pending Approval* queue (of the *Track Jobs Approval* window) and *Approval e-Mail* messages are sent to the *Approvers*.

The ordering user will receive an *Approval Status e-Mail* with a rejection or acceptance notification, every time one of the *Approvers* reacts to the *Approval e-Mail*. After all of the approvers have approved the Job, an *Approval Status e-Mail* message is sent back to the ordering user, containing a link for confirming the *Job Order*.

After approval, the Job is automatically transferred from the *Approval* queue to the *Printing* queue.

Note: This flow remains the same for all Print Buyer privileges.

If the ordering user has *Designer* or *User* privileges, the Job will remain in the *Pending Approval* queue until the order is approved by an *Administrator*, *Supervisor* or *Super User* or by the *Approvers*.

Note: When the Job has been approved by the *Approvers*, the ordering user receives an e-Mail notification containing the *Confirm Order* button. When the ordering user clicks on the button to confirm, the Job is transferred to the *Printing* queue.

E-Mail Options (Send MailToPrint)

E-Mail Options sub-panel contains the following elements:

- **E-Mail Subject** Enables entering the text to appear in the *e-Mail* message subject line.
- **Recipient e-Mail** Enables entering the *e-Mail* addresses of people to receive the message. Use a comma or semicolon to separate the addresses.
- **Address Book** Enables accessing the *Address Book* for convenient entry of frequently used *e-Mail* addresses.

Creating and Using a Catalog HTML or MailToPrint

To create a *Catalog*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on *Manage Templates*; the *Templates* panel appears.
- 2 Click on *Catalog Library*; the *Catalog Library* panel appears.
- 3 Click on *New Catalog* and enter the *Catalog* name.
- 4 Click on *Add Templates*; the *Choose Template* dialog box appears.
- 5 Locate the *Template* to be added to the *Catalog*, select the *Template* and click on *Select* or double-click on the *Template*.
- 6 Add other *Templates* and click on *Close* when you finish.
- 7 Define the *Template* setup parameters by clicking on *Properties*.
- 8 Click on *Export HTML* to generate an *HTML* page of the *Catalog*.
- 9 Click on *Send MailToPrint* to send the *Catalog* by *e-Mail*.

To use a *Catalog HTML* or *MailToPrint*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Open the *e-Mail* message or the *Catalog HTML*.
- 2 Click on the *Order* link below one of the thumbnails; a browser window with an order form appears.
- 3 Enter the personalized field information.
- 4 Select the number of copies to be printed.
- 5 Enter other information as required (e.g. *Reference Code*) and click on *Order Now*; a Job preview, delivery date and price details appear in the window.
- 6 Verify that the Job is to your satisfaction and click on *Accept and order*; a confirmation window with Job details appears.
- 7 Click on *Close* to close the window.

Note: From Step 3, the flow and user interface are identical to the *MailToPrint*.

Section IX: Account Links Panel

Account Link #6 Customer: Dana Sivan Investments

Link#	Closed Date	Total Price	Status
6		296.5	Opened

Order #4 Ordered On: 4/12/2007 1:30:15 PM

Job #	Name	Type	Copies	Job Price
12	Frequent Flyer Brochure #4 #12	Brochure	50	62.5
15	Royal Resort Office Business Card #6 #15	Business Card	50	44.7
18	MacFood Tent Card #7 #18	Post Card	50	29.14

Urgency Fee: 0
Order Price: 136.34

Order #3 Ordered On: 4/12/2007 1:14:40 PM

Job #	Name	Type	Copies	Job Price
4	Frequent Flyer Brochure #4	Brochure	50	62.5
6	Royal Resort Office Business Card	Business Card	50	44.7

Buttons: New Link, Close Link, Mark as Paid, Clear Account Link, Preview Account Link

Figure 77: Account Links Panel

In the *Account Links* panel, the Print Provider creates an *Account Link* that contains all of the necessary order information for the Print Provider's accounting system. The Print Provider can modify an *Account Link* and print out an *Account Link* copy for the accountant. This can be carried out for one order, for a batch order or for several batch orders, according to the requirements of the accounting system.

The *Account Links* panel contains the following two major components:

- **Account Link Pane** – Displays a list of *Account link*. Each *Account link* contains information about the *Account Link #*, the Print Buyer name, the date of closing the *Account link*, the total order price and the *Account Link* status
- **Account Link Order Panel** – Displays detailed information for a particular *Account link*

Account Link Pane

The *Account Link* pane, provides the Print Provider with the following:

- A list of *Account links* for the selected Print Buyer
- *Account Link* information such as the Print Buyer name, the *Link* number, the closed date of the *Account Link*, the total order price and the *Account Link* status
- The ability, through the buttons located below the *Account Link* pane, to modify the *Account Link* status and add or close links

The *Account Link* pane contains the following elements:

- **New Link** – Opens a new *Account Link* with the Print Buyer's orders displayed
- **Close Link** – Changes the *Account Link* status from *Opened* to *Closed*
- **Mark as Paid** – Changes the *Account Link* status from *Opened* or *Closed* to *Paid*.
Below is a description of the *Account Link* status in the *Account Link* pane:
- **Opened** – Indicates the activated *Account Link*. The *Opened* status appears automatically, whenever a new link is created
- **Closed** – Indicates an *Account Link* that is due (awaiting payment status)
- **Paid** – Refers to an *Account Link* for Jobs that have already been paid by the Print Buyer

Creating a New Account Link

Dana Sivan Investments - New Account Link

☐ Order #9

Job #	Name	Type	Copies	Job Price
8	Frequent Flyer Registration Sheet #8	Brochure	50	59.5
13	Royal Resort Office Business Card #6 #13	Business Card	50	44.7
14	Royal Resort Office Business Card #6 #14	Business Card	50	44.7
31	Royal Cargo Business Card	Business Card	50	32.1
41	Royal Cargo Business Card #41	Business Card	50	54.3
				Order Price: 255.13

OK Cancel

Figure 78: New Account Link Panel

In order to create a *New Account* link, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Select a Print Buyer from the *Print Buyer* list.
- 2 Click on the *New Link* button; the *New Account Link* window appears.
- 3 Checkmark the relevant order checkboxes to include these orders into a new *Account Link*.
- 4 Click on *OK*; the new (opened) *Account Link* enters the *Account Link* box with an assigned serial number.

Changing the Account Link Status from Opened to Closed

In order to change the account link status from *Opened* to *Closed*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on an *Opened* account link.
- 2 Click on *Close Link*; the *Change Status* dialog box appears.
- 3 Click on *Yes*; the *Account* status is changed to *Closed*.

Changing the Account Link Status from Closed to Paid

In order to change the account link account link status from *Closed* to *Paid*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on a *Closed* account link.
- 2 Click on *Mark as Paid*; the *Change Status* dialog box appears.
- 3 Click on *OK*; the *Account* status is changed to *Paid*.

Account Links Panel

The *Account Links* panel contains the following information fields and operation buttons (see *Figure 77: Account Links Panel*):

- **Account Link # and Customer Name** (at the top of the panel) – The serial number defined by the system and the name of the Print Buyer.
- **Order #** – The number of the order.
- **Job #** – The Job number.
- **Name** – The Job name.
- **Type** – The Job type.
- **Copies** – The number of Job copies.
- **Job Price** – The price of one Job.
- **Urgency Fee** – The urgency surcharge for express and urgent printing.
- **Order Price** – The total Job price in one order.
- **Clear Account Link Button**– Deletes *Opened* and *Paid Account Link* information, including the link serial number
- **Preview Account Link Button** – Opens a window where the Print Provider can preview and print out an *Account* link.

Displaying Existing Account Link Information

In order to display existing *Account Link* information, carry out the following steps:

- 1 From the *Customers* dropdown menu, click on a target customer.
- 2 Click on the *Account Link* in the *Account Link* pane; the *Account Link* is highlighted and *Account Link* information is displayed in the *Account Link* panel.

Clearing an Account Link

In order to clear an *Account Link*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 In the *Account Link* pane, click on an *Account Link*; the *Account Link* is highlighted.
- 2 Click on *Clear Account Link* in the *Account Link* panel; the *Delete Account Link* dialog box appears.
- 3 Click on *Yes*; the *Account Link* is deleted.

Note: When changes must be made to the *Account Link* (i.e. adding an additional Job order to the *Account Link*) the *Account Link* can be cleared (deleted). The order information, however, remains in the system database and can be used for creating a new *Account Link*.

Previewing and Printing an Account Link

Your Logo 13X60: 0W
 Blue: R=14, G=125, B=222;
 background recommended

30600
 Israel
 Tel:
 Fax:

Account Link

Sold To: Dana Sivan Investments
Customer #4
Account Link #6
Date Issued 4/23/2007

Order #4		Ordered On: 4/12/2007 1:30:15 PM		
Job #	Name	Type	Copies	Job Price
12	Frequent Flyer Brochure #4 #12	Brochure	50	62.5
15	Royal Resort Office Business Card #6 #15	Business Card	50	44.7
18	MacFood Tent Card #7 #18	Post Card	50	29.14
Urgency Fee: 0				
Order Price: 136.34				

Order #3		Ordered On: 4/12/2007 1:14:40 PM		
Job #	Name	Type	Copies	Job Price
4	Frequent Flyer Brochure #4	Brochure	50	62.5
6	Royal Resort Office Business Card #6	Business Card	50	44.7
7	MacFood Tent Card #7	Post Card	50	29.14
Urgency Fee: 0				
Order Price: 136.34				

Subtotal: 272.68
Tax: 21.82
Total Price: 296.5

Figure 79: Preview of the Accounts Link Window

In order to preview and print an *Account Link*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the target *Account Link*; the *Account Link* is highlighted.
- 2 Click on the *Preview Account Link* button; the *Account Link* page appears.
- 3 To print out and exit the *Account Link* page, click on *Print*.
- 4 To cancel and exit the *Account Link* page, click on *Cancel*.

Section X: Image Library Panel

The *Image Library* is used for storing images to be used in *Form Templates* and *Jobs*. In addition the images can be used as folder icons.

The supported image formats are: *JPG, JPEG, PDF, TIF, TIFF, EPS*, and *PS*.

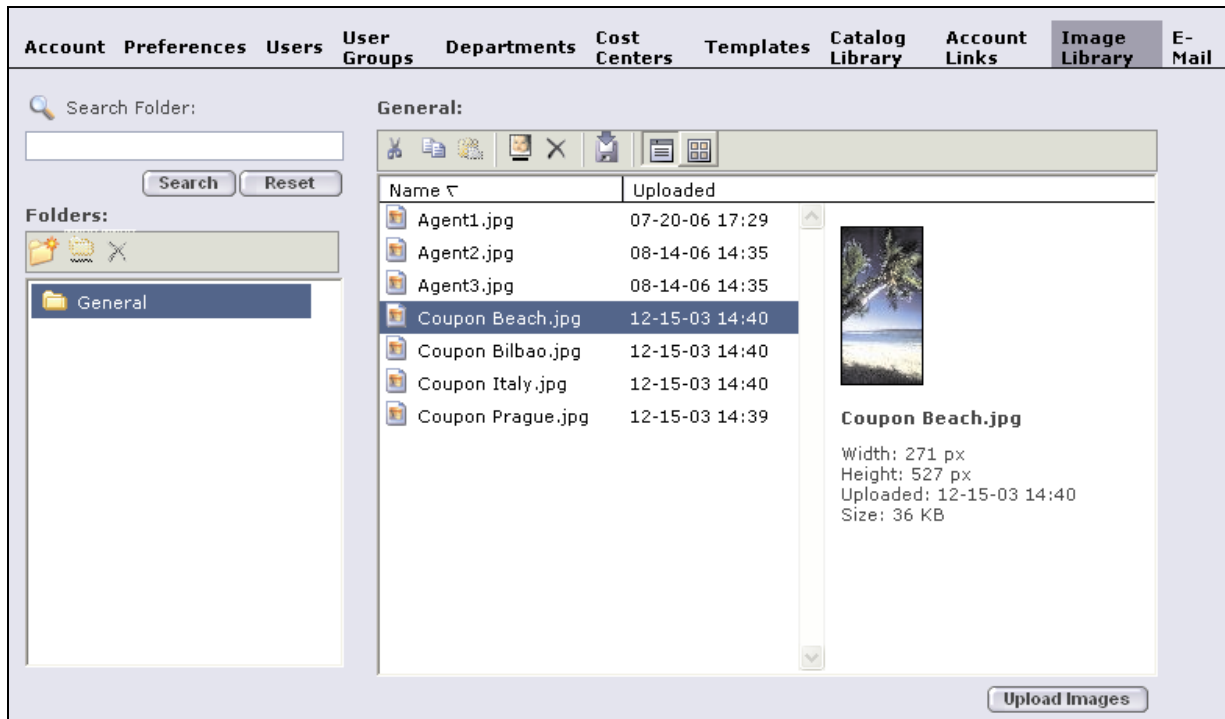


Figure 80: Image Library

The *Image Library* contains the following elements:

- **Image Library Pane** – Displays the *Image Library* structure and provides an *Image Search* facility.
- **Image Library Folder Images Pane** – Displays the images contained in a specific *Image Library* folder and uploading controls.

Image Library Pane

The *Image Library* pane contains the following elements:

- **Search Folder** – Enter the name of the image you are searching for.
- **Search** – Click to start the *Search*.
- **Reset** – Click to reset the contents of the *Search* input field.
- **Folders Toolbar** – Buttons for folder related operations.
- **Folder List** – Displays the list of folders in the *Image Library*.

Image Library Folder Images Pane

The *Image Library Folder Images* pane is composed of the following elements:









- **Images Toolbar** – Contains buttons for image related operations.
- **Image Type** – Displays the appropriate icon for the image type.
- **Image** – Displays the *Image* file name.
- **Uploaded Date and Time** – Displays the date and time the image was uploaded to the *Image Library*.
- **Image Properties** – Displays the selected image thumbnail, filename, file size in pixels, date and time uploaded and file size.
- **Use FTP Multi-File Upload** – Select this checkbox in order to use *FTP* uploading of multiple files.

Note: Multiple images can be selected, deleted, copied or cut

- **Upload Images** – Click this button to open the *Uploading* dialog box.

Images Toolbar

The *Images Toolbar* is composed of the following icons:

Icon	Description
Cut 	Cuts the selected image (removes the image, before pasting it into another place).
Copy 	Copies the selected image (image remains intact after pasting a copy of it in another place).
Paste 	Pastes the image that is currently on the pasteboard into the selected location.
Rename 	Enables renaming the selected image.
Delete 	Enables deleting the selected image.
Download Image(s) 	Enables downloading images from the <i>Image Library</i> to target system folders.
List view 	Enables viewing the <i>Image</i> library as a <i>List</i> .
Thumbnail view 	Enables viewing the <i>Image</i> library as thumbnails.

Uploading Images

- 1 To upload a single file, click on the *Upload a File* radio button and carry out the instructions.
- 2 To upload multiple files, it is recommended to use the *FTP Multi-File Upload*; where available, click on the appropriate radio button and carry out the instructions.

Note: *FTP* must be enabled and active on the Print Provider server in order for this functionality to be operative.

Section XI: E-Mail Panel

Event		Sender	Recipients
<input type="checkbox"/> Order Confirmation	Contacts	Print Provider	Order Creator
<input type="checkbox"/> Job Price Has Been Changed	Contacts	Print Provider	Job Creator
<input type="checkbox"/> Job Shipped	Contacts	Order Creator	Shipping Address
<input type="checkbox"/> Inventory Below Minimum Level	Contacts	Print Provider	Inventory Creator
<input type="checkbox"/> Preorder Jobs Expiration	Contacts	Print Provider	Order Creator
<input type="checkbox"/> Shipping Jobs Expiration	Contacts	Print Provider	Job Creator, Shipping Address
<input type="checkbox"/> Job Arrived at the PB Approval Queue	Contacts	Print Provider	Customer Billing e-Mail

Figure 81: E-Mail Panel

E-Mail enables directing *e-Mail* notification of the following application events:

- **Order Confirmation** – Informs that the order has been received by the Print Provider
- **Job Price Was Changed** – Informs that due to varying reasons, the quoted price has been changed by the Print Provider
- **Job Shipped** – Informs the Print Buyer that the specific Job has been shipped from the Print Provider site
- **Inventory Below Minimum Level** – Informs that the number of copies in the inventory, of a specific Job, has dropped below the minimum level set by the Print Provider
- **Preorder Jobs Expiration** – Informs that the specific pre-ordered Job order has overstayed the allotted queue time and has been automatically deleted
- **Shipping Jobs Expiration** – Informs that the specific *Shipped* Job order has overstayed the allotted queue time and has been automatically deleted
- **Job Arrived at the PB Approval Queue** – Informs that the Job has arrived at the Print Buyer Approval queue

E-Mail is composed of the following elements:

- **Use System Default e-Mail Settings** – When selected the e-Mail notification settings at the Print Provider level will be carried over to the Print Buyer account level.
- **Event** – An activity which happens in the system and triggers an e-Mail notification.
- **Contacts Link** – Accesses the *Event Contacts* dialog box.
- **From** – Event notification sender *e-Mail* address
- **Send To** – Event notification recipient *e-Mail* address.

Events Contacts

Event Contacts enables directing the *e-Mail* notification from a specific source in the Print Provider organization to one or more sources in the Print Buyer organization. This dialog box is different for every event and is adapted to the specific event circumstances.

Order Confirmation

Sender:

Name	Privilege Level	E-Mail
<input checked="" type="radio"/> T	(Print Provider)	177vm@press-sense.com

☐ User that ordered the Job

☐ Other e-Mail:

Recipients:

Name	Privilege Level	E-Mail
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> User that ordered the Job		
<input type="checkbox"/> User that created the Job		
<input type="checkbox"/> Shipping Address e-Mail		

Other e-Mail:

OK Cancel

Figure 82: Event Contacts

The *Event Contacts* dialog box is composed of the following elements:

- Sender: Panel
- Recipients: Panel

Sender: Panel

Name The sender's *e-Mail* address, which is either the Print Provider's contact person, the Print Buyer user that ordered the Job or any other user or address that is appropriate for the event.

Privilege Level The *Privilege* level of sender.

E-Mail The sender's *e-Mail* address.

Recipients: Panel

Name The recipient *e-Mail* address. Recipients of *e-Mail* notification are set in the *e-Mail* field found in the *Customers/Account/General* window. See *General*, page 58.

Privilege Level The *Privilege* level of recipient.

E-Mail – The recipient's *e-Mail* address.

To set an *e-Mail* address for a specific event, carry out the following steps:

- 1** Checkmark an *Event* checkbox and then click on *Contacts*; the *Order Confirmation* dialog box appears.
- 2** In the *From:* panel, click on a target radio button or click on the *Other e-Mail* radio button and enter a target *e-Mail* address.
- 3** In the *Send To:* panel, checkmark the target recipients and/or enter a target *e-Mail* address.
- 4** Click on *OK* to confirm the settings.

Chapter Five: Management

Overview

Info Center
Tasks
Customers
Management
Settings

System Administrator, System Admin

Track Jobs Job Type Library Inventory Branding

Saved Jobs Ready To Order **Printing** Shipped Received Deleted Search

Xerox FreeFlow® Web Services

Track Jobs - Printing (10 Jobs)

Column Selection Excel Report

Job #	Status	Job Type	Job Name	Creation Date	Order #	Customer Name
8	Printing	Brochure	Frequent Flyer Registrat	4/12/2007 12:30:17 PM	9	Dana Sivan Investment
13	Printing	Business Card	Royal Resort Office Bus	4/12/2007 1:28:39 PM	9	Dana Sivan Investment
14	Printing	Business Card	Royal Resort Office Bus	4/12/2007 1:28:45 PM	9	Dana Sivan Investment
18	Printing	Post Card	MacFood Tent Card #7	4/12/2007 1:29:06 PM	4	Dana Sivan Investment
27	Printing	Leaflet	Royal Properties Dropd	4/16/2007 12:23:46 PM	6	Flows
27	Printing	Leaflet	Royal Properties Dropd	4/16/2007 12:23:46 PM	6	Flows
27	Printing	Leaflet	Royal Properties Dropd	4/16/2007 12:23:46 PM	6	Flows
31	Printing	Business Card	Royal Cargo Business C	4/16/2007 6:01:04 PM	9	Dana Sivan Investment
34	Printing	Book Assembly	B2C Calendar EU #34	4/16/2007 6:04:36 PM	7	Flows
41	Printing	Business Card	Royal Cargo Business C	4/17/2007 1:44:39 PM	9	Dana Sivan Investment

PDF Preview Job #: 13, Order #: 9 Customer: Dana Sivan Investments Output Device: Test Device
Note Job Name: Royal Resort Office Business Card... Order Date: 04-18-07 16:19 Total Price: 48.28 Cost: 43.9
Preflight Quantity: 50, Pages: 1 Delivery Date: 04-23-07 09:00 Reference Code:
iForm Job Type: Business Card Customer Reference #: Attachments:
Job Subtype: One Side 7 file(s)

Change Status Delete Job Edit Properties Job Ticket Reprint Job Save As Template Search Order

Figure 83: Management

Management is composed of the following elements:

- **Track Jobs** – Accesses a series of windows that allows the tracking of the various Jobs from the *Saved Jobs* to the *Received* stage
- **Job Type Library** – Window that enables determining all of the parameters of each *Job Type* and *Job Subtype*
- **Inventory** – Enables printing Jobs that are destined to be stored in the Print Providers storage facilities rather than be immediately shipped to the delivery destination
- **Branding** – Accesses the *Site Customization* branding and personalization application. *Site Customization* enables the Print Provider to create branded applications for their Print Buyer customers in order to enable their customers to maintain their own corporate identities while providing a personalized service.

Note: The *Branding* option, known as *Site Customization*, is an independent component that is license-protected and enabled. The *Branding* window enables *Site Customization* owners to carry out all branding and personalization activities (see the *Site Customization User Guide*). If *Site Customization* has not been purchased, *Branding* will provide Print Providers with a hands-on demo.

Section I: Track Jobs

The *Track Jobs* window provides the Print Provider with the ability to:

- Job track all the Print Buyer Jobs
- View Jobs and order information
- Search and sort Jobs, by Job information
- Edit the Job's properties
- Preview a *Job Ticket*
- Edit a Job
- Preview a Job as a *PDF*
- Manually price a Job in the *Saved Jobs* or *Ready to Order* statuses
- Change a Job's status
- Save a Job as a template
- Attach additional files to the Job

The *Track Jobs* window is composed of the following elements:

- **Job Status Bar** – Contains *Job Status* tabs
- **Job Status Panels** – Contains Jobs in the selected Job status
- **Column Selection** – Accesses a dialog box that allows the user to determine which columns that will appear in the *Job Status* panels
- **Excel Report** – Enables creating an *Excel Report* based on the data found in the specific Job Status panels
- **Job Information Panel** – Displays detailed Job information

Job Status Bar

The following lists the *Job Status Bar* tabs and describes their functions:

- **Saved Jobs** Displays Jobs in the Print Buyer's *Saved Jobs* window: Jobs that are already saved in the *Form Editor* or 'press ready' files uploaded to the system
- **Ready to Order** Displays Jobs in the *Shopping Cart*. These Jobs are not yet ordered
- **Printing** Displays all of the Jobs ordered by the Print Buyers. These Jobs can be tracked in the *Approval* and *Printing Queue* panels in the *Production* window and in the *Jobs for Delivery* panel in the *Delivery* window, before they are shipped
- **Shipping** Displays Jobs being shipped to the Print Buyer's shipping address
- **Received** Displays Jobs received by the Print Buyers
- **Deleted** Displays Jobs that were deleted from the server
- **Search** Accesses the search panel which enables searching for specific Jobs

Job Status Panel

In the *Job Status* panel, the Print Provider has an unlimited view of all of the Jobs of the specific status. Each Job status panel allows viewing all of the Jobs in the selected status.

The *Job Status* panel is composed of the following elements:

- **Job Details Columns** – Columns for listing the Job details. Clicking on the *Column* headers enables the *Column Sorting* mechanism.
- **Column Selection Link** – Accesses the *Column Selection* dialog box.
- **Excel Report** – Enables creating a CSV (comma separated value) *Excel Report* (Note that this is only available when the *Data Export* module has been purchased and enabled).

Column Selection

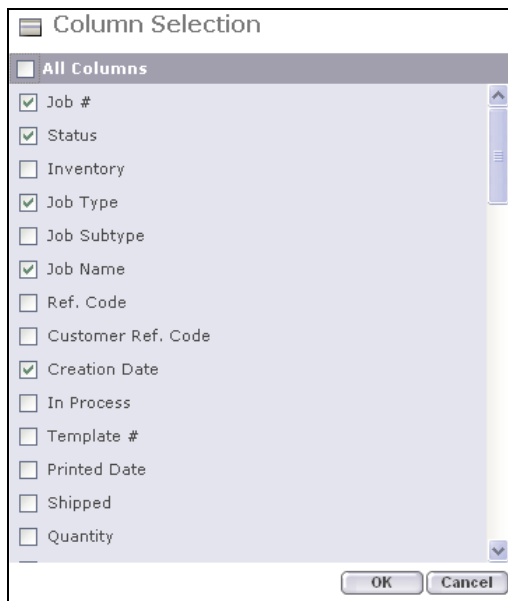


Figure 84: Column Selection

The *Column Selection* link accesses the *Column Selection* dialog box, which contains numerous labeled checkboxes that reflect the various Job information columns in the *Job Status* panel. The *Column Selection* checkboxes enable the Print Provider to add or remove the viewable columns in the *Job Status* panel.

Adding a Column to the Job Status Panel

In order to add a column to the *Job Status* panel, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the *Column Selection* link; the *Column Selection* dialog box appears (note that the number of checkmarked checkboxes corresponds to the number of columns that appear in the *Job Status* panel).
- 2 Checkmark a checkbox; the matching column is added to the *Job Status* panel.

Note: Adding too many columns can distort the view.

Deleting a Column from the Job Status Panel

In order to delete a column from the *Job Status* panel, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Select the *Column Selection* link; the *Column Selection* dialog box appears (note that the number of checkmarked checkboxes corresponds to the number of columns that appear in the *Job Status* panel).
- 2 Clear the checkbox that reflects the target column; the target column is deleted from the *Job Status* panel.

Excel Report

Job #									
A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	
Job #	Status	Inventory	Job Type	Job Subtype	Job Name	Ref. Code	Customer Ref. Code	Creation	
2	38	Printing	No	Brochure	Two Sides Single Fold	Frequent Flyer Brochure #98		2/2/2001	
3	40	Printing	No	Brochure	Two Sides Single Fold	Frequent Flyer Brochure #40		2/2/2001	
4	57	Printing	No	Business Card	One Side	Royal Cargo Business Card #57		2/2/2001	
5	61	Printing	No	Business Card	One Side	Royal Properties Bleed Business Card #51		2/3/2001	
6	87	Printing	To Inventory	Brochure	Two Sides Single Fold	Frequent Flyer Brochure		2/7/2001	
7	91	Printing	No	Set		New Job #91		2/8/2001	
8	104	Printing	No	Post Card	Two Sides	Frequent Flyer Coupon - 2 #104		2/8/2001	
9	106	Printing	No	Post Card	Two Sides	Frequent Flyer Coupon - 2 #106		2/8/2001	
10	109	Printing	No	Leaflet	One Side	New Job #94 #109		2/8/2001	
11	113	Printing	No	Letter Head	One Side	New Job #113		2/9/2001	
12	114	Printing	No	Leaflet	One Side	New Job #114		2/9/2001	
13	131	Printing	No	Poster	Color Poster	Royal Resort Poster #131		2/17/2001	
14	136	Printing	To Inventory	Letter Head	One Side	Royal Cargo Letterhead		2/19/2001	
15	144	Printing	From Inventory	Brochure	Two Sides Single Fold	Frequent Flyer Brochure #144		2/19/2001	
16	146	Printing	From Inventory	Brochure	Two Sides Single Fold	Frequent Flyer Brochure #146	Urgent	2/19/2001	
17	148	Printing	No	Post Card	Two Sides	Frequent Flyer Coupon - 2 #106 #148		2/19/2001	
18	168	Printing	From Inventory	Brochure	Two Sides Single Fold	Frequent Flyer Brochure #168		2/24/2001	
19	169	Printing	From Inventory	Brochure	Two Sides Single Fold	Frequent Flyer Brochure #169	Royal Cargo	2/24/2001	
20	172	Printing	From Inventory	Brochure	Two Sides Single Fold	Frequent Flyer Brochure #172		2/24/2001	
21	173	Printing	No	Business Card	One Side	Royal Resort Business Card #173		2/24/2001	
22	181	Printing	No	Post Card	Two Sides	Royal Resort Special Offer #181		2/26/2001	
23	183	Printing	No	Letter Head	One Side	Royal Cargo Letterhead		2/26/2001	
24	183	Printing	No	Letter Head	One Side	Royal Cargo Letterhead		2/26/2001	
25	189	Printing	No	Business Card	One Side	Royal Finance Business Card		2/26/2001	
26	189	Printing	No	Business Card	One Side	Royal Finance Business Card		2/26/2001	
27	202	Printing	No	Business Card	One Side	Royal Cargo Business Card New #202		2/28/2001	
28	203	Printing	No	Business Card	One Side	Royal Cargo Business Card New - 2 #203		2/28/2001	
29	207	Printing	No	Brochure	One Side Single Fold	New Job #207		3/2/2001	
30	214	Printing	No	Brochure	One Side Single Fold	New Job #214		3/2/2001	
31	216	Printing	No	Poster	Color Poster	mono #216		3/5/2001	
32	224	Printing	No	Poster	Color Poster	mono #224		3/6/2001	

Figure 85: Excel Report

A *Data Export* option, the *Excel Report* link accesses the *Excel Report* dialog box. The *Excel Report* dialog box provides the capability to select which data fields will be exported to the *Excel Report*. After the fields have been selected, clicking on *Create Excel Report* will create a CSV (comma separated value) *Excel Report*, which contains all of the Jobs in the current *Track Jobs* view. This report can then be sent out to an external Print Provider system. For more information, see *Section VII: ,* page 271.

Search Window

Track Jobs - Search (36 Jobs)

Advanced Search Column Selection Excel Report

Status: All Search: Job # All Search

Job #	Status	Job Type	Job Name	Creation Date	Order #	Customer Name
26	Saved Jobs	Brochure	Frequent Flyer Brochure	4/16/2007 12:05:54 PM		Flows
27	Printing	Leaflet	Royal Properties Dropd	4/16/2007 12:23:46 PM	6	Flows
27	Printing	Leaflet	Royal Properties Dropd	4/16/2007 12:23:46 PM	6	Flows
27	Printing	Leaflet	Royal Properties Dropd	4/16/2007 12:23:46 PM	6	Flows
31	Printing	Business Card	Royal Cargo Business C	4/16/2007 6:01:04 PM	9	Dana Sivan Investment
34	Printing	Book Assembly	B2C Calendar EU #34	4/16/2007 6:04:36 PM	7	Flows
35	Pending Approval	Book Assembly	B2C Calendar EU #35	4/16/2007 6:19:15 PM		Flows
36	Pending Approval	Post Card	MacFood Tent Card #36	4/16/2007 6:21:59 PM		Flows
37	Pending Approval	Book Assembly	B2C Calendar EU #37	4/16/2007 7:05:54 PM		Flows
39	Saved Jobs	Book Assembly	B2C Calendar EU #39	4/17/2007 12:50:49 PM		Dana Sivan Investment
40	Saved Jobs	Brochure	Frequent Flyer Registrat	4/17/2007 12:53:58 PM		Dana Sivan Investment
41	Printing	Business Card	Royal Cargo Business C	4/17/2007 1:44:39 PM	9	Dana Sivan Investment
43	Received	Brochure	Frequent Flyer Brochure	4/17/2007 3:56:51 PM	8	Flows

PDF Preview Note Preflight

Job #: 31, Order #: 9
 Job Name: Royal Cargo Business Card
 Quantity: 50, Pages: 1
 Job Type: Business Card
 Job Subtype: One Side

Customer: Dana Sivan Investments
 Order Date: 04-18-07 16:19
 Delivery Date: 04-23-07 09:00
 Customer Reference #:
 Attachments:
 No Files are Attached

Output Device: FolderBalance
 Total Price: 34.67 Cost: 31.3
 Reference Code:

Change Status Delete Job Edit Properties Job Ticket Reprint Job Save As Template Search Order

Figure 86: Search Window

In the *Search* window, the Print Provider searches for specific Jobs, by selecting a *Status* and a *Search* option and then a final denominator, be it a Job name, number, date, etc. The Jobs that match the search options appear in the *Job Status* panel.

Note: Search by *Job#* appears by default.

The *Search* window is composed of the following elements:

- **'Status' Dropdown Box** Accesses a menu of *Status* options
- **'Search Dropdown Box** Accesses a menu of *Search by* options
- **'Command' Dropdown Box** Accesses a menu of search commands that enable searching Jobs by number, by word/letter or by several options
- **'Search For' Box** Used for manually entering a search criterion (a number, letter or word)
- **Search Button** Carries out the search procedure according to the search criteria

Search Options

Available *Search Options* is a reflection of the *Columns* that were selected from the *Select Fields* dialog box. These *Search Options* can be divided into the following two *Search* categories:

- **By Number** Carries out the search by number according to a chosen *Search Option*, a search command and the search criterion
- **By Word/Letter** Carries out the search by letter, letters or word according to a chosen *Search Option*, a search command and the search criterion
- **Advanced Search** Carries out the search using more than one methodology

Command Dropdown Menu

The following table lists and describes the *Command dropdown* menu command options:

Search Option	Command Name /Symbol	Description
By Letter/Word	Like	Search for all Jobs containing a letter, letters or word entered into the <i>Search</i> box.
By Number	>	Search for all numbers that are larger than the number entered into the <i>Search For</i> box.
	<	Search for all numbers that are smaller than the number entered into the <i>Search For</i> box.
	<=	Search for all numbers that are smaller than or equal to the number entered into the <i>Search For</i> box.
	>=	Search for all numbers that are larger than or equal to the number entered into the <i>Search For</i> box.
	<>	Search for all numbers that are smaller or larger than the number entered into the <i>Search For</i> box (not including the chosen number).
	=	Search for all numbers that are equal to the number entered into the <i>Search For</i> box.

Search Dropdown Menu

The following sections discuss the Search dropdown menu.

Options for Searching Jobs by Number

The list below represents all of the *Search* number options that can be found in the *Search* dropdown menu:

- Job Number
- Printed Date
- Discount Rate
- Subtotal
- Order Date
- User ID
- Mobile
- Reference Code
- Shipped Date
- Discount
- Tax Rate
- Required Date
- Cost Center Code
- E-Mail
- Customer Ref. Code
- Copies
- Customer Price
- Total
- Order IP
- Zip Code
- Tracking Number
- Creation Date
- Price
- Urgency Rate
- Order ID
- Customer ID
- Phone

Option for Searching Jobs by Letter/Word

The list below represents all of the *Search* letter/word option that can be found in the *Search dropdown* menu:

- Status
- Urgency
- Payment Method
- Last Name
- Street
- Address Notes
- Job Type
- Tax
- Customer Name
- Cost Center Name
- City
- Attn. First Name
- Job Name
- Order Status
- Login Name
- Company
- State
- Attn. Last Name
- In Process
- Is Paid
- First Name
- Department
- Country
- Carrier

Note: The selected *Payment Method* appears in the *Payment Method* column as PO, CC or EDD. For more information, see *Payment Method*, page 68. *In Process* indicates that the processing of the Job(s) has not yet been completed.

Searching Jobs by Number

Track Jobs - Search (36 Jobs)

Status: All Search: Job # < 70 Search

Job #	Status	Job Type	Job Name	Creation Date	Order #	Payment Method	Customer Name
1	Received	Brochure	Frequent Flyer Broch	4/12/2007 10:28:53	1	PO	Flows
2	Ready for Shipping	Brochure	Frequent Flyer Broch	4/12/2007 10:36:02	10	PO	Flows
4	Ready for Shipping	Brochure	Frequent Flyer Broch	4/12/2007 10:45:37	3	PO	Dana Sivan Investm
5	Ready for Shipping	Brochure	Frequent Flyer Broch	4/12/2007 10:50:37	2	PO	Flows
6	Ready for Shipping	Business Card	Royal Resort Office	4/12/2007 11:19:59	3	PO	Dana Sivan Investm
7	Ready for Shipping	Post Card	MacFood Tent Card	4/12/2007 11:20:18	3	PO	Dana Sivan Investm
8	Printing	Brochure	Frequent Flyer Regis	4/12/2007 12:30:17	9	PO	Dana Sivan Investm
10	Saved Jobs	Brochure	Frequent Flyer Broch	4/12/2007 1:28:20 P		PO	Dana Sivan Investm
11	Saved Jobs	Brochure	Frequent Flyer Broch	4/12/2007 1:28:27 P		PO	Dana Sivan Investm
12	Shipped	Brochure	Frequent Flyer Broch	4/12/2007 1:28:32 P	4	PO	Dana Sivan Investm
13	Printing	Business Card	Royal Resort Office	4/12/2007 1:28:39 P	9	PO	Dana Sivan Investm
14	Printing	Business Card	Royal Resort Office	4/12/2007 1:28:45 P	9	PO	Dana Sivan Investm
15	Received	Business Card	Royal Resort Office	4/12/2007 1:28:49 P	4	PO	Dana Sivan Investm

PDF Preview Job #: 1, Order #: 1
 Note Job Name: Frequent Flyer Brochure #1
 Preflight Quantity: 50, Pages: 2
 Job Type: Brochure
 Job Subtype: Two Sides Single Fold

Customer: Flows
 Order Date: 04-12-07 10:29
 Delivery Date: 04-16-07 11:00
 Customer Reference #:
 Attachments:
 No Files are Attached

Output Device: Test Device
 Total Price: 67.50 Cost: 52.1
 Reference Code:

Change Status Delete Job Edit Properties Job Ticket Reprint Job Save As Template Search Order

Figure 87: Searching Jobs by Number

In order to search Jobs by number, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the *Search Options* tab in the *Job Status Bar*.
- 2 In the *Status* dropdown menu, select a status or select *All*, in order to search through every status.
- 3 In the *Search* dropdown menu, select one of the *Search* number options (see *Search Dropdown Menu*, page 128).
- 4 From the *Command* dropdown menu, choose a *Search* number command (see *Search Dropdown Menu*, page 128).
- 5 In the *Search for* box, enter a number/date.
- 6 Click on the *Search* button; the results that match the search criteria are displayed in the *Job Status* panel.

Searching Jobs by Word/Letter

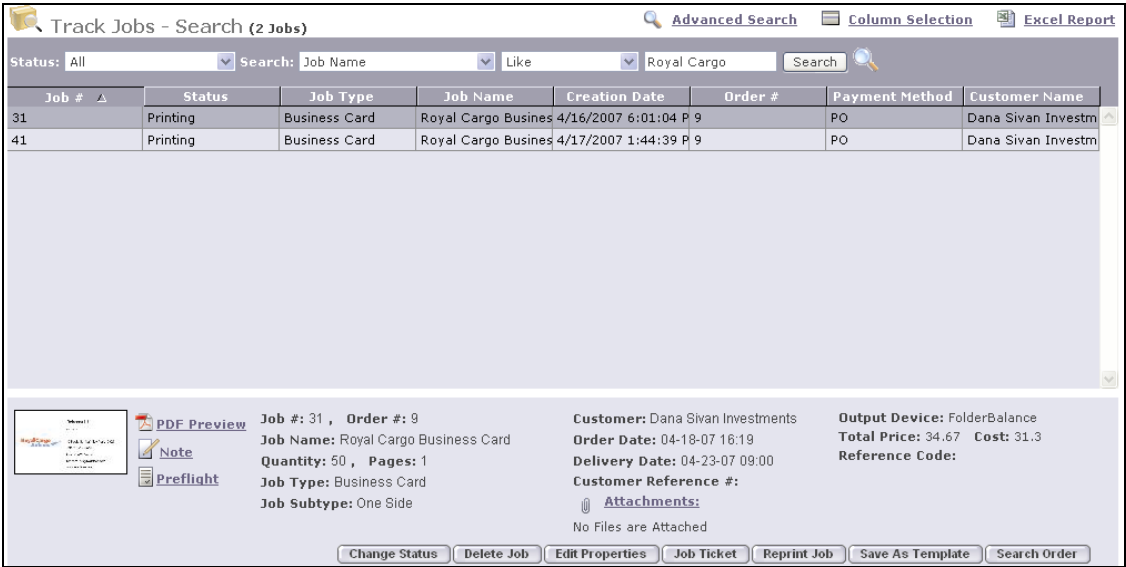


Figure 88: Searching Jobs by Word/Letter

In order to search Jobs by word/letter, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the *Search Options* tab in the *Job Status Bar*.
- 2 In the *Status* dropdown menu, select a status or select *All*, in order to search through every status.
- 3 In the *Search* dropdown menu, select one of the *Search By Letter/Word* options (see *Search Dropdown Menu*, page 128).
- 4 In the *Command* dropdown menu, select 'Like'.
- 5 In the *Search for* box, enter a letter, one word or several letters.
- 6 Click on the *Search* button; the results that match the search criteria are displayed in the *Job Status* panel.

Advanced Search

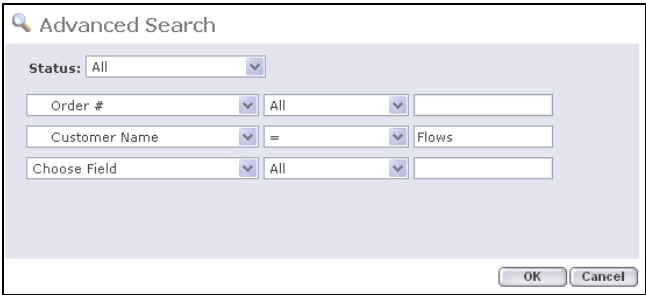


Figure 89: Advanced Search

Advanced Search enables narrowing the scope of the search by simultaneously running up to three search criteria.

To work with the *Advanced Search* option, carry out the following steps:

- 1** Click on the *Advanced Search* link; the *Advanced Search* dialog box appears.
- 2** In the *Status* dropdown menus, select a *Status* or select *All*, in order to search through every status.
- 3** Select one or more *Search* options.
- 4** Select a Search command for each selected *Search* option.
- 5** Enter the search criteria into the *Search for* box for each *Search* option.
- 6** Click on *OK*.
- 7** The search is carried out; all Jobs matching the various *Search* options are displayed in the Job Status panel.

Example of Advanced Search

The system looks for all Jobs with the *Royal Cargo* name, which were created after 2002, and have less than 800 copies (see Figure 89).












Resetting the Search Results

In order to reset the search results in the *Job Status* panel, click on *Cancel* and then click again on the *Advanced Search* link.

Job Information Panel

The *Job Information* panel displays information about a selected (highlighted) Job and enables viewing a *Job Ticket*, opening the Job as a *PDF*, and viewing and modifying the Job's properties in the *Edit Properties* window. The Print Provider can also change the Job status and price the Job manually.

The following table lists and describes the *Job Information* panel elements:

Element	Description
Job Thumbnail	Displays the Job front page and orientation (vertical or horizontal).
PDF Preview Icon 	Enables opening the following PDF previews: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Low-res PDF (preview of a single Job) • Hi-res PDF (preview of a single Job) • Imposition PDF (hi-res preview of the imposition scheme - this prompt appears only when the Job has been imposed) • Original PDF (original PDF prior to any modifications)
Note Icon 	Accesses the <i>Edit Note</i> dialog box and enables adding internal notes as well as notes to the customer.
In Process Icon 	Indicates that Job processing has not yet been completed. This icon is accompanied by a <i>Job In Process</i> dialog box, which appears in the <i>Job Status</i> panel.
Preflight Icon 	Accesses the <i>File Upload Report</i> .
Form Job 	Indicates that this is a <i>Form Job</i> and accesses the <i>Variable Data Fields</i> .
Variable Data Job 	Indicates that this is a <i>Variable Data Job</i> and accesses the <i>Variable Data Express</i> .
Job Information Fields	Contains information about the Job.
Operation Buttons	Enable changing the Job status and properties, previewing the Job in the <i>Viewer</i> , previewing the <i>Job Ticket</i> and pricing a Job manually, when necessary.
Attachments 	Indicates the number of attached files and accesses the <i>Attachments</i> dialog box.
Track Shipment 	Appearing when shipment is carried out through a carrier, the <i>Track Shipment</i> link accesses the carrier's <i>Tracking</i> window.
Outsourcing Information 	Accesses the <i>Outsourcing Information</i> dialog box. This link appears when the Job has been outsourced to a partner Print Provider.
Job Printed To Inventory 	Job ordered by the Print Buyer, to be stored in <i>Inventory</i> .
Job Printed From Inventory 	Job ordered by the Print Buyer, to be shipped from <i>Inventory</i> .

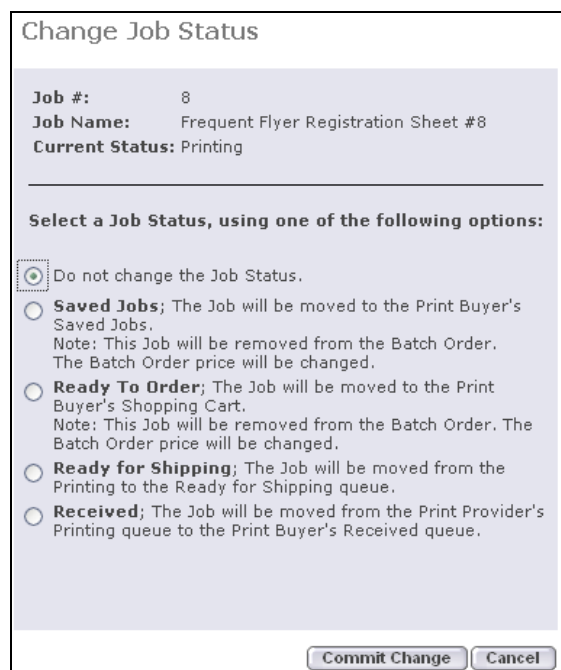
Note: When creating a *PDF Preview*, only one Job can be processed at a time. If a Job follows a Job already being processed, the *Creating Low-Res PDF* dialog box appears and the newer Job enters the queue. In such a situation, the user has the ability to view the position of the Job in the queue, to cancel the preview operation, or to continue the preview in the background. When the Job is assigned to the background, the window closes and the user is able to continue with another assignment. When the *Low-res PDF* is created, it is saved and immediately available to the user upon request. However, if the Job is still in process, an updated *Creating Low-Res PDF* dialog box appears. If accepting a preview was defined as a condition prior to ordering, the user will not be able to order without viewing the preview.

Operation Buttons

The *Job Information* panel contains the following operation buttons:

- **Change Status** – Accesses the *Change Job Status* dialog box where the Print Provider can change the Job status
- **Delete Job** – Deletes the Job from the *Track Jobs* window
- **Edit Properties** – Accesses the *Edit Properties* window, where the Print Provider views/modifies the Job properties
- **Job Ticket** – Accesses the *Job Ticket Creation* window where the Print Provider can preview a *Job Ticket*
- **Pricing** – Accesses the *Pricing* dialog box and enables the Print Provider to manually price any Job (available for Jobs not yet printed)
- **Reprint Job** – Accesses the *Reprint* window. Through the *Reprint* window, the Print Provider can modify such parameters as the number of copies, shipping address, delivery date and mismatch. Following the parameter modifications, the Job can be reprinted as a new Job
- **Save As Template** – Accesses the *Save As Template* dialog box and enables saving the Job as a template in the *Template Library*.
- **Search Order** – Lists all of the Jobs that are included in the Job order of the selected Job (available for Jobs already Printed)

Change Job Status



The dialog box is titled "Change Job Status". It contains a header section with the following information:

Job #: 8
Job Name: Frequent Flyer Registration Sheet #8
Current Status: Printing

Below this is a section titled "Select a Job Status, using one of the following options:" followed by five radio button options:

- ☒ **Do not change the Job Status.**
- ☐ **Saved Jobs;** The Job will be moved to the Print Buyer's Saved Jobs.
Note: This Job will be removed from the Batch Order. The Batch Order price will be changed.
- ☐ **Ready To Order;** The Job will be moved to the Print Buyer's Shopping Cart.
Note: This Job will be removed from the Batch Order. The Batch Order price will be changed.
- ☐ **Ready for Shipping;** The Job will be moved from the Printing to the Ready for Shipping queue.
- ☐ **Received;** The Job will be moved from the Print Provider's Printing queue to the Print Buyer's Received queue.

At the bottom right of the dialog box are two buttons: "Commit Change" and "Cancel".

Figure 90: Job Status Dialog Box

The *Change Job Status* dialog box appears when clicking on the *Change Status* button. Each *Track Jobs* status provides a specific *Change Job Status* dialog box that offers only those options that can be logically carried out. In all, there are five *Change Job Status* options.

The following tables list and describe the *Change Status* dialog box elements and buttons:

Field	Details
Job #	The Job number.
Job Name	The Job name.
Current Status	The current Job status in the <i>Job Status</i> panel.

Radio Button	Function
Do not change the Job Status	Used for leaving the Job in the current status and closing the <i>Change Job Status</i> dialog box.
Saved Jobs	Used for changing the Job status into <i>Saved Jobs</i> . In the Print Buyer interface, the Job is moved into the <i>Saved Jobs</i> window.
Ready To Order	Used for changing the Job status into <i>Ready to Order</i> . In the customer interface, the Job is moved into the <i>Shopping Cart</i> .
Delivery	Used for changing the Job status from <i>Production</i> to <i>Delivery</i> .
Printing	Used for changing the Job status from <i>Shipping</i> to <i>Production</i> . In the Print Buyer interface, the Job moves from <i>Shipping</i> to <i>Printing</i> .
Received	Used for changing the Job status into <i>Received</i> . In the customer interface, the Job is moved into the <i>Received</i> window.

Operation Button	Function
Commit Change	Commits the Job status change.
<i>Note:</i> When the Job status is changed from <i>Printing</i> or <i>Shipping</i> into <i>Saved Jobs</i> or <i>Ready to Order</i> , the <i>Order Price Update</i> dialog box opens.	
Cancel	Closes the <i>Change Job Status</i> dialog box without changing the Job status.

Order Change Dialog Box

Job #	Job Name	Initial Price	Updated Price
5	plane	0.00	0.00

Total Order Price: 0.00 0.00

Note: Click on **Cancel** to cancel the order charge. To continue, click on **Delete Order**; the original order will be deleted.

Figure 91: Order Change Dialog Box

The *Order Change* dialog box opens by clicking on the *Commit Change* button in the *Change Status* dialog box, when the Print Provider chooses to change the Job status from *Printing* or *Shipping* into *Saved Jobs* or *Ready to Order*.

Order Change is composed of the following elements:

- **Order No** – The order number
- **Job ID** – The Job number
- **Job Name** – The Job name
- **Initial Price** – The initial price of each Job in the order (without a tax rate and the urgency fee)
- **Updated Price** – The updated price of each Job in the order. The '0' appearing in the *Updated Price* indicates that this Job is no longer priced. The initial Job price is excluded from the total order price
- **Total Order Price** – The initial total price of all Jobs in the order (left field) and the updated total price of all the remaining Jobs in the order (right field)
- **Cancel Button** – Cancels the operation and closes the dialog box
- **Leave Original Price Button** – Maintains the original price
- **Update Price Button** – Updates the original price
- **Delete Order Button** – Deletes the order

Changing the Job Status

In order to change the status of the Job, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on a Job in the *Job Status* panel.
- 2 Click on the *Change Status* button; the *Change Job Status* dialog box appears.
- 3 In the dialog box, activate the relevant radio button.
- 4 Click on the *Commit Change* button in order to change the Job status; when the Job status is changed from *Printing* or *Delivery* to *Saved Jobs* or *Ready to Order*, the *Order Change* dialog box opens (see: Figure 91, page 136).
- 5 To refresh the window and track the Job in the changed status, click on a status tab.

Edit Properties

Edit Properties Job# 41
 Define the Properties.

Job Name: Royal Cargo Business Card #41
 Based on Template: #79, Royal Cargo Business Card

Type: Business Card
Subtype: One Side
 One Sided

Finishing:
 Number of Pages: 1
 Page Size: 3.5x1.96
 Width: 3.5 Inches Height: 1.96 Inches
 Landscape

Quantity: 50

Paper: Standard Quality
Printing Quality: Custom Test Device
Color Channels: Process

Upload File File Upload Report PDF Preview

No. of Pages: 1
 Page Size: Width:3.5, Height:1.96
 Inches
 Colors: Process: 4

VarData Records : 24 Form Editor

Shipping Date: 04-23-07 09:00
 Expiration Date: 06-17-07
 Delivery: Dana Sivan
 Cost Center: None
 Ref. Code:

Enter a Note
 Attachments: No Files are Attached

Price: \$54.30

Figure 92: Edit Properties Window

The *Edit Properties* window opens by clicking on the *Edit Properties* button.

Note: The *Edit Properties* window interface is the same as in the *Print Buyer Template*.

Modifying Properties

In order to modify properties, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on a Job in the *Job Status* panel.
- 2 Click on the *Edit Properties* button; the *Edit Properties* window appears.
- 3 Enter all modifications into the designated field boxes and dropdown boxes.
- 4 Where necessary, click on the relevant links and enter the modifications into the linked windows.
- 5 To confirm the modifications, click on *OK*; the *Edit Properties* window closes.
- 6 To close the *Edit Properties* window, without confirming any modifications, click on the *Close* button in the upper-right corner of the window.

Caution: When changing the properties for a Job that has already been priced by the system, an *Alert* message informs that the Job price remains unchanged but may no longer be valid.

Job Ticket

When clicking on the *Job Ticket* button, the *Job Ticket Creation* window appears. In order to preview a *Job Ticket* page, the Print Provider must first determine which *Job Ticket* pages to create. The *Job Ticket* pages appear after clicking on *OK* in the *Job Ticket Creation* window.

Job Ticket Creation Window

Job Ticket Creation For Job #41

Job Ticket Pages:

- ☒ Production
- ☒ Finishing
- ☒ Delivery
- ☒ Pricing Information

Printing Deadline : N/A

Finishing Deadline : N/A

Figure 93: Job Ticket Creation Window

Job Ticket pages contain detailed information about production, finishing, delivery, and pricing. The Print Provider can also type in various notes and instructions. After completing the *Job Ticket* pages, the Print Provider can print out one or more *Job Ticket* pages (see *Job Ticket*, page 25).

Pricing

Job Pricing Job #: 10

Pricing Model: Per Copy

Min	Max	Output Device	Press Sheet	Base Price	Price Size
<input type="button" value="Add Row"/> <input type="button" value="Delete Last Row"/>					

Expires on:

Job Tax Rate: % Job Tax Name:

Note: When the Job Tax Rate is left empty, the system searches for a Tax Rate from the following settings and according to the following order: Job Template, Job Customer and System Parameters.

Figure 94: Pricing Panel

The *Pricing* button, appearing in the *Saved Jobs* and *Ready to Order* windows only, accesses the *Job Pricing* dialog box, which displays a dropdown box with the following two options:

- **Not defined for this level** – Signifies not to activate this *Pricing Model* but to scan the next *Pricing Model* in the hierarchy for activation (for an in-depth review of pricing, see *Generic Pricing Mechanism*, page 281).
- **Per Copy** – Activates the *Pricing Model* and enables determining prices per copy. *Per Copy* accesses the *Job Pricing Per Copy* dialog box, for manually entering the parameters.

Per Copy

Per Copy allows the Print Provider to set a fixed price for a Saved Job according to a varying range of copies. The Print Provider is able to determine quantity ranges and for each quantity range, the Print Provider can configure the suitable output device, press sheet size, base price and price per number of copies.

Job Pricing Panel

The *Job Pricing* panel enables entering additional Job quantity ranges. To enter an additional quantity range row, click on *Add Row*. To eliminate the last quantity range row, click on *Delete Last Row*.

Defining Job Tax Rate

In order to define *Job Tax Rate*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the *Pricing* button and then click on *Per Copy*; the *Job Pricing: Per Copy* dialog box appears.
- 2 Enter a Job tax rate into the field provided. The Job tax rate overrides all other tax rates. The new tax rate expires on the date that the Print Provider chooses.
- 3 To provide a name for the *Job Tax Rate*, enter the name into the *Job Tax Name* field.

Note: When leaving the *Tax* field empty, the system uses the tax rate defined in the *Template Library* window. When this tax rate does not exist, the system uses the tax rate defined in the *Customers/Settings/Preferences* window. When this tax rate doesn't exist, the system uses the default tax rate defined in *Settings: General/Pricing* window, while calculating the total Job price.

Defining Expiration Dates for Pricing and the Tax Rate

In order to define expiration dates for *Pricing* and the *Tax Rate*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Enter the *Pricing* information and the *Tax Rate* into the fields provided.
- 2 Click on the *Choose Date* button; the *Expiration Date Calendar* appears.
- 3 In the *Expiration Date Calendar*, click on the required date.
- 4 Click on *OK*; the chosen date appears at the top of the *Special Tax Rate* box. After this date, the special tax rate is no longer valid.

Note: When the expiration date is not defined, the *Price* and the *Tax Rate* for this Job do not expire.

The *Price* and the *Tax Rate* expiration always occur on the day that was set (i.e. when a price has been offered until Nov. 5, on that precise date, the price will no longer be available).

Save As Template

The *Save As Template* button enables creating templates from existing Jobs. To create a template from an existing Job, carry out the following steps:

- 1 From the *Search* window, search for and select the target Job.
- 2 Click on *Save as Template*; the *Save as Template* dialog box appears.

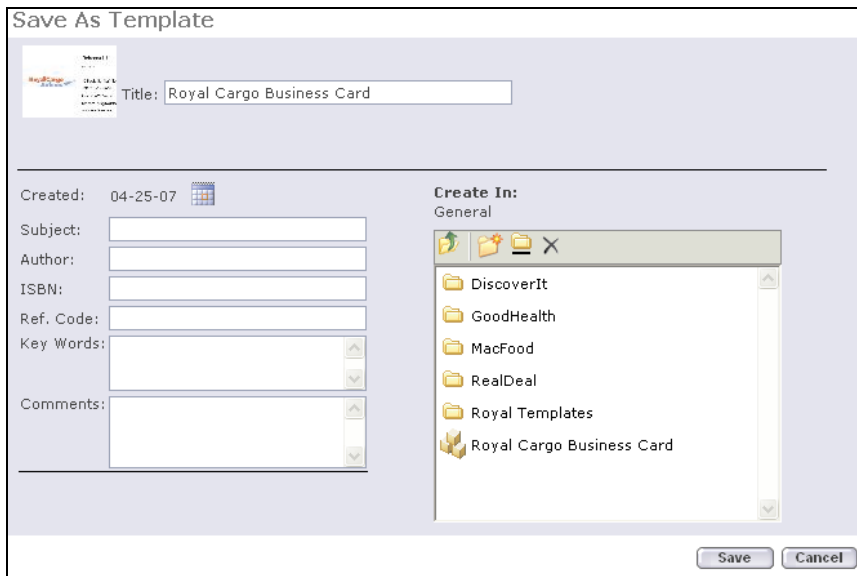


Figure 95: Save As Template

- 5 Enter all relevant information and in *Create In:*, navigate to a suitable template location.
- 6 Click on *Save* to save the new template in the desired location.

Section II: Job Type Library

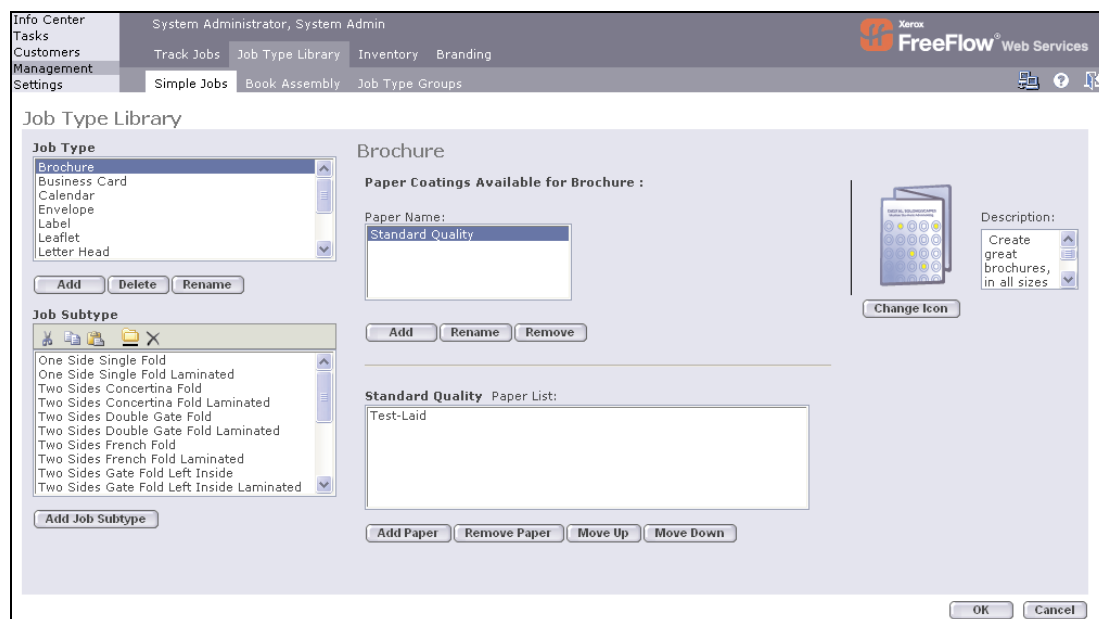


Figure 96: Job Type Library

The *Job Type Library* window provides the following three views:

- **Simple Jobs** Enables creating Jobs composed of one component.
- **Book Assembly** Option that enables creating Jobs that are composed of one or more files and include a binding element.

Note: The *Book Assembly* module is purchased independent of *FreeFlow Web Services*. For more information on *Book Assembly*, consult your local representative.

- **Job Type Groups** Enables creating a group of *Job Types* and *Subtypes* for specific Print Buyers, in order to limit the number of Job Types displayed to these Print Buyers.

Simple Jobs

In the *Simple Jobs* window, the Print Provider creates a predefined list of *Job Types*. Each *Job Type* contains a list of *Job Subtypes*. For each *Job Subtype*, the Print Provider defines the Job's properties and the finishing parameters. By this, the Print Provider creates a list of *Job Type*s that can be used by the Print Buyers, when creating a new Job.

The following tables list and describe the *Job Type Library* interface structure:

Left-hand Panes	Description
Job Type	Contains a list of <i>Job Types</i> .
Job Subtype	Contains a list of <i>Job Subtypes</i> , which further describes the <i>Job Type</i> .

'Paper Types Available' Panels	Description
Paper Types Available	Contains defined paper characteristics for a <i>Job Type</i> .
Paper List	List of paper available for a particular <i>Job Type</i> .

Job Type Pane

The *Job Type* pane contains the *Job Types* appearing in the *Print Buyer* interface. All *Job Types*, initially found in the list, are provided by *Web Services*. The Print Provider can delete or add additional *Job Types* to the list, as well as rename the *Job Type*.

Navigation Logic

When a *Job Type* is selected, the *Job Subtype* list for this specific *Job Type* is displayed in the *Job Subtype* pane and the *Properties for Job Subtype* panel appears on the right-hand side of the window.

Adding a New Job Type

In order to add a new *Job Type*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the *Add* button; the *New Job Type Name* dialog box appears.
- 2 Enter a new *Job Type* name and then click on *OK*; the new *Job Type* appears at the bottom of the current *Job Type* list.

Deleting a Job Type

Caution: When deleting a *Job Type*, the *Job* description list for this *Job Type* is also deleted.

In order to delete a *Job Type*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Select a *Job Type*.
- 2 Click on the *Delete* button; the *Delete Job Type* dialog box appears.
- 3 Click on *Yes*; the *Job Type* is deleted.

Renaming a Job Type

In order to rename a *Job Type*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Select a *Job Type*.
- 2 Click on the *Rename* button; the *Rename Job Type* dialog box appears.
- 3 Enter a new *Job Type* name; the new name appears in the *Job Type* list.

Job Subtype Pane

The *Job Subtype* pane displays a separate *Job Subtype* list for each selected *Job Type*. Clicking on a *Job Subtype* opens the *Properties for Job Subtype* panel, where the Print Provider defines the *Job Subtype* default settings.

The following is a description of the *Job Subtype* pane elements:

- **Toolbar** – Consists of the toolbar buttons that allow the Print Provider to cut, copy, paste, rename or delete a *Job Subtype*.
- **Add Job Subtype Button** – Adds a *Job Subtype* to the *Job Subtype* pane field.

Adding a New Job Subtype

In order to add a new *Job Subtype*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on *Add Job Subtype*; the *New Job Subtype* dialog box appears.
- 2 Enter a new name into the *Subtype* field box.
- 3 Click on *OK* to confirm the *New Job Subtype*.

Properties for Job Subtype Pane

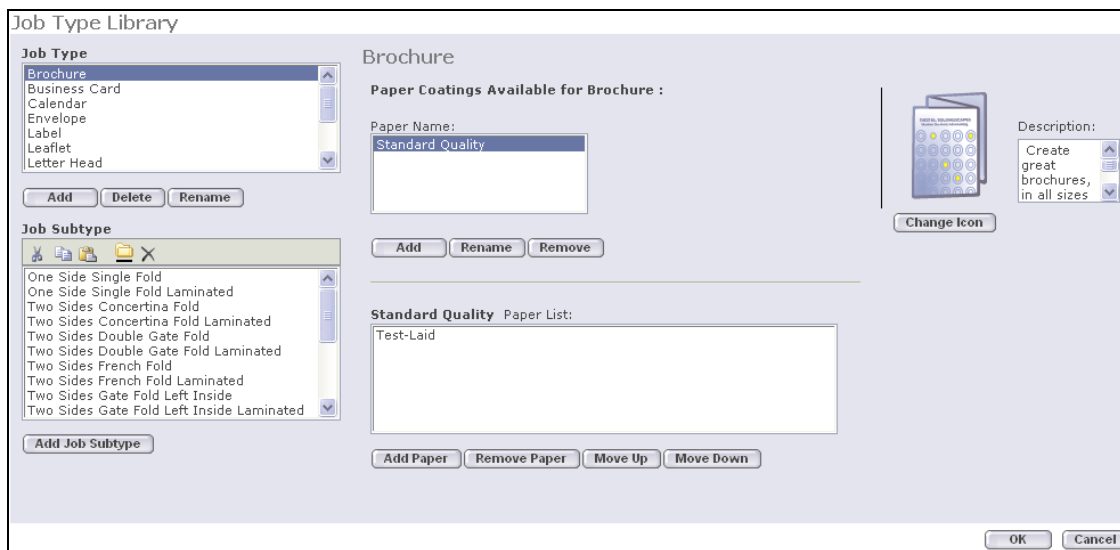







Figure 97: Adding a New Job Subtype

Job Subtype Toolbar

The following table lists and describes the *Toolbar* buttons:

Button	Description
Cut 	Removes a selected <i>Job Subtype</i> from the list without deleting it.
Copy 	Duplicates the <i>Job Subtype</i> with all its properties.
Paste 	Enables pasting a copied or cut <i>Job Subtype</i> under a different, selected <i>Job Type</i> . When pasting a <i>Job Subtype</i> from one <i>Job Subtype</i> list to another, where there is already another <i>Job Subtype</i> with the same name, a running number will be assigned.
Rename 	Enables renaming a <i>Job Subtype</i> .
Delete 	Deletes a selected <i>Job Subtype</i> .

Renaming a Job Subtype

In order to rename a *Job Subtype*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Select a *Job Subtype*.
- 2 Click on the *Rename* button; the *Change Subtype Name* dialog box appears.
- 3 Enter a new *Job Subtype* name.
- 4 Click on *OK*; the new *Job Subtype* name appears in the *Job Subtype* list.

Paper Types Available

In the *Paper Types Available* panels, the Print Provider defines paper type available for any specific *Job Type* and sets the default paper names. The Print Buyer can view these characteristics in the *Paper* box of the *Edit Properties* window.

Note: The advanced Print Buyer *User* (corporate administrator, supervisor, designer) can modify the default paper property settings in the Print Buyer's *Edit Properties* window, when the Job has not been priced.

The *Paper Types Available* panel is composed of the following elements:

Paper Name Sub-panel – Allows the Print Provider to enter a *Paper Name* (the designated name for a specific paper, for the easy use of the Print Buyer). The *Web Services* default *Paper Name* is by quality: standard, high, and premium. The default *Paper Name* can be modified

Caution: For a *Paper Name*, at least one valid *Paper Type* must be defined.

Paper Type Sub-panel – Contains different paper properties chosen from the *Paper Search* engine. When one of these properties has been removed from the stock, the *Paper Type* is marked red. When one of these properties has been temporarily disabled in the stock, the *Paper Type* is marked gray

Caution: *Paper Types* marked in red or gray are invalid. At least one *Paper Type* in the pane has to be marked black (available in stock and not disabled).

Job Type Icon – When selecting a specific *Job Type*, an icon appears in the upper-right corner of the panel, providing a visual description of the *Job Type*

Change Image Button – Enables the Print Provider to upload new images that can serve as *Job Type* icons

Paper Name Sub-panel

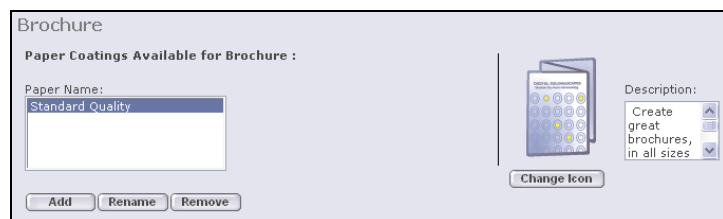


Figure 98: Paper Name Pane

In the *Paper Name* sub-panel, you can perform the following functionality:

- Adding a Paper Name
- Renaming a Paper
- Removing a Paper Name
- Changing the Job Subtype Icon

Adding a Paper Name

In order to add a *Paper Name*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the *Add Paper Name* button; the *Paper Name* dialog box appears.
- 2 Enter a new *Paper Name* and click on *OK*; the new name is added to the bottom of the list.

Renaming a Paper

In order to rename a *Paper Name*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on a *Paper Name*; the name is highlighted.
- 2 Click on the *Rename Paper Name* button; the *Change Paper Description* dialog box appears.
- 3 In the dialog box, enter a new name and click on *OK*; the new name replaces the highlighted name.

Removing a Paper Name

Caution: When removing a *Paper Name*, all of the paper types that have been defined for the *Paper Name*, will be also be removed.

In order to remove a *Paper Name*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on a name; the name is highlighted.
- 2 Click on *Remove Paper Name*; the *Paper Name* is removed.

Changing the Job Subtype Icon

In order to replace a *Job Type* icon with a new icon, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the *Change Icon* button; the *Images Folder: Job Type/Subtype Icon* dialog box appears.
- 2 Follow the instructions to upload images to the *Folder* and select a target image and click on *Select Image* to change the *Job Type* icon.

Paper Type Sub-panel

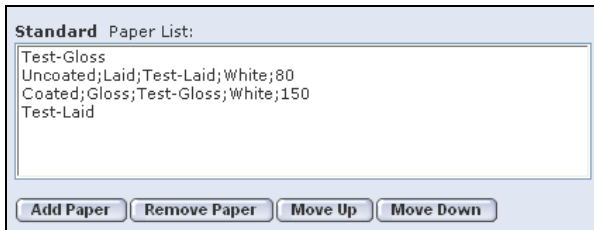


Figure 99: Paper Type Pane and Paper Properties Dropdown Menus

In the *Paper Name* sub-panel, you can perform the following functionality:

- Adding a Paper Type
- Removing a Paper Type
- Setting a Default Paper Type

Adding a Paper Type

In order to add a *Paper Type*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Select a *Job Type*; the *Paper Name* pane appears (the selected *Job Type* appears as the name of the panel).
- 2 Select a *Paper Name*; the paper properties appear in the *Paper List*.
- 3 Click on *Add Paper*, the *Paper* dialog box appears, listing all of the *Paper Types*.

Note: All (*Paper*) is the system default and therefore the entire *Paper* selection initially appears in the *Paper* list. To focus on a specific *Paper*, the *Search* dropdown box provides the means of searching for *Paper* according to specific criteria.

- 4 Select a target *Paper* and then click on *OK*; the *Paper* appears in the *Paper List* associated to the selected *Paper Name*.

Removing a Paper Type

In order to remove a *Paper Type*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 In the *Paper List*, click on a *Paper*; the *Paper* is highlighted.
- 2 Click on the *Remove Paper* button; the *Paper* is removed.

Setting a Default Paper Type

Where there is more than one *Paper* in the *Paper List*, the first *Paper* is the default setting. In order to set a default *Paper* in the *Paper List*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on a *Paper*; the *Paper* is highlighted.
- 2 Click on *Move Up*; the selected *Paper* is moved to the top of the *Paper List*, becoming the default.

Note: When placing a *Paper*, marked red or gray, at the top of the list, the system finds the uppermost *Paper Type* marked black (available in stock).

Job Type Library Taskbar

The *Job Type Library Taskbar* can be accessed by clicking on a specific *Job Subtype*. In the following panels, the Print Provider can define all of the *Edit Properties* for the selected *Job Subtype*.

The *Job Type Taskbar* is composed of tabs that access the following panels:

- **General** – Used for setting the number of Job pages, changing the default *Job Layout* icon and, when needed, choosing a two-sided mode, and adding notes
- **Folding** – Used for creating different fold types
- **Finishing** – Opens the *Finishing* taskbar where the Print Provider chooses a variety of finishing operations
- **Quantity** – Used for setting the number of Job copies
- **Flat Page Size** – Used for defining *Flat Page* sizes (unfolded or open Job page sizes) for the selected *Job Subtype*
- **Paper Selection** – Used for selecting a paper type(s), separately for each *Job Subtype*
- **Pricing** – Used for setting a price for the selected *Job Subtype*
- **Channels** – Allows the Print Provider to define the color channels that will be used by this *Job Subtype*

General Sub-panel

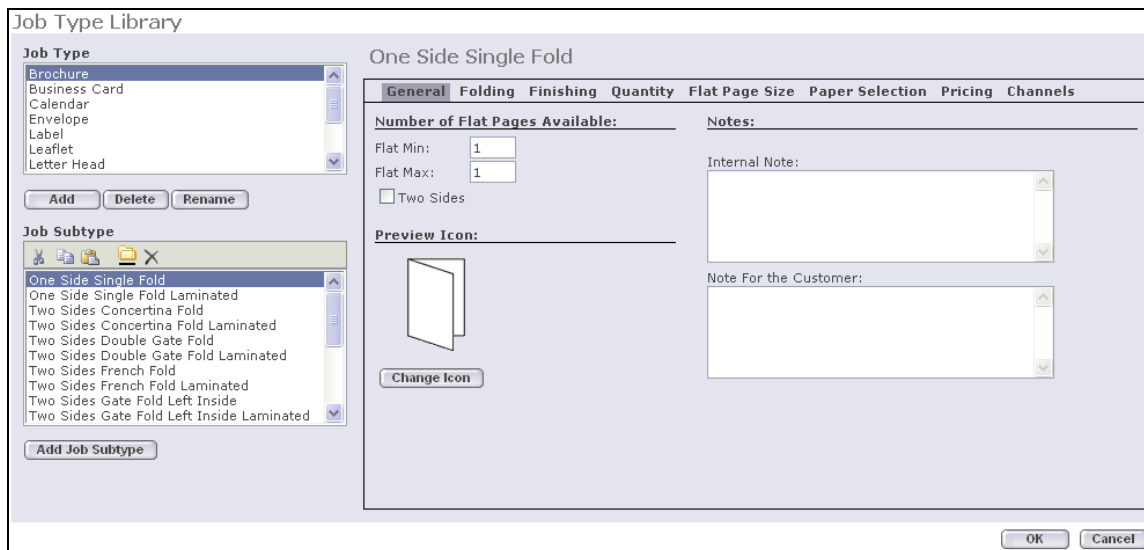



Figure 100: General Sub-panel

In the *General* sub-panel, the Print Provider determines the number of Job pages, the *Side* mode and the *Job Ticket* icon, and adds notes.

The following table lists and describes the *General* pane elements:

Panel Element	Description
Flat Min	Minimum number of <i>Flat</i> pages. This is the minimum number of pages allowed in this Job Subtype.
Flat Max	Maximum number of <i>Flat</i> pages. This is the maximum number of pages allowed in this Job Subtype.
Two Sides Checkbox	A paper sheet with Job pages on both sides. When the <i>Two Sides</i> checkbox is checkmarked, the minimum number of Job pages is always '2'.
Preview Icon 	<i>Web Services</i> offers a wide assortment of <i>Preview</i> icons that change according to the <i>Job Subtype</i> . All <i>Web Services</i> icons can be replaced with personal icons designed by the Print Provider. The Print Buyer sees the icon after entering the <i>Edit Properties</i> window.
Change Icon	Enables uploading a new icon image.
Internal Note Pane	Contains Print Provider notes for production purposes. These notes appear in the <i>Job Ticket</i> and enable the Print Provider to communicate with the personnel, at the handling level of the production.
Note For The Customer Pane	Contains the Print Provider notes for the Print Buyer. These notes can be read by all <i>Users</i> .

Uploading a Personal Preview Icon

In order to upload a personal *Preview* icon, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the *Change Icon* button; the *Images Folder: Job Type/Subtype Icons* dialog box appears.
- 2 Click on the *Upload Images* button; the *Upload File* dialog box appears.
- 3 Follow the instructions for uploading images to the *Images Folder: Job Type/Subtype Icons* dialog box.
- 4 In the *Images Folder*, select the target image and click on *Select Image* to change the *Job Type* icon.

Setting the Quantity of Flat Pages in the One Side Mode

In order to set the quantity of *Flat* pages in a *One Side* ('single page') mode, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Select a *Job Subtype* from the *Job Subtype* pane.
- 2 Uncheck the *Two Sides* checkbox.
- 3 In the *Flat Min* box, enter the minimum number of single pages.
- 4 In the *Flat Max* box, enter the maximum number of single pages.

Setting the Quantity of Flat Pages in the Two Sides Mode

In order to set the quantity of *Flat* pages in a *Two Sides* mode, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Select a *Job Subtype* from the *Job Subtype* pane
- 2 Checkmark the *Two Sides* checkbox.
- 3 Enter '2' into the *Min* box.
- 4 In the *Flat Max* box, enter the maximum number of pages (note that this number must be even).

Folding Pane

The *Folding* panel provides the user with the following “page folding” options which are selected from the *Folding* dropdown box:

- **None** – Folding will not be carried out
- **Pre-determined Fold** – Dropdown list containing folding options
- **Custom** – Allows the Print Provider to create a fold type for a specific Job. The Print Provider can create any number of folds for one Job.

Pre-determined Fold

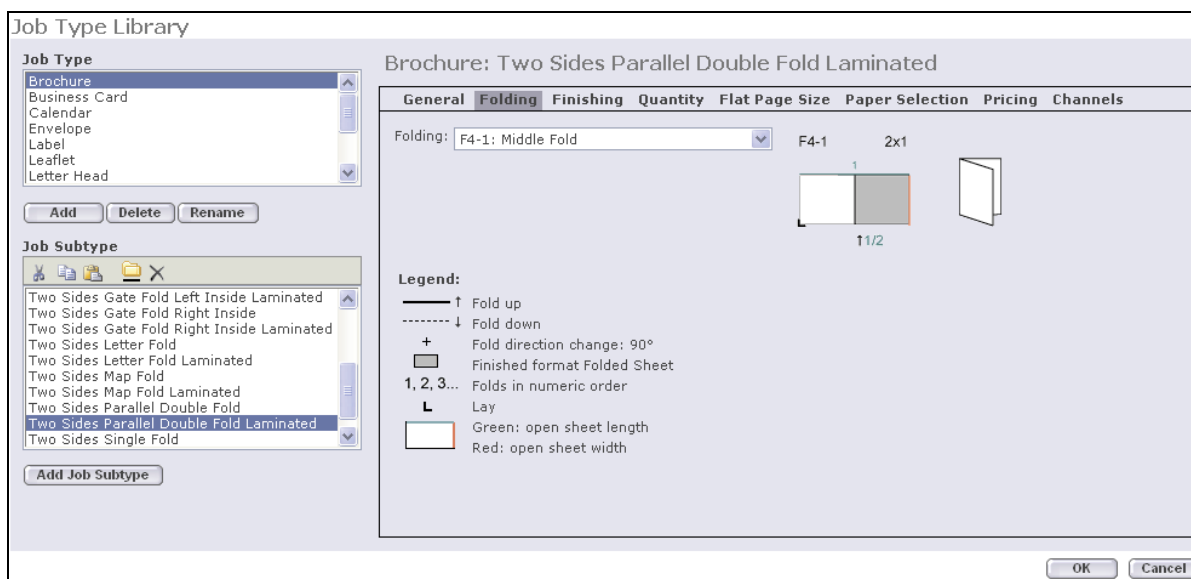


Figure 101: Pre-determined Fold Panel

Pre-determined Fold displays a *Layout Image* appears together with an image that displays how the folds are carried out. In addition, the *Pre-determined Fold* window displays a legend that explains the various *Page Fold* symbols.

Frequently Used Folds

Single Fold

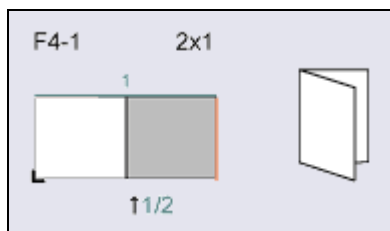


Figure 102: Single Fold Layout Image and Icon

A *Single Fold* is a two-panel fold where both panels are equal. A *Single Fold* can be folded both backwards and forwards.

Parallel Fold

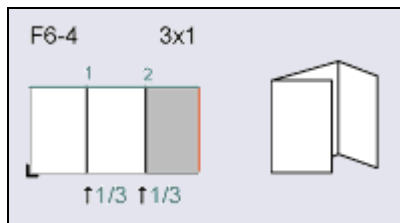


Figure 103: Parallel Fold Layout Image

A *Parallel Fold* is a three-panel fold. The inner panel must be slightly shorter than the other two folds; otherwise it causes the outer panel to pop up (telescoping effect). A gap between the inner and the central panel is specified in order to make the outer panel lie flat. The other two panels are equal.

Concertina (Z-Fold)

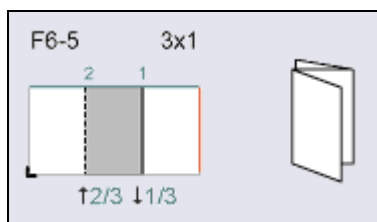


Figure 104: Concertina Fold Layout Image

A *Concertina Fold* is a three-panel fold where all panels are equal. One side-panel is folded to the front of the central panel; the other side-panel is folded to the back of the central panel.

Custom


Figure 105: Custom Fold Panel

The *Custom Fold* panel is composed of the following elements:

- **Folding Dropdown Box**
- **Flat Page Size Box** – Reflects the actual *Flat Page* size before folding. The desired Job size is selected from the dropdown menu. The list of available sizes in the dropdown menu corresponds to the size options selected in the *Flat Page Size* panel. In order to add/delete a size, the Print Provider returns to the *Flat Page Size* panel and selects the desired size. *Flat* page size is graphically represented in the *Job Preview* image
- **Width and Height of Flat Job Page** – Displays the sheet size dimensions before folding. Fold guides divide the *Layout* image into panels, where a panel represents a Job page. The Print Provider must always click on the largest panel of the Job in order to receive the required result.
- **Fold Creation Boxes** – Contain all of the folding properties:
 - **Orientation Dropdown Menu** – The Print Provider can place a fold either horizontally or vertically, according to the Job layout. Vertical folds are counted from left to right and horizontal folds from top to bottom. The fold guides in the *Layout* image indicate fold orientation
 - **Panel Rate (%) Box** – Used for entering a percentage number that reflects the location of the fold. By clicking outside the *Panel Rate (%)* box, a fold guide is applied to the *Layout* image, dividing it into panels
 - **Gap Box** – A number entered into the *Gap* box reflects the gap between two panels (i.e. while creating a *Gate Fold*, a gap must be specified between the inner and the central panels (see: *Parallel Fold*, page 152)
 - **Fold Direction Dropdown Menu** – The Print Provider chooses an ‘inside’ or ‘outside’ fold direction:
 - Inside: the leaf is folded to the front of the following panel.
 - Outside: the leaf is folded to the spine of the following panel.

- **Name Box** – In the *Name* box, the Print Provider enters a fold name
- **Layout Image** – Represents the first page of a Job; fold guides in the *Layout* image indicate the applied folds

The following table lists the operation buttons in the *Folding* panel and describes their functions:

Operation Button	Function
Add Fold	Adds a new row of fold creation boxes.
Up	Moves up a selected row of fold creation boxes.
Down	Moves down a selected row of fold creation boxes.
Delete 	Deletes a row of fold creation boxes.

Creating a Single Fold

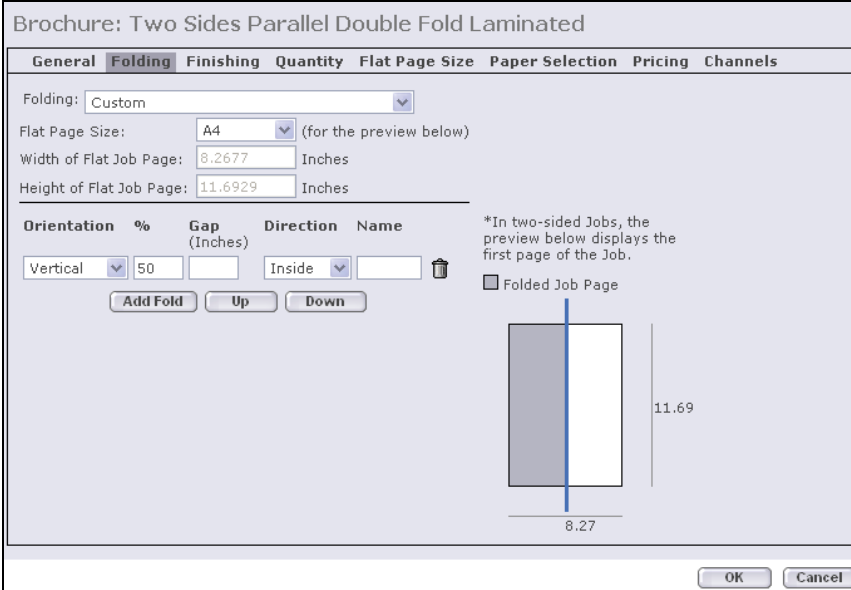


Figure 106: Single Fold Creation

In order to create a *Single* fold, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Select either a vertical or horizontal fold orientation.
- 2 To create a panel-separating guide, enter a number (percentage) into the *Panel Rate (%)* box.
- 3 Enter 50 to create equal leafs; the page folds exactly in the middle.
- 4 Select the required fold direction.

Note: Do not type the percentage ‘%’ sign into the *Panel Rate (%)* box.

Creating a Right Inside Gate Fold

Figure 107: Right Inside Gate Fold Creation

In order to create a right inside *Gate Fold*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 In the *Panel Rate (%)* box, enter 66.66.
- 2 Click outside the *Panel Rate (%)* box in order to place the first separating guide; the right-hand panel becomes the inner panel.
- 3 Click on *Add Fold* to add another fold row.
- 4 Enter 33.33 into the *Panel Rate (%)* box.
- 5 Click outside the box in order to draw the second separating guide; the left-hand panel becomes the outer panel. At this point, all of the three panels are equal.
- 6 In order to make the inner panel shorter than the outer two panels, add the gap dimensions to the first fold *Gap* box (the top fold box line).
- 7 Divide the gap dimensions in two and enter the result into the second fold *Gap* box in order to make the left and the central panels equal.

Creating a Left Inside Gate Fold

Figure 108: Left Inside Gate Fold Creation

In order to create a left inside *Gate Fold*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Switch the order of the folds by clicking on the *Up/Down* button.
- 2 Reduce the left panel size by entering the negative number in the matching *Gap* box.
- 3 Divide the *Gap* in two and enter the result into the second fold *Gap* box.
- 4 Set the folding directions as either *Inside-Inside* or *Outside-Outside*.

Creating a Concertina (Z-Fold)

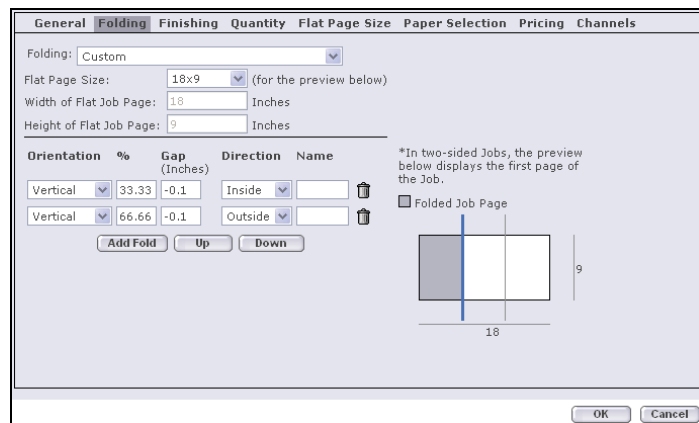


Figure 109: Concertina Fold Creation

In order to create a *Concertina* (Z-Fold), carry out the following steps:

- 1 In the *Panel Rate (%)* box, enter 33.33.
- 2 To place the first separating guide, click outside the box.
- 3 To add another fold row, click on *Add Fold*.
- 4 In the *Panel Rate (%)* box, enter 66.66.
- 5 Click outside the box to draw the second separating guide.
- 6 Choose the *Inside* fold direction for the right-hand panel to be folded to the front of the central panel.
- 7 Choose the *Outside* fold direction for the second fold.

Note: The reverse selection switches the folding direction of the *Concertina Fold*.

Finishing Panel

Clicking on the *Finishing* tab opens the *Finishing* panel. Clicking on a taskbar tab opens a *Finishing* sub-panel. In each *Finishing* sub-panel is a checkbox that is unchecked by default. Selecting the checkbox enables the *Finishing* option.

Stapling Sub-panel

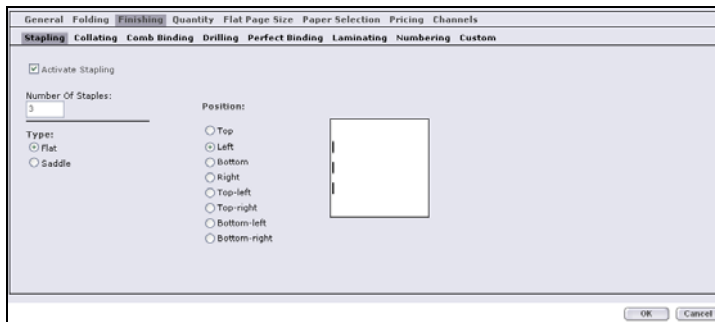


Figure 110: Stapling Sub-panel

In the *Stapling* sub-panel, the Print Provider chooses either flat (side or corner) stapling or saddle stitching. Saddle stitching is carried out by stapling the Job pages along the central fold. *Flat* stapling is carried out from front to back of the entire thickness of the page block. Applied staples are indicated in the *Finishing Sample* image. Staples are always centralized.

Applying Flat Stapling

In order to apply *Flat* stapling, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Checkmark the *Activate Stapling* checkbox.
- 2 Click on the *Flat* radio button.
- 3 Click on one of the following radio buttons:
 - Top
 - Bottom
 - Left
 - Right
 - Top-Left
 - Top-Right
 - Bottom-Left
 - Bottom-Right
- 4 Enter a required number of staples into the *Number of Staples* box.

Applying Saddle Stitching

In order to apply *Saddle* stitching, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Checkmark the *Activate Stapling* checkbox.
- 2 Click on the *Saddle* radio button; staple position radio buttons become disabled.
- 3 Enter a required number of staples into the *Number of Staples* box.

Note: The position of staples in the *Finishing Sample* image reflects the presence and the number of staples but not the precise location.

Collating Sub-panel

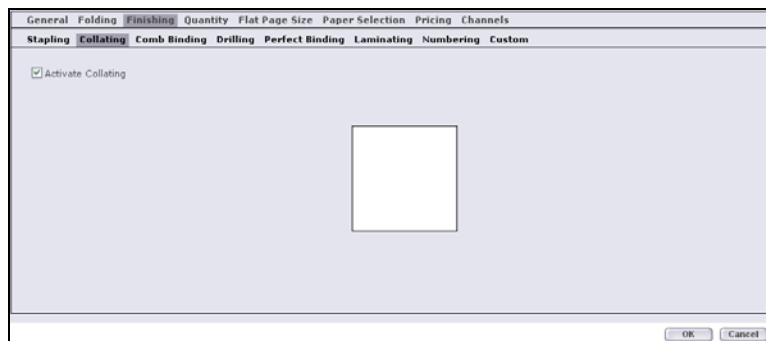


Figure 111: Collating Sub-panel

Instructions for applying the collating option follow.

Applying Collating

In order to apply collating, carry out the following step:

- Select the *Activate Collating* checkbox.

Comb Binding Sub-panel

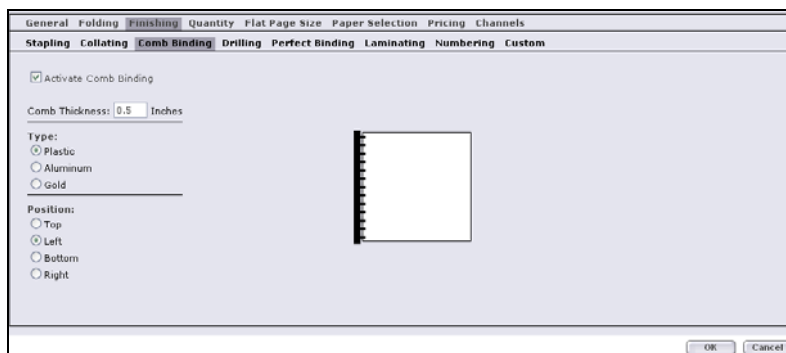


Figure 112: Comb Binding Sub-panel

In the *Comb Binding* sub-panel, the Print Provider chooses a *Comb Binding* option, provided that the required punching and binding equipment is available.

Applying Comb Binding

In order to apply *Comb Binding*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Select the *Activate Comb Binding* checkbox.
- 2 Choose a comb position by clicking on one of the following radio buttons:
 - Top (activated by default)
 - Bottom
 - Left
 - Right
- 3 Enter comb dimensions into the *Comb Thickness* box; the parameter reflects the diameter of the binder.
- 4 Choose a comb material: plastic or wire (aluminum or gold).

Note: The comb image does not reflect comb dimensions and material.

Drilling Sub-panel

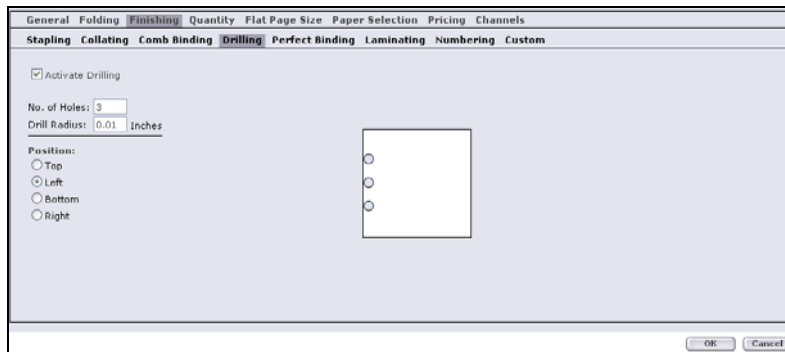


Figure 113: Drilling Sub-panel

Drills can be applied at the top, bottom, right or left edges of the Job. Drills are always centralized.

Applying Drilling

In order to apply drilling, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Checkmark the *Activate Drilling* checkbox.
- 2 Choose a drill position by clicking on one of the following radio buttons:
 - Top (selected by default)
 - Left
 - Bottom
 - Right
- 3 Enter the number of drill holes into the matching box ('1' is the default entry); drill number and position is reflected in the *Finishing Sample* image.
- 4 Enter the drill hole radius into the *Drill Radius* box.

Perfect Binding Sub-panel

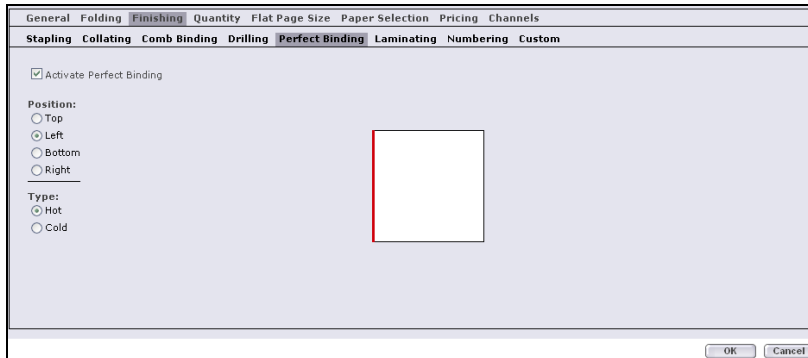


Figure 114: Perfect Binding Sub-panel

In the *Perfect Binding* sub-panel, the Print Provider chooses a binding method for combining folded and gathered sections together within the cover. A border in the *Finishing Sample* image indicates binding position. The border changes position according to the selection above.

Applying Perfect Binding

In order to apply *Perfect Binding*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Select the *Activate Perfect Binding* checkbox.
- 2 Activate one of the following radio buttons, to bind the pages:
 - Top (activated by default)
 - Right
 - Bottom
 - Left
- 3 Click on either the *Hot* or *Cold* radio button to apply hot or cold glue.

Laminating Sub-panel

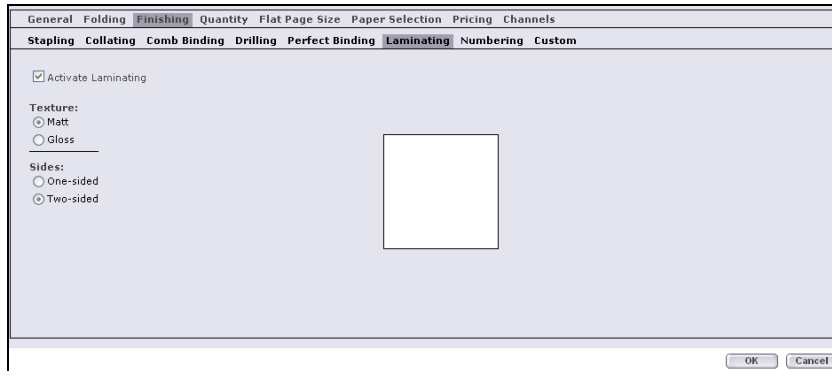


Figure 115: Laminating Panel

Web Services provides the Print Provider with options for laminating the entire product, either on one page side or on both page sides.

Laminating

In order to laminate, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Select the *Activate Laminating* checkbox.
- 2 Click on the *Matt* or *Gloss* radio button.
- 3 Click on one of the following radio buttons:
 - One-sided, in order to apply a surface covering material to one (front) page side.
 - Two-sided, in order to apply a surface covering material to both page sides.

Numbering Sub-panel

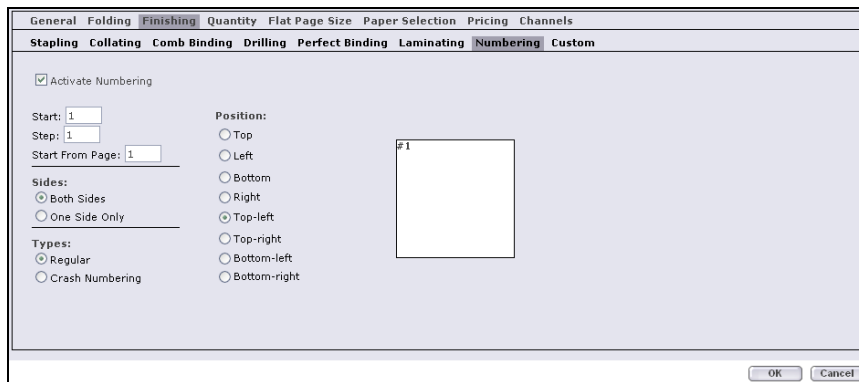


Figure 116: Numbering Panel

Numbering enables the Print Provider to add a page number to eight different locations on the Job page. In addition, the Print Provider can number selected pages only. ‘#1’ in the *Finishing Sample* image changes position according to the numbering selection.

Applying Numbers

In order to apply numbers, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Select the *Activate Numbering* checkbox.
- 2 Center the number position by activating one of the following radio buttons:
 - Top (activated by default)
 - Bottom
 - Right
 - Left

Or apply numbers to the page corners by activating one of the following radio buttons:

- Top-right
 - Top-left
 - Bottom-right
 - Bottom-left
- 3 Enter a starting number into the *Start* box.

Note: In order to eliminate numbering the cover page, enter 2 in *Start from Page* box.

- 4 Apply numbers to either one or both sides of the page by activating one of the following radio buttons:
 - One Side Only - in order to apply numbers to one side of the page.
 - Both Sides- in order to apply numbers to both sides of the page.

Note: When numbering from the second page and choosing the *One Side Only* option, the first two pages of a double-sided page are not numbered. The *One Side Only* option is applied exclusively to the page front.

- 5 In order to number selected pages, define a step in the *Step* box.
- 6 Choose either a *Regular* or a *Crash Numbering* serializing technique (*Crash Numbering* is the printing of the same number on several succeeding copies, using a carbon copy or carbonate-backed pages).

Note: '#1' as applied to the *Finishing Sample* image, reflects only the number position and not the page number.

Custom Sub-panel

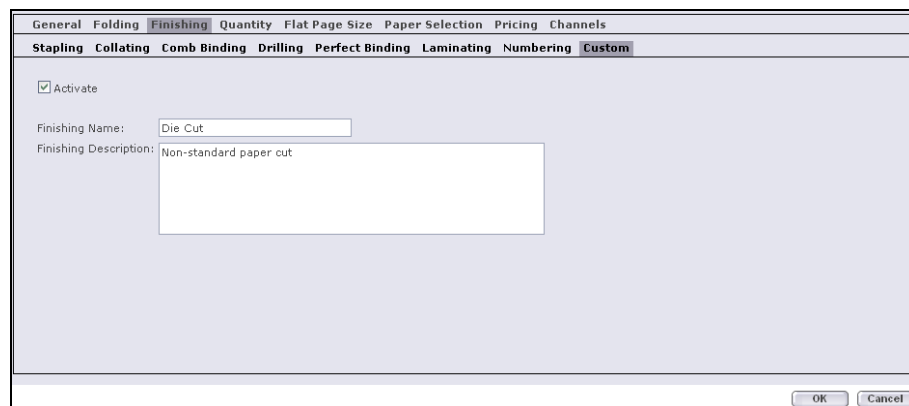


Figure 117: Custom Sub-panel

Custom enables the Print Provider to add an additional *Finishing* option that has not been included in the standard, *Web Services Finishing* options. The *Custom* finishing will be added as text only to the *Job Ticket* and will NOT be included in any pricing calculation.

Adding a Custom Finishing Option

In order to add a *Custom Finishing* option, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Select the *Activate* checkbox.
- 2 Enter the *Custom Finishing* name into the *Finishing Name* box.
- 3 Enter the *Custom Finishing* description into the *Finishing Description* box.
- 4 Click on *OK*.

Quantity Panel

From	To	Step	
50	100	50	
200	1000	100	
1500	10000	500	

Add

Figure 118: Quantity Panel

Quantity refers to the number of Job copies. Through the *Quantity* panel, the Print Provider provides the Print Buyer with various quantity options for the specific Job. These options are presented to the Print Buyer in a dropdown menu of the Print Buyer's *Shopping Cart*.

Setting Quantity

In order to set *Quantity*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Enter the minimum quantity that the customer can order, into the *From* box.
- 2 Enter the maximum quantity limit into the *To* box.
- 3 Enter a step in the *Step* box.

Note: Ensure that the step in the *Step* box does not equal or exceed the upper quantity limit in the *To* box, of the same *Quantity Setup* row.

- 4 Click on *Add* to attach a new row when a step change is needed.
- 5 Enter a new top quantity in the *To* box.
- 6 Enter another step into the *Step* box.

Deleting a Quantity Setup Row

In order to delete a *Quantity Setup* row, carry out the following step:

- Click on the *Delete* button, at the end of the target *Quantity Setup* row.

Example of Quantity Setup

Create a Quantity list for this Job Subtype:

From	To	Step	
50	100	50	
200	1000	100	
1500	10000	500	

Add

Quantity:

Paper:

Printing Quality:

Color Channels:

Upload File

300

50

100

200

300

400

500

600

700

800

900

1000

1500

2000

2500

3000

Figure 119: Quantity Setup Example 1

As the above example shows, the Print Provider determines that the order minimum is 50 and the order maximum is 1000 copies of the selected *Job Subtype*. This will be reflected in the *Quantity* box of the *Edit Properties* window, on the Print Buyers side.

Note: In the first *Quantity Setup* row, the system considers ‘100’ in the *To* box as ‘99’ (see Figure 119).

When a *Quantity* list has not created, the Print Buyer is provided the option of entering any number into the *Quantity* box of the *Edit Properties* window, as illustrated below.

One Side Single Fold Laminated

General Folding Finishing **Quantity** Flat Page Size Paper Selection Pricing Channels

Create a Quantity list for this Job Subtype:

From To Step

 Shopping Cart

 Click on **Get Quote**, receive the price and then click on **Proceed to Checkout**.

Job #	Thumbnails	Job Name	Quantity	Price (\$)
493  <input type="button" value="Save For Later"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>		Royal Cargo Letterhead #493	50 <input type="button" value="v"/>	N/A
527  <input type="button" value="Save For Later"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>		Royal Finance Office Business Card #527	50 <input type="button" value="v"/>	44.14
533  <input type="button" value="Save For Later"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>		Royal Finance Picture Business Card #533	50 <input type="button" value="v"/>	N/A
547  <input type="button" value="Save For Later"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>		MacFood Brochure	<input type="text" value="1"/>	N/A

Subtotal: N/A

(Get Quote before Ordering) 

Figure 120: Quantity Setup Example 2

Flat Page Size Panel

GeneralFoldingFinishingQuantityFlat Page SizePaper SelectionPricingChannels

Fixed Sizes

All

Select:

☐ A0

☐ SRA4

☐ 8.5 x 10

☐ 14 x 18

☐ 14.33x17

☐ A1

☐ SRA5

☐ 8 x 10

☐ RA4

☐ 14.33x18.25

☐ A2

☐ SRA6

☐ 8 x 10.5

☐ RA3

☐ 14.33x20.5

☒ A3

☒ letter

☐ 8.5 x 11

☐ 11 x 17

☒ A4

☐ legal

☐ 8.5 x 14

☐ 210 x 279

☒ A5

☒ ledger

☐ 9 x 11

☐ 3.66x8.5

☒ A6

☐ 9 x 14

☒ 7.33x8.5

☐ SRA0

☐ 350 x 470

☐ 9 x 12

☐ 7x7

☐ SRA1

☐ 330 x 450

☐ 14 x 17

☐ 9x14.33

☐ SRA2

☐ 330 x 440

☐ 12 x 18

☐ 12x18

Custom Sizes

Width

Height

Description

Add

Figure 121: Flat Page Size Panel

In the *Flat Page Size* panel, the Print Provider determines the possible sizes of the unfolded/open *Job Page* size (i.e. the *Flat Page* size of a business card can be 3.5 * 5.5 inch) by either choosing from the *Job Page* sizes, as defined in the *Paper Sizes* window (see *Paper Sizes Window*, page 210) or by setting a *Custom* size for the selected *Job Subtype*.

Note: Though the *Job Size* can also reflect *Press Sheet* size, in this selection the actual size of the *Job Page* must be chosen and NOT the *Run Size* that will be used in the output device.

Caution: When pricing this *Job Subtype*, choose only **one** Job size.

Setting the Flat Page Size Selection

In order to set the *Flat Page Size* selection, carry out the following step:

- Click on *Select* and checkmark the required checkboxes in order to restrict the Print Buyer to specific *Flat Page* sizes, for the specific *Job Subtype*.

Note: Clicking on the *All* radio button will make all of the standard sizes available to the Print Buyer.


Creating a Custom Size

In order to create a *Custom* size, carry out the following steps:

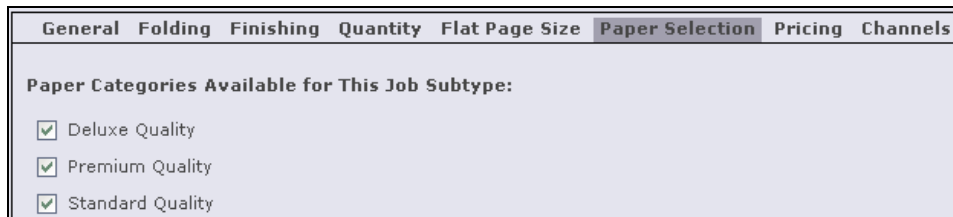
- Click on *Add*; new *Custom Size* field boxes appear.
- Enter the required parameters into the field boxes.
- For additional *Custom* sizes, repeat steps 1 and 2.

Removing a Custom Size

In order to remove a *Custom* size, carry out the following step:

- Click on the *Delete*  button that is adjacent to the target *Custom* size.

Paper Selection Panel



General	Folding	Finishing	Quantity	Flat Page Size	Paper Selection	Pricing	Channels
<p>Paper Categories Available for This Job Subtype:</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Deluxe Quality</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Premium Quality</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Standard Quality</p>							

Figure 122: Paper Size Selection Panel

Paper name(s) are selected separately for each *Job Subtype* in the *Paper Selection* panel. The Print Buyer chooses the selected paper name from the *Paper* dropdown menu in the *Edit Properties* window. The Print Buyer can only see the paper names that are checkmarked in this panel.

Note: The paper names are defined per *Job Type*. In order to change/edit or delete the categories of the *Paper Selection* tab, click on the relevant *Job Type* and then modify the *Paper* in the appropriate panel.

Selecting a Desired Paper Name

In order to select a desired paper name, carry out the following step:

- Uncheck the paper names that are not required (all the checkboxes are checkmarked by default).

Caution: At least **one** paper name must be selected.

Pricing Panel

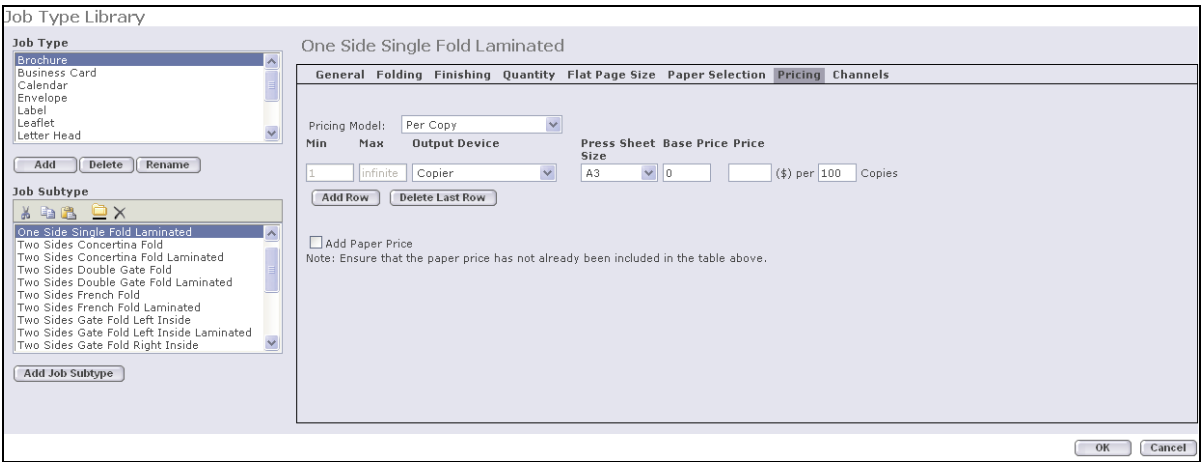


Figure 123: Pricing Panel

The *Pricing* button accesses the *Simple Job Pricing* dialog box, which initially displays a dropdown box with the following options:

- **Not defined for this level** Signifies not to activate this *Pricing Model* but to scan the next *Pricing Model* in the hierarchy for activation (for an in-depth review of pricing, see the *Generic Pricing Mechanism*, page 281).
- **Per Copy** Activates the *Pricing Model* and enables determining prices per copy. Selecting the *Per Copy* option displays the controls for pricelist creation.

Per Copy

In the *Per Copy* panel, the Print Provider creates a fixed price for a *Job Type*. The Print Provider is able to determine quantity ranges and for each quantity range, the Print Provider must configure the suitable output device, *Press Sheet* size, base price and price per number of copies.

Pricing Panel Elements

Per Copy pricing is carried out according to quantity ranges; each row in the panel defines the pricing of one range. The *Per Copy* panel is composed of the following elements:

- **Min** Minimum number of Job copies in a range ('1' by default).
- **Max** Maximum number of copies to in a range ('Infinite' by default).
- **Output Device** The output device for this range of copies.
- **Paper Size** *Press Sheet* size to be used for printing this range of copies.
- **Base Price** Initial, fixed printing expense for this range of copies.
- **Price** The price for this range of copies in the *Quantity* box
- **Add Row Button** Adds an empty row to the bottom of the table with the max from a previous row. If no previous row has been added, it will be blank.

Channels Panel

Figure 124: Channels Panel

In the *Channels* panel, the Print Provider determines both the type and number of available *Process* colors as well as the number of *Spot* colors.

The *Channels* panel contains the following elements:

- **Black Only** – Signifies that only the *Black* color channel is available.
- **No. of Process Colors** – Signifies that the Job will be printed using *Process* colors.
- **No. of Process Colors Dropdown Box** – For selecting the appropriate number of *Process* colors.
- **No. of Spot Colors Dropdown Box** – For selecting the appropriate number of *Spot* colors.

Setting the Process Channels

In order to set the *Process* channels, carry out the following steps:

- 1 When the only available *Process* channel is black, click on the *Black Only* radio button.
- 2 When the available *Process* channels include colors, click on the *No. of Process Channels* radio button.
- 3 In the *Process Colors Dropdown Box*, select an appropriate number of colors.

Setting the Number of Spot Channels

In order to set number of *Spot* channels, carry out the following step:

- In the *No. of Spot Colors Dropdown Box*, select an appropriate number of colors.

Save Settings Button

In order to save the settings, carry out the following step:

- Click on the *OK* button at the bottom of the *Job Ticket Library* window.

Job Type Groups

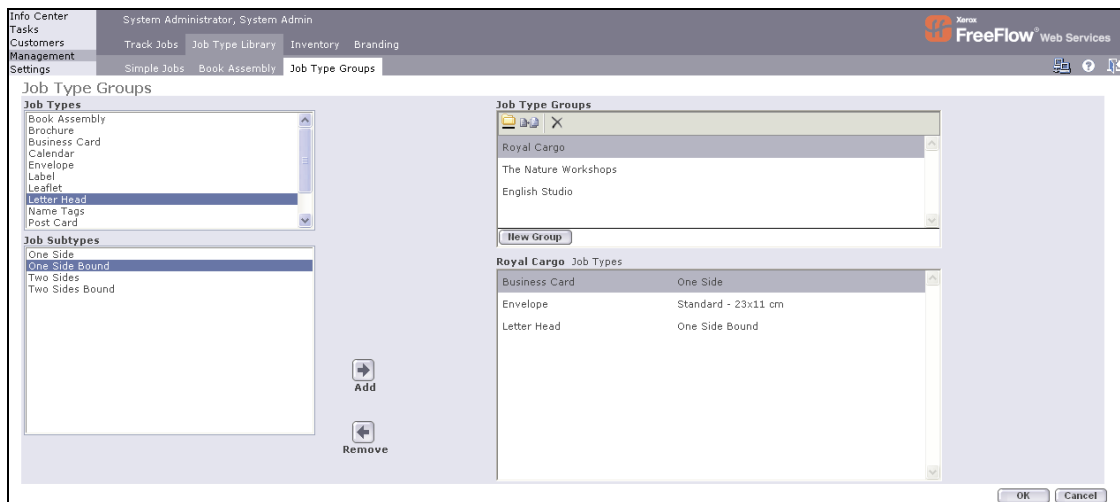


Figure 125: Print Provider

Job Type Groups enables the Print Provider to create a group of *Job Types* and *Job Subtypes* that can be assigned to a specific Print Buyer. By limiting the Print Buyers selection of *Job Types*, the Print Buyer's workflow can be streamlined and errors caused by choosing inappropriate *Job Types* can be reduced.

Job Type Groups is divided into the following panes:

- **Job Types** – Displays the *Job Types* appearing in the *Print Buyer* interface.
- **Job Subtypes** – When a *Job Type* is selected, the *Job Subtype* list for this specific *Job Type* is displayed
- **Job Type Groups** – Displays the various groups that have been created specifically for selected *Job Types*.
- **Group Subtypes** – Displays the *Job Subtypes* that have been placed in the specific *Job Ticket Group*.

Creating a Job Type Group

To create a *Job Type Group*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 In the *Job Type Group* pane, click on *New Group*; the *New Group* dialog box appears.
- 2 Enter an appropriate *Group* name and then click on *OK*; the *Group* name appears in the *Job Type Group* list.
- 3 Enter additional *Group* names where necessary.
- 4 Select a *Job Type*; the list of *Job Subtypes* appears in the *Job Subtypes* pane.
- 5 Select a *Job Subtype* and then click on *Add*; the *Job Subtype* appears in the *Groups Subtypes* pane.
- 6 For additional *Job Subtypes*, repeat steps 4 and 5.
- 7 To remove a *Job Subtype* from the *Groups Subtypes* pane, select the subtype in the *Groups Subtypes* pane and then click on *Remove*.

Section III: Inventory

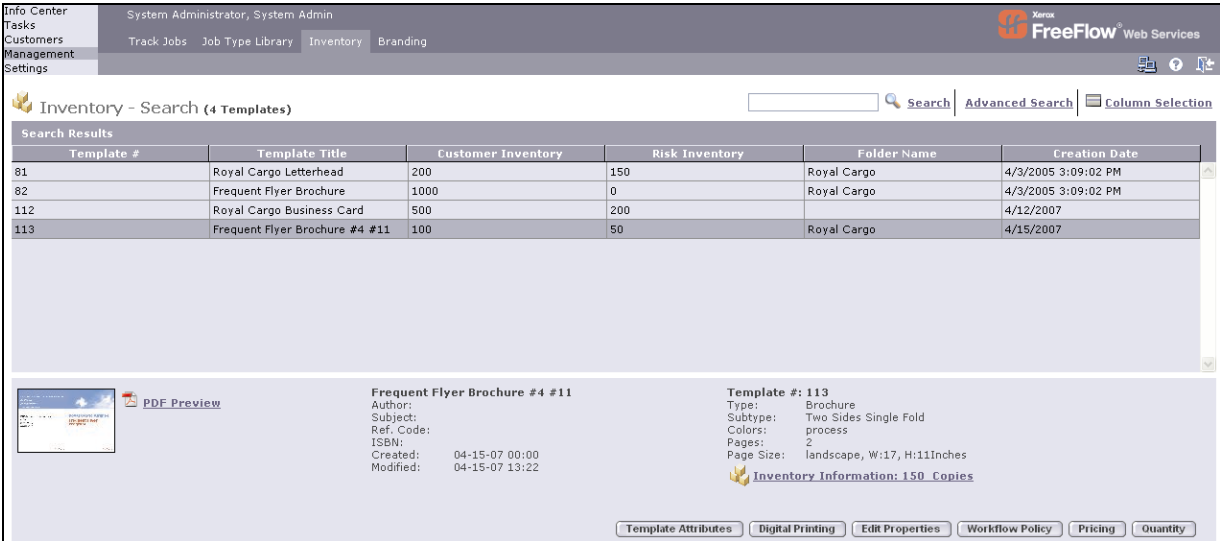


Figure 126: Inventory

Inventory enables printing Jobs that are destined to be stored in the Print Providers storage facilities rather than be immediately shipped to the delivery destination. By working with the *Inventory* feature, the Print Buyer can order larger numbers of Job copies that are immediately needed and therefore enjoy lower prices and the ability to ship Jobs immediately, when the need arises.

In addition, *Inventory* enables further reduction in printing costs by allowing the Print Provider to take the initiative and print templates to *Inventory* without a Print Buyer template order.

Note: In order to print *Inventory* Jobs, the Print Provider must first define templates as *Inventory* templates. This is carried out in the *Templates* panel (see *Customers/Templates*)

The *Inventory* window provides the Print Provider with the ability to:

- Track all *Inventory* templates
- View *Inventory* templates, including order and storage information
- Search and sort *Inventory* templates, according to *Inventory* template information
- Change *Inventory* template properties
- Edit *Inventory* templates
- Preview *Inventory* templates as a PDF
- Manually price *Inventory* templates

The *Inventory* window is composed of the following elements:

- **Inventory Template Panel** – Displays information on the *Inventory* templates according to various information columns
- **Search and Advanced Search** – Enables locating specific *Inventory* templates or groups of templates
- **Column Selection** – Accesses a dialog box that allows the user to determine which columns that will appear in the *Inventory Template* panel
- **Inventory Template Information Panel** – Displays detailed information of specific *Inventory* templates

Search

Search enables locating either a specific *Inventory* template or a group of *Inventory* templates, which will then appear in the *Inventory Template* panel

Note: Entering a complete name into the *Search* field will result in the location of the specific template. Entering a less than complete name can result in the location of a group of templates sharing a common denominator.

Advanced Search

The *Advanced Search* link accesses the *Advanced Inventory Search* dialog box.

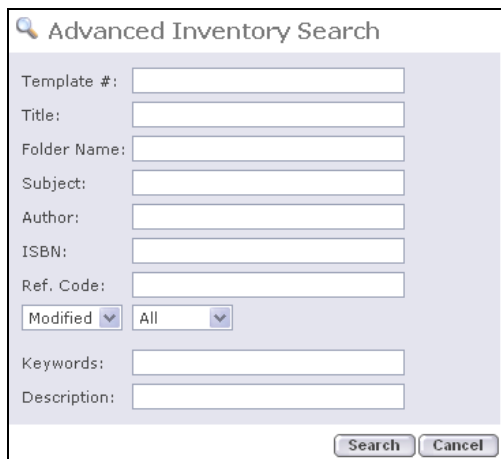
The image shows a screenshot of the 'Advanced Inventory Search' dialog box. It has a title bar with a magnifying glass icon and the text 'Advanced Inventory Search'. Inside the dialog, there are several text input fields stacked vertically: 'Template #:', 'Title:', 'Folder Name:', 'Subject:', 'Author:', 'ISBN:', 'Ref. Code:', 'Keywords:', and 'Description:'. Below the 'Ref. Code:' field, there are two dropdown menus; the first is labeled 'Modified' and the second is labeled 'All'. At the bottom right of the dialog, there are two buttons: 'Search' and 'Cancel'.

Figure 127: Advanced Inventory Templates Search

Advanced Search enables the user to enter specific template attributes that will narrow the scope of the search. *Advanced Search* also provides an advanced date search mechanism, which divides templates into created and modified templates.

Note: Specific template attributes are set through the *Templates Attributes* dialog box, accessed from the *Template Information* panel.

Column Selection

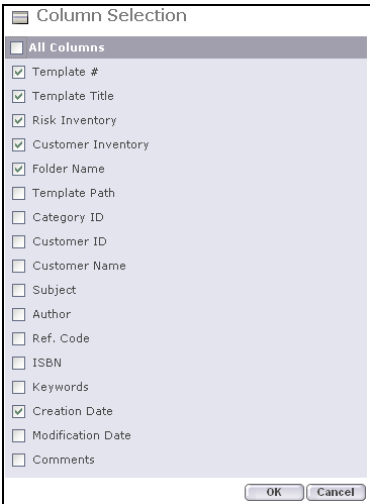


Figure 128: Column Selection

Column Selection lists the template attributes. When an attribute is checkmarked, a column bearing this attribute name appears in the *Inventory Template* panel. Clearing an *Attribute* checkbox removes the *Attribute* column.

Inventory Template Information Panel

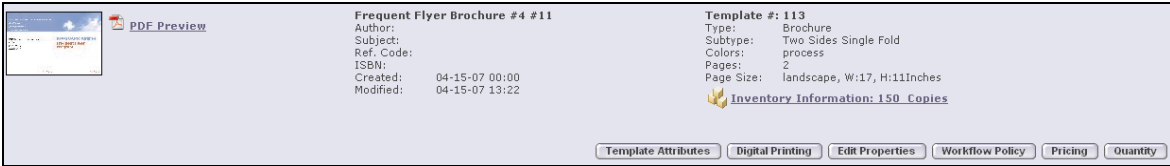




Figure 129: Inventory Template Information Panel

The *Inventory Template Information* panel displays information about a selected (highlighted) Job and enables viewing a *Job Ticket*, opening the Job as a *PDF*, and viewing and modifying the Job’s properties in the *Edit Properties* window. The Print Provider can also change the Job status and price the Job manually.

The following table lists and describes the *Job Information* panel elements:

Element	Description
Job Thumbnail	Displays the Job front page and orientation (vertical or horizontal).
PDF Preview Icon 	Enables opening low-res PDF preview of a single Inventory template
Inventory Template Information Fields	Contains information about the <i>Inventory</i> template.
Operation Buttons	Enable entering template attributes for <i>Search Engine</i> use and allows for changing properties, workflow policy, pricing, and quantity.
Inventory Information 	Accesses the <i>Inventory Information</i> dialog box

Operation Buttons

The *Inventory Template Information* panel contains the following operation buttons:

- **Template Attributes** – Accesses the *Template Attributes* dialog box where the Print Provider provides such information as *Title, Description, Creation Date, Subject, Author* etc, all of which enable the *Search Engine* to precisely locate specific *Inventory* templates.
- **Digital Printing** Accesses the *Digital Printing Properties* dialog box
- **Edit Properties** – Accesses the *Edit Properties* dialog box, where the Print Provider views/modifies the *Inventory Template* properties
- **Workflow Policy Button** – Accesses the *Workflow Policy* dialog box, which allows the Print Provider to carry out the following:
 - Oblige the Print Buyer to view a soft copy of the *Inventory* template before ordering
 - Oblige the Print Buyer to accept the preview in order to continue with the ordering process
 - Oblige the Print Buyer to enter a *Reference* code when ordering a *Inventory* template
 - Oblige the Print Buyer *User*, working with a *MailToPrint* catalog template, to obtain Supervisor approval for specific field value modifications or for overflowing or empty fields
 - Enter *Job Name, Reference Code* and *Cost Center* fields into the ordering procedure
- **Pricing Button** – Accesses the *Template Pricing* window for modifying the price of the templates
- **Quantity Button** – Accesses the *Template Quantity* window where the Print Provider determines the minimum and maximum amounts that can be ordered as well as the number of steps for each template

Digital Printing

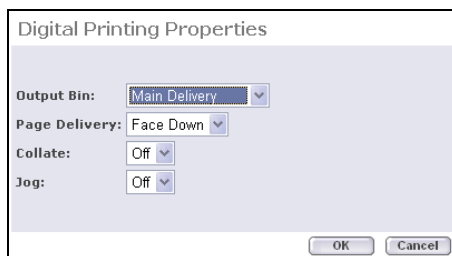


Figure 130: Digital Printing

Digital Printing enables setting the following digital parameters:

Output Bin When supported by the digital printer, enables sending the printing pages to the selected bin or tray

Page Delivery Enables selecting either the *Face Up* or *Face Down* option

Collate Enables the *Collate* option

Jog Enables physically separating groups of pages within the stack of printed pages

Edit Properties

Figure 131: Edit Properties Window

The *Edit Properties* dialog opens by clicking on the *Edit Properties* button.

Note: The *Edit Properties* window interface is the same as in the *Print Buyer Template*. (See *Properties / Export HTML / Send MailToPrint*, page 106 for details)

Modifying Inventory Template Properties

In order to modify *Inventory Template* properties, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on a Job in the *Inventory Template Status* panel.
- 2 Click on the *Edit Properties* button; the *Edit Properties* dialog box appears.
- 3 Enter all modifications into the designated field boxes and dropdown boxes.
- 4 Where necessary, click on the relevant links and enter the modifications into the linked windows.
- 5 To confirm the modifications, click on *OK*; the *Edit Properties* dialog box closes.
- 6 To close the *Edit Properties* dialog box, without confirming any modifications, click on the *Close* button in the upper-right corner of the window.

Caution: When changing the *Inventory Template* properties for a template that has already been priced by the system, an *Alert* message informs that the template price remains unchanged but may no longer be valid.

Pricing

The *Inventory Templates* pricing differs from the regular *Templates* pricing. There is a separate price for Printing Jobs to *Inventory* and ordering Jobs from *Inventory*. The Print Buyer pays for the printing when ordering to *Inventory*, so for this stage, the pricelist is created the same way as for regular templates. When ordering from *Inventory* the Print Provider may decide to charge some kind of base price and a flat price per copy to pay for the service.

Template Pricing

Print To Inventory

Pricing Model: Per Copy

Min	Max	Output Device	Press Sheet Size	Base Price	Price
1	500	FolderBalance	A0	0	{ \$ } per 100 Copies
500	infinite	PDF_spool	A0	0	{ \$ } per 100 Copies

Add Row Delete Last Row

Order From Inventory

Base Price: { \$ }

Price per Copy: { \$ }

Template Tax Rate: % Template Tax Name:

Note: When the Job Tax Rate is left empty, the system searches for a Tax Rate from the following settings and according to the following order: Job Template, Job Customer and System Parameters.

Save Cancel

Figure 132: Pricing Panel

The *Pricing* button accesses the *Template Pricing* dialog box, which displays a dropdown box with the following two options:

Not defined for this level

- **Printing to Inventory** – Signifies not to activate this *Pricing Model* but to scan the next *Pricing Model* in the hierarchy for activation (for an in-depth review of pricing, see *Generic Pricing Mechanism*, page 281).
- **Order From Inventory** – Enables the Print Provider to determine a *Base Price* that covers handling costs and a *Price per Copy*, which covers a part of the total *Inventory Template* price

Per Copy

- **Printing to Inventory** – Activates the *Pricing Model* and enables determining prices per copy. *Per Copy* accesses the *Template Pricing Per Copy* dialog box, for manually entering the parameters. *Per Copy* allows the Print Provider to set a fixed price for a Saved Jobs according to a varying range of copies. The Print Provider is able to determine quantity ranges and for each quantity range, the Print Provider can configure the suitable output device, press sheet size, base price and price per number of copies.
- **Ordering From Inventory** – Enables the Print Provider to determine a *Base Price* that covers handling costs and a *Price per Copy*, which covers a part of the total *Inventory Template* price

Template Pricing Panel

The *Template Pricing* panel enables entering additional Template quantity ranges. To enter an additional quantity range row, click on *Add Row*. To eliminate the last quantity range row, click on *Delete Last Row*.


Defining Template Tax Rate

In order to define *Job Tax Rate*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the *Pricing* button and then click on *Per Copy*; the *Template Pricing: Per Copy* dialog box appears.
- 2 Enter a *Template* tax rate into the field provided. The *Template* tax rate overrides all other tax rates. The new tax rate expires on the date that the Print Provider chooses.
- 3 To provide a name for the *Template Tax Rate*, enter the name into the *Template Tax Name* field.

Note: When leaving the *Tax* field empty, the system uses the tax rate defined in the *Template Library* window. When this tax rate does not exist, the system uses the tax rate defined in the *Management: Customers/General* window. When this tax rate does not exist, the system uses the default tax rate defined in *Settings: General/Pricing* window, while calculating the total Template price.

Inventory Information Dialog Box



Inventory Information

Customer Inventory: 100

Risk Inventory: 50

Total: 150

Inventory Location: Store Room

Min in Inventory: 50

OK Cancel

Figure 133: Inventory Information Dialog Box

Inventory Information dialog box enables the Print Provider to determine the following:

- **Customer Inventory** – The number of *Inventory Template* copies stored in the Print Provider inventory. This number is automatically updated every time the Print Buyer prints to *Inventory* or orders from *Inventory*.
- **Risk Inventory** – The number of *Inventory Template* copies that the Print Provider, upon personal initiative, adds to the *Inventory Template* inventory. This number is not available to the Print Buyer.
- **Total** – The generated total number of *Inventory Template* copies to be stored in the Print Provider inventory.
- **Inventory Location** – The physical location for inventory storage.
- **Min. in Inventory** – The minimum number of copies that can be found in inventory storage.

Note: When the minimum number of copies is exceeded, a notification can be sent to the Print Buyer by completing the appropriate settings in the *Settings/General/E-Mail* window.

Creating an Inventory Template

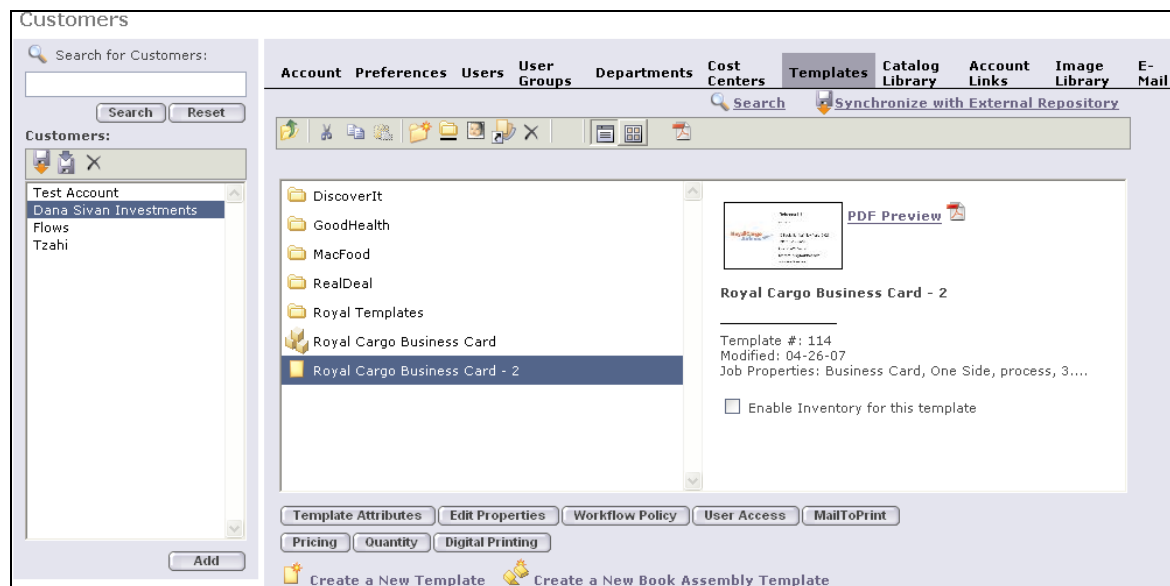


Figure 134: Inventory

Inventory Jobs are initiated from *Inventory* templates. In order to create an *Inventory* template, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on *Customers/Templates*; the *Customers Template Library* view appears.
- 2 Select the customer and then select the template that will be *Inventory-enabled*.
- 3 In the *Template Info* pane on the right of the view, scroll down until the *Enable Inventory for this template* checkbox appears.
- 4 Select the checkbox; the *Inventory Information* link appears (note that at this stage there are 0 copies in the inventory).

Note: Only *Static* and *Book Assembly* templates can be *Inventory-enabled*

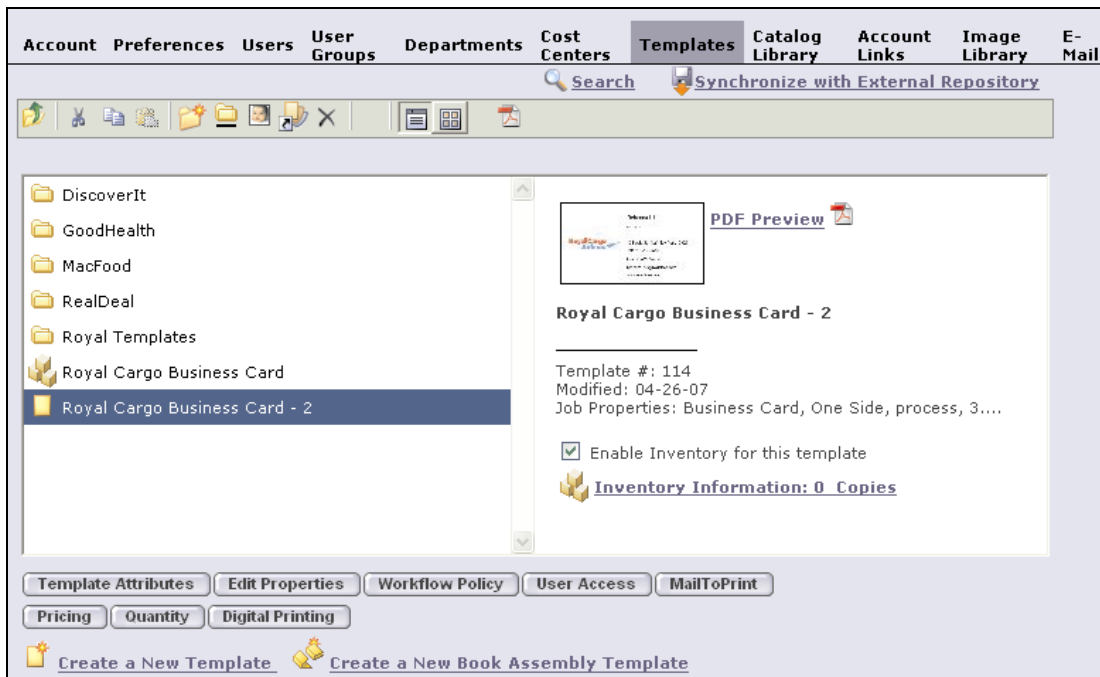


Figure 135: Inventory Information Link

- 5 Click on the *Inventory Information* link; the *Inventory Information* dialog box appears.

Note: At this stage, the Print Provider can facilitate inventory management by determining the location of the inventory. At a later stage, when the *Inventory Jobs* appear in the *Production Approval* queue, the Print Provider can access the *Inventory Information* dialog box by clicking on either the *Print to inventory* icon or the *Order from inventory* icon, in order to adjust *Inventory* amounts, according to the Print Provider's discretion.

Figure 136: Inventory Information

- 6 Complete the fields with the appropriate data.

- 7 Click on OK to save the settings and to close the dialog box; the target *Inventory* template now carries the *Inventory Template* icon.

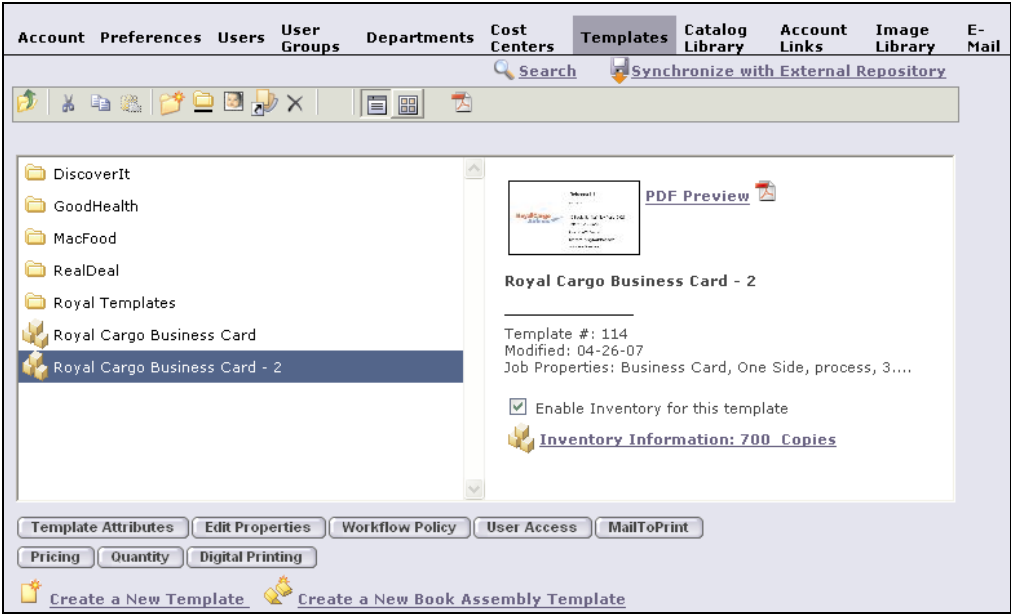




Figure 137: Inventory Template icon

- Note:* 1. When printing a Job to the Print Provider's inventory, the Job appears in the Print Provider's *Production Approval* queue and is identified by the *Job Printed to Inventory* icon: 
2. When ordering a Job from the Print Provider's inventory, the Job appears in the Print Provider's *Production Approval* queue and is identified by the *Job Print from Inventory* icon: 

Section IV: Branding

Branding consists of the following two views:

- Skins
- Customization

Skins

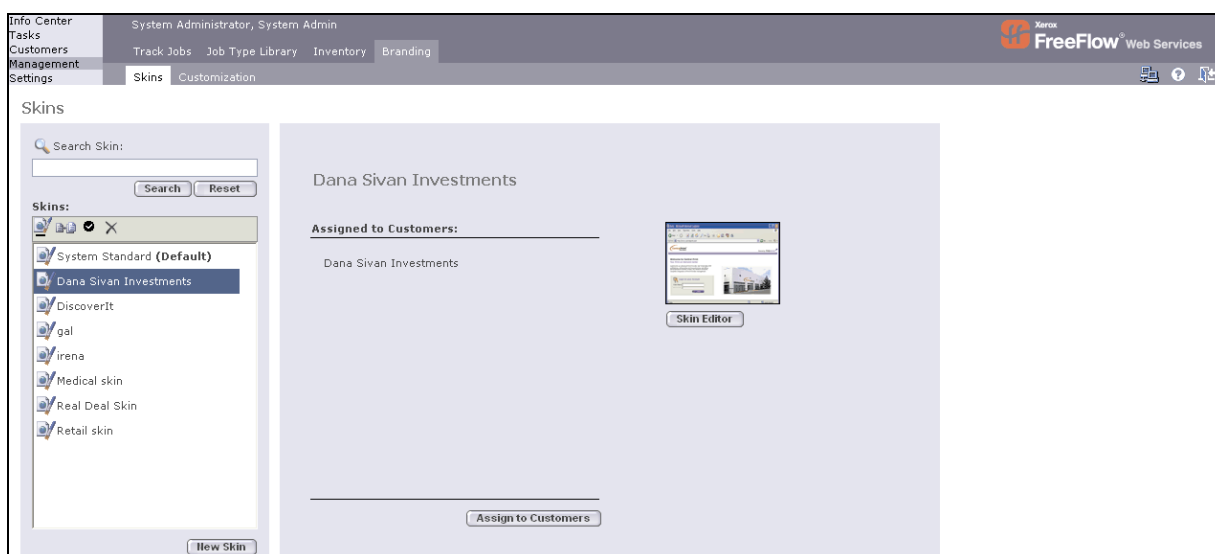


Figure 138: Branding

Skins, the branding and personalization portion of the application, has been designed to provide Print Providers with the ability to create branded applications for their Print Buyer customers, in order to enable their customers to maintain their own corporate identities while providing a personalized service.

Though *Skins* is an independent component that is activated through licensing, upon purchase, each Print Provider has the ability to create one skin.

For more information on *Skins*, see the *Site Customization User Guide*. To acquire complete *Skin* activation, see your local distributor.

Customization

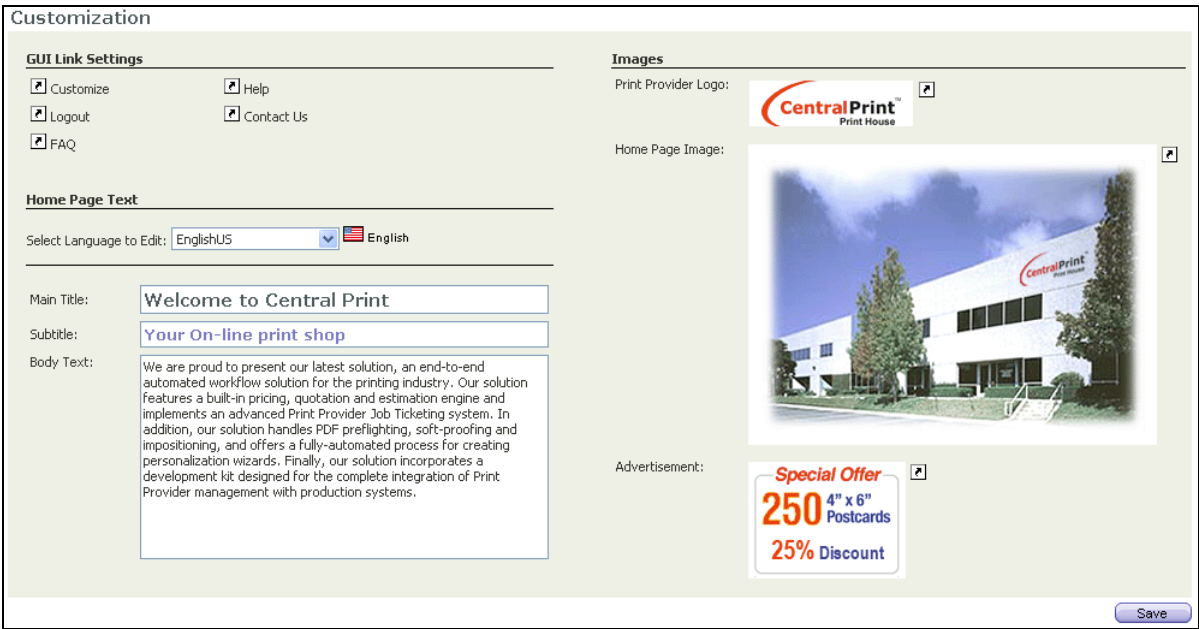


Figure 139: Customization

Customization is a template that allows the Print Provider to personalize the *Home Page*. With the *Customization* template, the Print Provider has direct access to the following major elements of the *Home Page*.

GUI Link Settings		Home Page Text		Images	
1	Customize	6	Select Language to Edit	10	Print Provider Logo
2	FAQ	7	Main Title	11	Home Page Image
3	Contact Us	8	Subtitle	12	Advertisement
4	Help	9	Body Text		
5	Logout				

Customize Link

Customize Link enables the Print Provider to create a customized button that accesses a customized window containing text and/or images, which in turn, is available to the Print Buyer. In the *Customize Link* window, the Print Provider user selects a text language and enters text dialog. The *Customize Link* also enables the user to select the *External 'Customize' Page* option, whereby the user can enable the Print Buyer to access an external web page.

To create a customized button and window, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on *Customize*; the *Customize Link* dialog box appears.

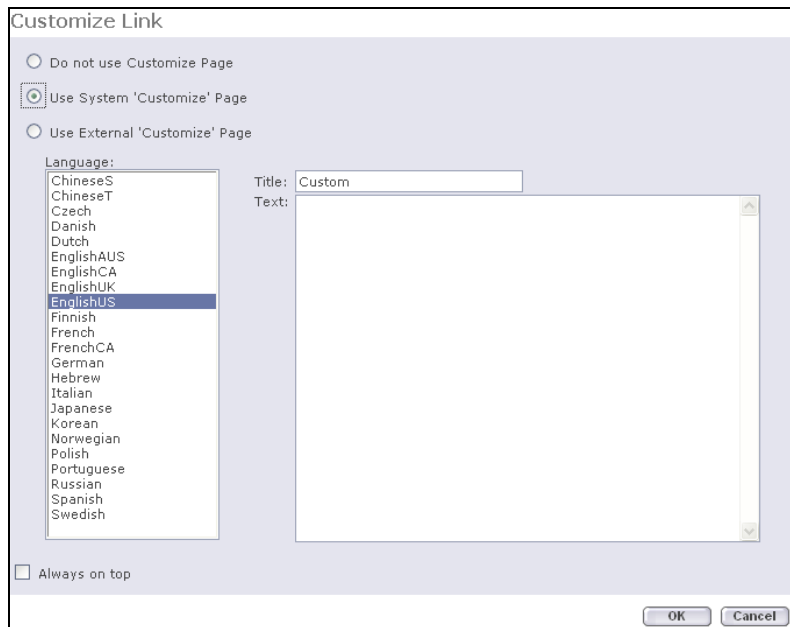


Figure 140: Customize Link

- 2 To customize a window, click on the *Use System 'Customize' Page* radio button; *Language* and *Text* are activated.
- 3 Select a language and enter the target message text into the *Text Message* field.
- 4 Enter the customized *Window* and *Button* name into the *Title* field.
- 5 To enable the Print Buyer to access an external web page, click on the *Use External Customize Page*; the *External Customize Page Title* and *URL* fields appear.
- 6 Enter the external, customized button name into the *Title* field.
- 7 Enter the correct *URL* address into the *URL* field.
- 8 Click on *Always on top* to maintain this dialog box on top of the *Home Page* window.
- 9 Click on *OK* to save the settings.

FAQ Button

The *FAQ* button accesses the *FreeFlow Web Services FAQ* (Frequently Asked Questions) page, which contains a collection of commonly asked questions about *Web Services*, together with the answers. *Web Services* provides the Print Buyer with the ability to access the *Web Services FAQ* page(s) or any other page(s) that the Print Provider determines and then present these pages either within the *Web Services Frame* (as a panel) or within an independent, floating window.

To personalize the *FAQ* button, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the *Prompt Arrow*, adjacent to the *FAQ* button; the *FAQ Page* dialog box appears.

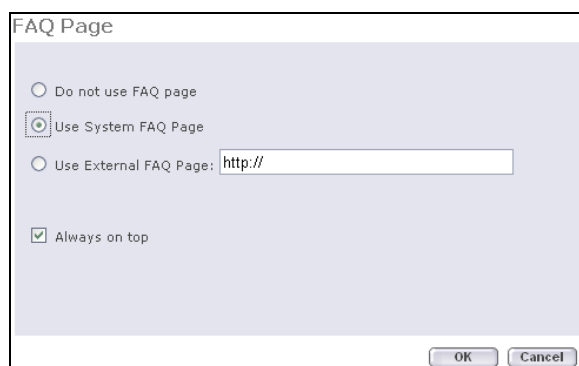


Figure 141: FAQ Page Dialog Box

- 2 Click on *Do not use FAQ Page* when a *FAQ* button is not needed.
- 3 Click on either the *Use System FAQ Page* radio button or the *Use External Page URL* radio button.
- 4 When selecting the *Use External Page URL* radio button, enter the target *URL* into the *Field* box.
- 5 Click on *Always on top* to maintain this dialog box on top of the *Home Page* window.
- 6 Click on *OK* to save the settings.

Note: Only *Web* pages that reside on the *Web Services* server can be placed inside the *Web Services Frame*.

Logout Button

Logout is a two-step procedure, whereby the *User* exits the *Web Services* system and then automatically returns to the *Web Services Login* window or the *User* exits the *Web Services* system and then enters a completely different location, as determined by the Print Provider.

To personalize the *Logout* button, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the *Prompt Arrow*, adjacent to the *Logout* button; the *External Home Page Links* dialog box appears.

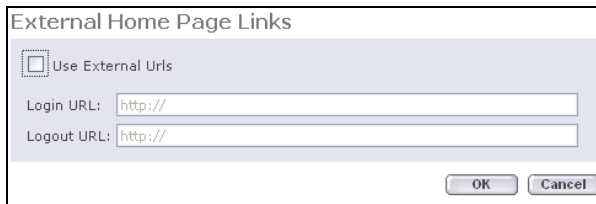


Figure 142: External Home Page Links Dialog Box

- 2 Checkmark the *Use External URL* checkbox, when the target file is external to the *Web Services* system.
- 3 Enter *Login* and/or *Logout URL*.
- 4 Click on *OK* to save the settings.

Note: *Login* applies to the *Login* button that appears in the *Session End* window.

Logout applies to Print Buyer *Logout* button only.

Contact Us Button

The *Contact Us* button accesses the *Web Services Contact Us* page, which contains information that will enable Print Buyers to contact Xerox, the producer of *Web Services*. *Web Services* provides the Print Producer with the ability to access the page or any other page that the Print Producer determines.

To personalize the *Contact Us* button, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the *Prompt Arrow*, adjacent to the *Contact Us* button; the *Contact Us Page* dialog box appears.

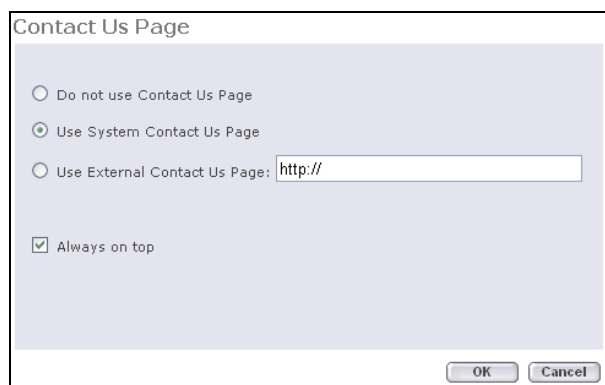


Figure 143: Contact Us Page Dialog Box

- 2 Click on *Do not use Contact Us Page* when a *Contact Us* button is not needed.
- 3 Click on either the *Use System Contact Us Page* radio button or the *Use External Page URL* radio button.
- 4 When selecting the *Use External Page URL* radio button, enter the target *URL* into the *Field* box.
- 5 Click on *Always on top* to maintain this dialog box on top of the *Home Page* window.
- 6 Click on *OK* to save the settings.

Note: Only web pages that reside on the *Web Services* server can be placed inside the *Web Services Frame*.

Help Button

To personalize the *Help* button, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the *Prompt Arrow*, adjacent to the *Help* button; the *Help* dialog box appears.

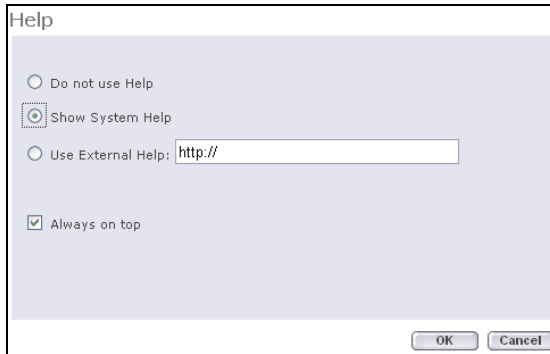


Figure 144: Help Dialog Box

- 2 Click on the appropriate radio button.
- 3 When choosing *Use external Help*, enter the target *URL* into the *Field* box.
- 4 Click on *Always on top* to maintain this dialog box on top of the *Home Page* window.
- 5 Click on *OK* to save the settings.

Note: Only web pages that reside on the *Web Services* server can be placed inside the *Web Services Frame*.

Supplementary Options

Supplementary options include entering a *URL* that is linked to the selected image and adding a prompt that appears as a comment when the customer places the cursor on the image.

Entering the URL and Adding a Prompt

In order to enter the *URL* and add a prompt, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the target image *Prompt Arrow*; the *Prompt and URL* dialog box appears.

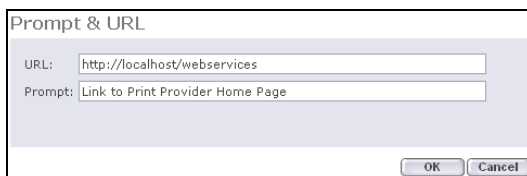


Figure 145: URL/Prompt Dialog Box

- 2 Enter the *URL* to be linked to this image.
- 3 Add a *Prompt*; the *Prompt* appears as a comment when the customer places the cursor on the image.
- 4 Click on *OK* in order to save the settings.

Select Language to Edit


Home Page Text	
Select Language to Edit:	EnglishUS  English
Main Title:	Welcome to Central Print
Subtitle:	Your Online Print Shop
Body Text:	We are proud to present our latest solution, an end-to-end automated workflow solution for the printing industry. Our solution features a built-in pricing, quotation and estimation engine and implements an advanced Print Provider Job Ticketing system. In addition, our solution handles PDF preflighting, soft-proofing and impositioning, and offers a fully-automated process for creating personalization wizards. Finally, our solution incorporates a development kit designed for the complete integration of Print Provider management with production systems.

Figure 146: Home Page Image Folder

Select Language to Edit opens a dropdown menu displaying a list of default languages supported by the system.

Note: The *Language* list can be modified; however, modification cannot be carried out locally. Any request for a new language to the list must be made through the local distributor.

The *Text* boxes; *Main Title*, *Subtitle* and *Body Text* are edited according to the selected language.

Personalizing Images

There are three *Image* sites in the *Customization* template: *Print Provider Logo*, *Home Page Image*, and *Advertisement*. The Print Provider can personalize the *Print Provider Home Page* by entering images into these sites from the *Image Folder*.

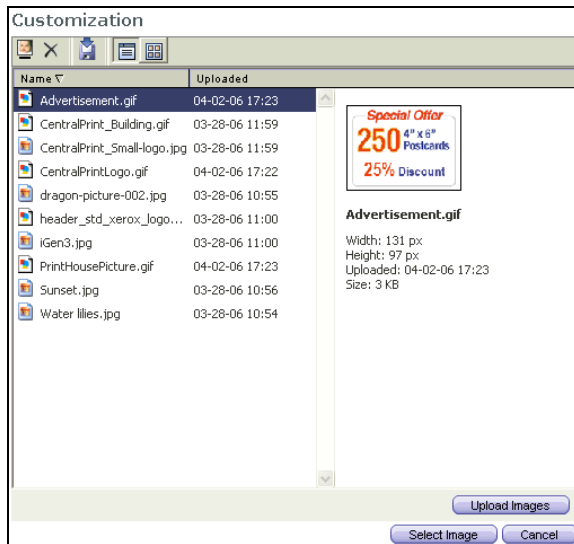


Figure 147: Home Page Image Folder

In order to personalize an *Image* site, click on an *Image* site; the *Image Folder* appears.

Web Services provides two means in which to upload images to the *Home Page Images* folder (see *Section X: Image Library Panel*).

Uploading Files

- 1 To upload a single file, click on the *Upload a File* radio button and carry out the instructions.
- 2 To upload multiple files, it is recommended to use the *FTP Multi-File Upload*; where available, click on the appropriate radio button and carry out the instructions.

Required Image Parameters

The following table lists and describes the required image parameters:

Image	Parameters
Print Provider Logo	140x45 pix, white background recommended.
Home Page Image	350x250 pix, white background recommended.
Advertisement	131x97 pix, white background recommended. This image is used only in Version 2 GUI.

Personalizing Texts

There are three *Text* sites that enable personalizing the *Home Page: Title, Subtitle and General Information*. Text font, size and color cannot be altered.

In order to personalize a text, carry out the following step:

- Click on the text box and enter the personalized text.

Template Texts: Required Text Attributes

Below are the required attributes for the *Home Page* text:

- General Information lines: 14-15
- Words in one line: 6-9

Chapter Six: Settings

Overview

The screenshot displays the 'System Properties' window in the 'Settings' section of the FreeFlow Web Services System Administrator. The window is divided into several panels:

- Server Address:** DNS Name (i.e. print.press-sense.com): 192.168.0.177
- Connections:** Maximum Users: Unlimited; Use Secure Connection (Requires Server SSL Certificate) [unchecked]
- File Upload:** Allow FTP Upload [checked]; FTP Port: 21; Requires Authentication [unchecked]; User Name: ; Password:
- Database Login:** Database Type: MS SQL Server; User Name: sa; Password:
- Calendar Options:** Work Start Time: 09:00; Work End Time: 17:00; Weekend Days: Sun [checked], Mon [unchecked], Tue [unchecked], Wed [unchecked], Thu [unchecked], Fri [unchecked], Sat [checked]
- Date and Time Format:** Date: Format: MM-dd-yy; Separator: -; Sample: 04-26-07; Time: Format: HH:mm; Separator: :; Sample: 16:50
- PDF Preview:** Footer File: None; Enable Watermark [unchecked]; Watermark Text: ; Font: Agency FB; Regular
- Remote Support:** Allow Remote Support [checked]; Remote IP: 192.168.0.*; Password:

At the bottom right, there are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Figure 148: General Window

In *Settings*, the Print Provider enters all of the Print Provider parameters. *Settings* has been divided into seven windows, each of which accesses a further set of sub-panels.

Settings is composed of the following windows:

- **General** Enables entering general Print Provider parameters
- **Site** Enables entering parameters that will be made available to all Print Provider customers
- **Output Devices** Allows the Print Provider to define the parameters of all of the output devices
- **Stock (Paper)** Enables entering the parameters of the available stock
- **Finishing** Enables the Print Provider to configure the pricing information for all supported finishing types
- **Shipping** Enables the Print Provider to define the available shipping carriers and methods
- **Integrations** Enables setting up the system's integrations with other peripheral systems

Section I: General

Settings General is composed of the following windows:

- **System** – Used for setting such default system parameters as *Server Name*, the number of simultaneous *Users*, Print Provider work hours etc.
- **Pricing** – Allows the Print Provider to enter additional price settings that will be used for Job
- **E-Mail** – Enables the Print Provider to enter the Print Provider *e-Mail* account parameters as well as the Print Provider contacts
- **Production** – Allows the Print Provider to determine the *PDF Upload*, *Prepress* and *Color Support* default parameters
- **Paper Sizes** – Allows defining parent sheets for stock, which will be used in printing Print Buyer Jobs. These parameters appear as the *Job Flat Page* sizes in the *Job Subtypes* pane
- **Languages** – Allows determining the interface language options and the default interface language
- **Fonts** – Allows determining font-embedding format and for displaying the available fonts in the *FreeFlow Web Services* system
- **Privileges** – Enables determining precisely which privileges are enabled for each of the Print Buyer user-types
- **Job Expiration** – Enables determining the amount of time *Pre-order* and *Shipped* Jobs can reside in the respective queues before being automatically deleted
- **Customize Fields** – Enables adding or removing user fields in the *Customers/Users* window

System Properties Window

The *System Properties* window is divided into the following panels:

- **Web Services Server Address** – The *DNS* name (*URL*) of the *Web Services* Print Provider server
- **Connections** – Enables determining the maximum number of simultaneous *Users* and provides the Print Provider with the ability to require a secure connection

Note: Activating *Secure Connection* restricts the connection to the *Web Services Server* via the secure *HTTPS* protocol.

- **File Upload** – For enabling *FTP* uploads (which requires a username and password)
- **Database Login** – Provides the Print Provider with two database-type options for saving data-based information
- **Calendar Options** – Allows the Print Provider to define the working days and hours of the Print Provider. This will be used by the system for displaying the correct calendar options to the Print Buyers during ordering and for calculating urgency surcharges.
- **Date and Time Format** – Used for determining the format for displaying the date and time
- **PDF Preview** – Enables the Print Provider to include a footer in the Print Buyer *PDF* preview. *PDF Preview* also enables the Print Provider to impose a watermark on the *PDF* preview
- **PDF Preview Footer** – Enables the Print Provider to enter an image into a footer, located in the *PDF Preview*.
- **Remote Support** – Enables *Support* department access of various system options in the Print Provider *Web Services* server, in order to solve specific problems in the *Web Services* system.

Connections

In the *Connections* panel, the Print Provider determines the maximum number of *Users* that can simultaneously work with the *Web Services* system.

Note: When using *MS-Access* as the *Web Services DB*, according to *Microsoft* publication, the *DB* can be locked when more than 150 *Users* attempt to access the same event in the *DB* at the same time. Nevertheless, the recommended number should be “Unlimited”. However, the Printer Provider can limit the number when faced with locking issues. This problem is not expected when using the *SQL* server as a *DB*.

In the *Connections* panel, the Print Provider can create secure connection to the Print Buyer. In order to create this secure connection, carry out the following step:

- Select the *Use Secure Connection* checkbox

Using the Secure Connection

The Print Provider is advised to activate the *SSL (Secure Sockets Layer)* security feature on the *Web Services* server in order to verify the integrity of the incoming content, verify the identity of the Print Buyers and to encrypt network transmissions.

To set up an *SSL* on the *Web Services* server, the Print Provider must first acquire and install a valid server certificate to establish *SSL* communications. Such certificates can be purchased online from various reliable companies.

Note: After receiving a server certificate file, use the accompanying wizard to install the server certificate file. The installation process attaches or binds the certificate to the Web site.

Only one server certificate can be attached to a Web site.

Ensure that the Web site *IP* address is assigned to *Port 443*, the default port for secure communications.

Where a *Firewall* is in place on the local network, ensure that *Port 443* is open for inbound and outbound connections in the *Firewall*.

File Upload

In *File Upload*, the Print Provider can provide the Print Buyer with the ability to upload files through an *FTP* site. When this ability has been provided, the Print Provider can further determine if the Print Buyer can receive *Anonymous Access* privileges. If *Anonymous Access* has been denied, the Print Provider can determine the Print Buyer's *Username* and *Password*.

In addition, *File Upload* allows the Print Provide to identify the *FTP Port* through which the files can be uploaded.

Database Login

Web Services provides the following two database types:

- MS Access
- MS SQL Server

To select a database, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the *Database Type* dropdown box.
- 2 Click on one of the options.

Note: When changing the *Database Type* from *MS Access* to *MS SQL Server*, the database must first be transferred to the *MS SQL Server*. The *MS SQL Server* must then be configured (see the *Installation, Setup and Training Guide, Appendix B; Migrating Tutorial From Access to SQL 2000* and *Appendix C; Backing Up an Web Services Database on the MS SQL Server 2000*).

The *MS Access* option does not require a *User Name* and a *Password*.

When selecting *MS SQL Server*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Enter a *User name*.
- 2 Enter a *Password*.

Calendar Options

Calendar Options enables the Print Provider to inform the Print Buyers of the Print Provider working hours.

Date and Time Format

Date and Time Format allows the Print Provider to determine the precise format for printing a date and time. The format and separator dropdown boxes contain all of the recognized options for printing dates and times.

Remote Support

Remote Support is a feature that enables *Support* department access of various system options in the Print Provider *Web Services* server, in order to solve specific problems in the *Web Services* system. This access is provided through the use of a browser.

Note: Due to certain firewall restrictions, this option may not always be available.

Footer File

The *PDF Preview* enables the Print Provider to enter an image into a footer, located in the *PDF Preview*. Such images, for example, can be *Signature* spaces so that when the *Preview* is printed out, the *PDF* can serve as a means for physically recording Job approval.

Entering Images into the PDF Preview Footer

To enter images into the *PDF Preview Footer*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the *Footer File* dropdown box; a list of *Footer* files from the *Upload Images: Footer* library appears.
- 2 Click on a target *Footer* file.

Adding Footer Images to the Dropdown Menu

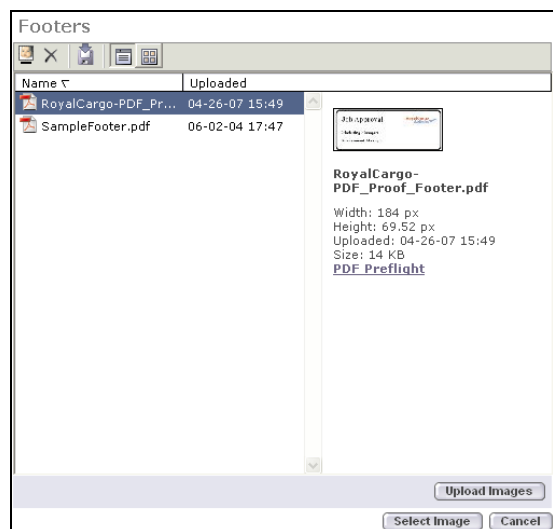


Figure 149: Upload Images: Footer

Entering *Footer* Images into the Footer File Dropdown Menu

- 1 To upload a single file, click on the *Upload a File* radio button and carry out the instructions.
- 2 To upload multiple files, it is recommended to use the *FTP Multi-File Upload*; where available, click on the appropriate radio button and carry out the instructions.

Watermark

To impose a watermark on *PDF*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Select the *Enable Watermark* checkbox.
- 2 Enter the watermark text into the *Watermark Text* field box.
- 3 In the *Font* dropdown box, select an appropriate font.
- 4 Where a selection is available, choose a font style.
- 5 Click on *OK* to save the settings.

Pricing Window

The screenshot shows the 'Pricing' window in the FreeFlow Web Services interface. The window has a title bar with 'System Administrator, System Admin' and the FreeFlow logo. The left sidebar shows 'Info Center', 'Tasks', 'Customers Management', and 'Settings'. The 'Settings' section is expanded, showing 'System', 'Pricing', 'E-Mail', 'Production', 'Paper Sizes', 'Languages', 'Fonts', 'Privileges', 'Job Expiration', and 'Customize Fields'. The 'Pricing' tab is active. The main content area displays the 'Pricing' form with the following fields:

- System Pricing Model:** Based on production value (dropdown)
- Tax:** 14% (text input)
- Tax Name:** VAT (text input)
- External Tax Definition:** ☐ (checkbox)
- Currency Name:** \$ United States Dollars (dropdown)
- Round currency to the closest:** Ignore Cents (dropdown)
- Urgent Print Time:** Up to: 0 days 4 hours (spinners)
- Surcharge for Urgent Printing:** 50% (text input)
- Express Print Time:** Up to: 1 day 0 hours (spinners)
- Surcharge for Express Printing:** 20% (text input)
- Regular Print Time:** Up to: 2 days 0 hours (spinners)

At the bottom of the window are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Figure 150: General Pricing Window

Settings enables basing the pricing on one of two pricing models. The following models are selected from the *System Pricing Model* dropdown box:

- **Not Available** – Activates the *Pricing Model* but does not allow a price to be computed. *Not Available* results in the Print Buyer receiving a *Price N/A* (not available) notice
- **Based on production value** – Activates the *Pricing Model* and bases the price on such production parameters as labor, price-per-click, raw materials (paper) and finishing

Note: For an in-depth review of pricing, see *Generic Pricing Mechanism*, page 281.

Pricing

The *Pricing* window is composed of the following *Price-setting* elements:

- **Tax** – Tax Percentage
- **Tax Name** – The name of the specific tax
- **Currency Name** – The currency name that the Print Buyer sees in the *Shopping Cart* window next to the *Get Price* button.
- **Round currency to the closest** – The Print Provider is able to round out the price to the closest, hundred, ten, cent etc.
Note: Web Services provides the following options:
 - Do not round, when it is not necessary to round the currency
 - Ignore Cents, when it is expedient to ignore the single currency unit
 - 10, for rounding the currency to the closest ten units
 - 100, for rounding the currency to the closest hundred units
- **Urgent Print Time** – *Urgent* print time, counted from the current date and time (see Figure 152)
- **Surcharge for Urgent Print Time** – Surcharge, (as a percentage) levied when selecting one of the *Urgent Print Time* days. The *Urgent Print Time* surcharge is reflected as an *Urgency Surcharge* in the *Subtotal* field of the *Shopping Cart*. When the surcharge is larger than one, the *Subtotal* Job price is the Job price multiplied by the surcharge percent. When the surcharge is '0', the *Subtotal* Job price is the same as the Job price

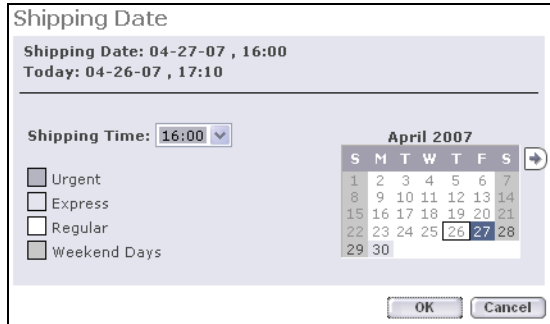


Figure 151: Urgency Surcharge

- **Express Print Time** – Express print time, counted from the current date and time (see: Figure 152).
- **Surcharge for Express Print Time** – Surcharge, (as a percentage) levied when selecting one of the *Express Print Time* days. The *Express Print Time* surcharge is reflected as an *Urgency Surcharge* in the *Subtotal* field of the *Shopping Cart*. When the surcharge is larger than one, the *Subtotal* Job price is the Job price multiplied by the surcharge. When the surcharge is '0', the *Subtotal* Job price is the same as the Job price (see: *Figure 151: Urgency Surcharge*).

- **Regular Print Time** – The print time calculated from the current date and time (see: Figure 152).

Note: The *Web Services* system does not convert currencies; ensure that the currency in the box reflects the *Price List* currency (i.e. when creating the price list in DM, type in 'DM')



Shipping Date

Shipping Date: 04-27-07, 16:00
Today: 04-26-07, 17:10

Shipping Time: 16:00 ▼

☐ Urgent
☐ Express
☐ Regular
☐ Weekend Days

April 2007						
S	M	T	W	T	F	S
1	2	3	4	5	6	7
8	9	10	11	12	13	14
15	16	17	18	19	20	21
22	23	24	25	26	27	28
29	30					

OK Cancel

Figure 152: The Delivery Calendar Dialog Box in the Customer Interface

Note: The highlighted date in the *Delivery Calendar* indicates the request delivery date defined by the Print Buyer in the Print Buyer interface.

E-Mail Window

System e-Mail

E-Mail Account

SMTP Server:

☒ My Server requires authentication:

Account Name:

Password:

E-Mail Address for Testing:

Send Test e-Mail

Send e-Mail

Event		Sender	Recipients
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Price Failure	Contacts:	Print Provider	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Job Arrived at the Production Queue	Contacts:	Print Provider	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Order Confirmation	Contacts:	Print Provider	Order Creator
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Job Price Changed	Contacts:	Print Provider	Order Creator
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Job Shipped	Contacts:	Print Provider	Order Creator
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Inventory Below Minimum Level	Contacts:	Print Provider	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Preorder Job Expiration	Contacts:	Print Provider	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Shipped Job Expiration	Contacts:	Print Provider	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Job Arrived at the PB Approval Queue	Contacts:	Print Provider	

OK Cancel

Figure 153: System e-Mail

The *System e-Mail* window is divided into the following panes:

- **E-Mail Account** – Contains information boxes for entering such data as the Print Provider’s *SMTP* and *e-Mail* address
- **Send e-Mail** – *E-Mail* notices that are sent out to various contacts

E-Mail Account

The *E-Mail Account* panel contains the following four information boxes and a checkbox, which must be completed by the Print Provider:

- **SMTP Server** – Carries the Print Provider *SMTP* server address (*Simple Mail Transport Protocol* is a protocol used for transferring *e-Mail* on the *Internet*)
- **My Server requires authentication** – For mail servers that require this option in order to send *e-Mails*.

Note: When the *Authentication* checkbox has been checkmarked, the *Account Name* and associated *Password* must be entered.

- **Account Name** – *SMTP* server account name, that is necessary for authentication
- **Password** – *SMTP* server password that is necessary for authentication
- **E-Mail Address for Testing** – Carries the *e-Mail* address of the online notification recipient (this recipient, either a Print Provider or an Operator, can receive a test *e-Mail* message without having to produce a Job)

Send e-Mail

The *Send e-Mail* panel contains the following checkboxes and links, which enable sending *e-Mail* messages that deal with specific issues:

- **Price Failure** – Enables informing a contact that a *Price Failure* has occurred (the Print Buyer receives a notification that the *Price* is **N/A** – not available)
- **Job Arrived to Production Queue** – Enables informing a contact that a new Job has arrived at the Print Provider *Production* queue
- **Order Confirmation** – Enables informing a Print Buyer contact of an order confirmation
- **Job Price Was Changed** – When the Print Provider carries out a manual pricing adjustment in the *Production* window, the Print Buyer contact will be automatically informed of the change
- **Job Shipped** – Enables informing a Print Buyer contact that a Job has been shipped
- **Inventory Below Minimum Level** – Enables informing a Print Buyer contact that the number of copies of a specific inventoried Job is below the minimum stock level
- **Preorder Job Expiration** – Enables informing a Print Buyer contact that a Job residing in the *Preorder* Job queue has exceeded the time allowed to remain in the queue
- **Shipped Job Expiration** – Enables informing a Print Buyer contact that a Job residing in the *Shipped* Job queue has exceeded the time allowed to remain in the queue
- **Job Arrived at the PB Approval Queue** Enables informing the Print Provider and the Print Buyer contacts that the Job now resides in the Print Buyer's *Approval* queue.
- **Contacts** – *Contacts* enables directing the *e-Mail* notification from a specific source in the Print Provider organization to one or more sources in the Print Buyer organization. Clicking on *Contacts* accesses the *Event Contacts* dialog box.

Event Contacts

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Order Confirmation". It has two main sections: "Sender:" and "Recipients:". The "Sender:" section has a table with columns "Name", "Privilege Level", and "E-Mail". The first row shows "T" as the name, "(Print Provider)" as the privilege level, and "177vm@press-sense.com" as the email. Below the table are two radio buttons: "User that ordered the Job" (selected) and "Other e-Mail:" followed by a text input field. The "Recipients:" section has a table with the same columns. Below the table are three checkboxes: "User that ordered the Job" (checked), "User that created the Job", and "Shipping Address e-Mail". Below these is another "Other e-Mail:" text input field. At the bottom right are "OK" and "Cancel" buttons.

Name	Privilege Level	E-Mail
T	(Print Provider)	177vm@press-sense.com

☒ User that ordered the Job
☐ Other e-Mail:

Name	Privilege Level	E-Mail
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> User that ordered the Job		
<input type="checkbox"/> User that created the Job		
<input type="checkbox"/> Shipping Address e-Mail		

Other e-Mail:

OK Cancel

Figure 154: Event Contacts

The *Event Contact* dialog box is composed of the following elements:

From: Panel

- **Name** – The sender's *e-Mail* address, which is either the Print Provider's contact person, the Print Provider user that produced the Job or any other address in the Print Provider organization.
- **Privilege Level** – The *Privilege* level of sender.
- **E-Mail** – The sender's *e-Mail* address.

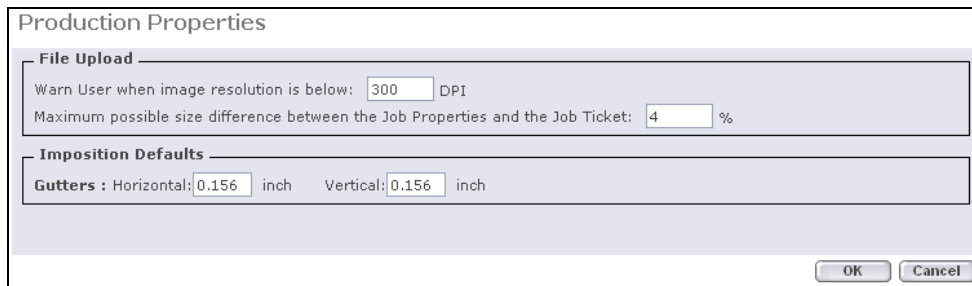
Send To: Panel

- **Name** – The recipient *e-Mail* address. Recipients of *e-Mail* notification are set in the *e-Mail* field found in the *Customers/Account/General* window. See *General*, page 58.
- **Privilege Level** – The *Privilege* level of recipient.
- **E-Mail** – The recipient's *e-Mail* address.

To set an *e-Mail* address for a specific event, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Checkmark the appropriate *Event* checkbox and then click on *Contacts*; the *Order Confirmation* dialog box appears.
- 2 In the *From:* panel, click on a target radio button or click on the *Other e-Mail* radio button and enter a target *e-Mail* address.
- 3 In the *Send To:* panel, checkmark the target recipients and/or enter a target *e-Mail* address.
- 4 Click on *OK* to confirm the settings.

Production Window



The screenshot shows a window titled "Production Properties". It contains two main panels. The first panel, "File Upload", has two input fields: "Warn User when image resolution is below: 300 DPI" and "Maximum possible size difference between the Job Properties and the Job Ticket: 4 %". The second panel, "Imposition Defaults", has two input fields: "Gutters : Horizontal: 0.156 inch" and "Vertical: 0.156 inch". At the bottom right of the window are "OK" and "Cancel" buttons.

Figure 155: Production Properties Window

In the *Production Properties* window, the Print Provider can set the preflight warning parameters. The Print Provider can also view and modify the default gutters parameters that are reflected in the imposition scheme and in the Print Buyer's *Web Services Crop Box Selective Upload Feature* (see: *Selective Upload* in the *Print Buyer Guide*).

The *Production Properties* window is composed of the following panels:

- File Upload
- Imposition Defaults

File Upload

The *File Upload* panel contains the following two field boxes:

- Warn *User* when image resolution is below:
- Maximum possible size difference between the *PDF* and the Job's properties

The default image resolution reflects the minimum image resolution that the Print Buyer is required to use when uploading a file to the system. When an uploaded *file* contains images with a resolution lower than the number set in the field box, the Print Buyer receives a warning message.

Maximum possible size difference is a size difference percentage that the Print Provider determines can still be accepted without generating a *Mismatch* warning. A Job page size difference greater than the number set in the field boxes will result in a *Mismatch* warning and must be fixed either by the Print Buyer or the Print Provider.

Imposition Defaults

Gutter dimensions automatically appear in the imposition scheme (see *Imposition Link*, page 32).

Modifying Gutters

In order to modify *Gutters*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Enter the different dimensions into the required field(s).
- 2 Click on *OK* to save the new default settings.

Canceling Gutters

In order to cancel *Bleeds* and/or *Gutters*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Enter '0' into the required field(s).
- 2 Click on *OK* to save the new default settings.

Paper Sizes Window

Size Name	Width	Height
A0	33.1102	46.811
A1	23.3858	33.1102
A2	16.5354	23.3858
A3	11.6929	16.5354
A4	8.2677	11.6929
A5	5.8268	8.2677
A6	4.1339	5.8268
SRA0	35.4331	50.3937
SRA1	25.1969	35.4331
SRA2	17.7165	25.1969
SRA3	12.5984	17.7165

Custom Paper Size

Name:

Width: Inches

Height: Inches

Figure 156: Paper Size List

The *Paper Sizes* window is divided into two panels. Below is a description of the *Paper Sizes* window elements.

- **Paper Size List Panel** – Contains information about the size name, width and height
- **Custom Paper Size Panel** – Designed for modifying existing paper sizes and for creating custom sizes

Paper Size List Panel

In the *Paper Size List* panel, the Print Provider creates custom sizes or modifies existing sizes.

The *Paper Size List* is also used for the following purposes:

- To select the *Press Sheet* sizes in the *Output Devices* window (where the Print Provider has to define *Press Sheet* sizes for each output device to be used).
- To select the list of *Paper Sizes* that appears in the *Management: Job Ticket Library/Flat Page Size* panel (where the Print Provider defines a *Flat* page size for a particular *Job Subtype*).
- To select the *Parent Sheet Sizes* (that can be chosen in the *Settings: Stock Library* panel in order to price paper stock).

Custom Paper Size Panel

In the *Custom Paper Size* panel, the Print Provider defines *Custom* paper sizes (name, width and height) and modifies the default paper sizes provided by the system. Paper size width and height are measured either in mm and inches, according to the language selection.

The *Custom Paper Size* panel is divided into the following information boxes and buttons:

- **Name** – Displays the paper size name of the selected size and enables entering a custom name
- **Width** – Displays the paper size width of the selected size and enables entering a custom width
- **Height** – Displays the paper size height of the selected size and enables entering a custom height
- **New Size Button** – Clears the boxes
- **Delete Button** – Deletes a selected size
- **OK Button** – Updates and saves the *Paper Size* list
- **Cancel Button** – Cancels all new parameters

Modifying Paper Size

In order to modify paper size, carry out the following steps:

- 1 In the *Paper Size List* panel, select the target paper size; the selected size becomes highlighted and the size name, width and height appear in the boxes.
- 2 Enter new definitions into the required boxes.
- 3 Click on *Update*.

Defining a Custom Size

In order to define a custom size, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the *New Size* button.
- 2 Enter a new paper size name into the *Name* box.
- 3 Enter the required width and height of the new size into the *Width* and *Height* boxes.
- 4 Click on *Update*.

Deleting Paper Size

In order to delete a *Paper Size*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Select a target *Paper Size*.
- 2 Click on *Delete*; a *Confirmation* dialog box opens.
- 3 In the dialog box, click *YES* or *NO*.

Caution: Do not delete *Paper Sizes* as they could be also be in use in *Output Devices*, *Stock Library* definitions and the *Job Ticket Library*.

Languages Window

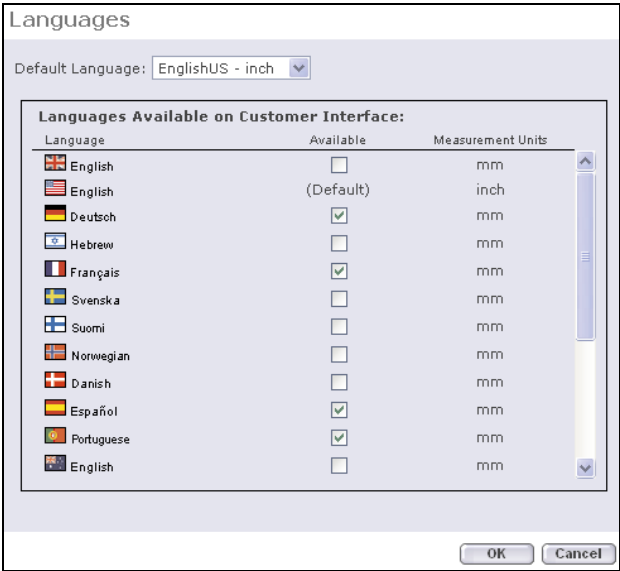


Figure 157: Interface Language Window

The *Interface Language* pane contains a *Default Language* dropdown menu where the Print Provider can select a default language. The *Interface Language* window also contains a list of all of the languages supported by *Web Services*. Each language is coupled with a predetermined *Measurement* unit. All Print Buyers that log into the system are bound by the Print Provider’s selection.

Note: The Print Buyer can also change the interface language by clicking on the flag icons located in the *Web Services Home Page*.

Determining the Interface Language

To determine the *Interface* language, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Select one or more checkboxes adjacent to the language name and its associated flag.
- 2 Click on *OK*.

Fonts Window

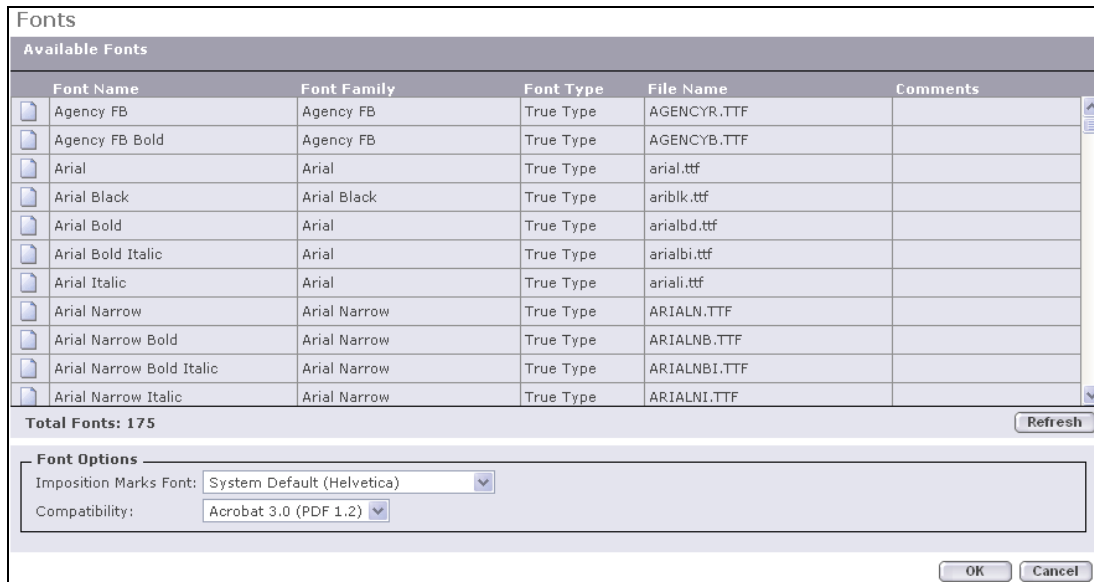


Figure 158: Fonts

The *Fonts* window contains the following elements:

- **Available Fonts Pane** – List of all of the fonts supported by *Web Services*
- **Refresh Button** – Scans the operating system fonts and updates the *Web Services* font list
- **Imposition Marks Font Dropdown Box** – The list of font formats that are suitable for use with the *Imposition Marks*
- **Compatibility Dropdown Box** – In cases of *RIP* incompatibility with the selected fonts, *Web Services* provides the ability to create *PDF*'s that are compatible to *PDF 1.1 of Acrobat 2.0* or *PDF 1.2 of Acrobat 3.0* (or any more recent version)
- **Save Settings Buttons** – *OK* or *Cancel* the fonts

Available Fonts

The *Available Fonts* panel contains the following categories:

- **Font Name** – List of font names that are recognized by the *Web Services* system
- **Font Family** – The *Family* name that is associated with the *Font* name
- **Font Type** – The *Font* type that is associated with the *Font* name

Entering New Fonts Into the Web Services System

In order to enter new fonts, from *Windows 2000* into the *Web Services* system, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on *C:\WINNT\Fonts*; the *Windows 2000 Library* appears.
- 2 Copy and paste the new Font into the *Windows 2000 Library*.

Note: The system supports both *True Type* and *Type 1* fonts.

Compatibility

When the system's *PDF*'s are created, the font format embedded in the *PDF* must be selected according to Print Provider's needs.

Note: When *Type 1* is chosen and the Job has a font that does not support the *Type 1* format, the system will embed the *True Type* font instead.

Privileges

Privileges	Admin	Supervisor	Designer	Super User	User	Guest	Custom
User Administration	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Manage Template Library	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
View Jobs of other Users (from the same Customer)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Place an Order / Get Quote	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Upload Job Content	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Edit Job Properties	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Use Form Editor	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Use Variable Data	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Use Variable Data Archive	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Send MailToPrint	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Download Plug-ins	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
View Address Book	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Edit Contact Details (on My Account tab)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Use Get Quote Wizard	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Figure 159: Privileges Window

Privileges displays a list of privilege options that can be enabled for each user-type. *Privileges* also provides a *Custom* user, which allows the Print Provider to create a new user-type.

The available privileges are as follows:

- User Administration
- Manage Template Library
- View Jobs of other Users (from the same Customer)
- Place an Order / Get Quote
- Upload Job Content
- Edit Job Properties
- Use Form Editor
- Use Variable Data
- Use Variable Data Archive
- Send MailToPrint
- Download Plug-ins
- Edit Contact Details (in the My Account window)
- View Address Book
- Use Get Quote Wizard

Command Buttons

Privileges provides the following command buttons:

- **Reset Defaults** Resets any changes made, including changes that were saved by clicking on the *OK* button
- **OK** Saves the settings
- **Cancel** Resets any changes made unless the changes were saved by clicking on the *OK* button

Note: 1. All *Administrator* checkboxes are checkmarked and disabled as the *Administrator* must be enabled with all of the privileges.

Job Expiration

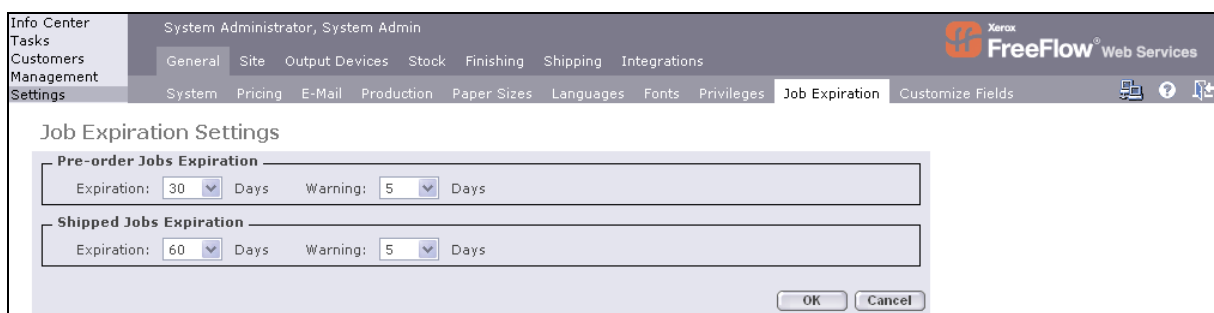
The screenshot shows the 'Job Expiration Settings' dialog box within the 'FreeFlow Web Services' application. The interface has a dark grey header with the 'Xerox FreeFlow Web Services' logo on the right. Below the header is a navigation bar with tabs: 'General', 'Site', 'Output Devices', 'Stock', 'Finishing', 'Shipping', 'Integrations', 'System', 'Pricing', 'E-Mail', 'Production', 'Paper Sizes', 'Languages', 'Fonts', 'Privileges', 'Job Expiration' (which is selected), and 'Customize Fields'. The 'Job Expiration' tab is active, displaying two sections: 'Pre-order Jobs Expiration' and 'Shipped Jobs Expiration'. Each section contains two dropdown menus for 'Expiration' and 'Warning', both followed by the text 'Days'. In the 'Pre-order' section, 'Expiration' is set to 30 and 'Warning' to 5. In the 'Shipped' section, 'Expiration' is set to 60 and 'Warning' to 5. At the bottom right of the dialog are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Figure 160: Job Expiration

Job Expiration enables preventing the buildup of transient and obsolete Jobs (i.e. Jobs that were printed and shipped) on the server.

To this end, every Job with *Design*, *Ready to Order (Shopping Cart)* and *Shipped* status will be automatically assigned an expiration date.

Note: The expiration time for Jobs with pre-order status (*Design* and *Ready to Order/Shopping Cart*) will be defined by the Print Provider.

Customize Fields

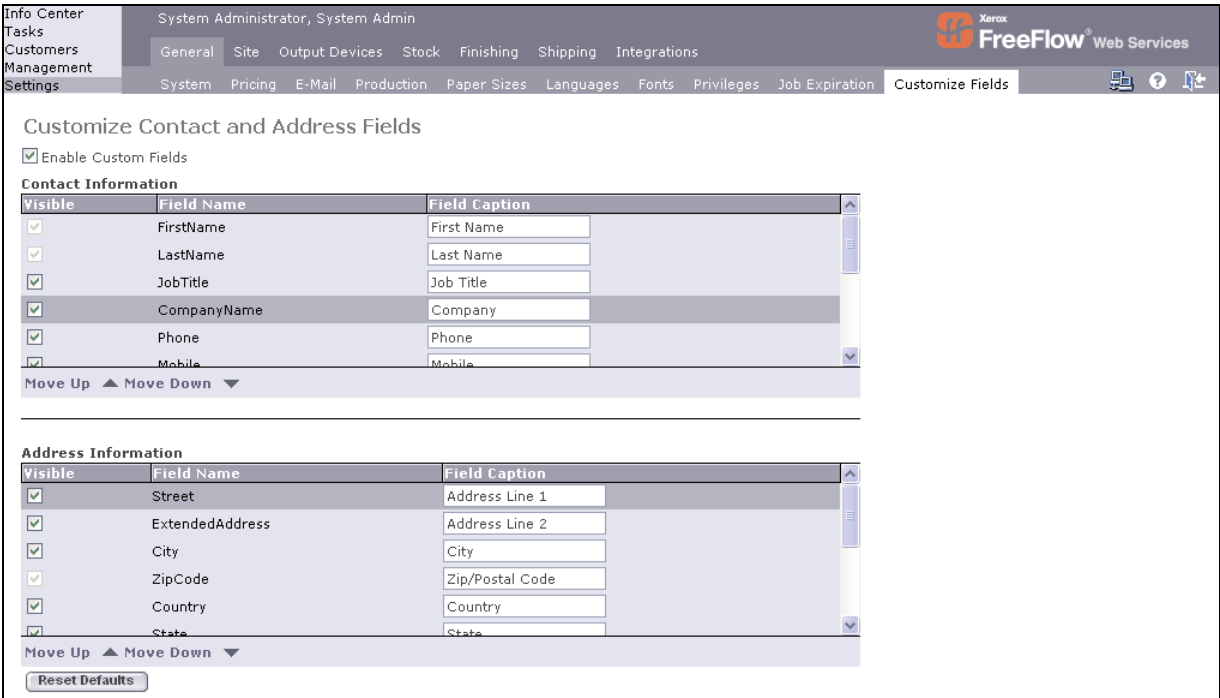


Figure 161: Customize Fields

Customize Contact and Address Fields enables editing the caption names of *Contact* and *Address* fields provided by the system. In addition, *Customize Contact and Address Fields*, enables concealing *Contact* and *Address* fields from user view and also allows altering the place of specific fields within the various *Contact* and *Address* field windows.

To change a *Field Name* caption, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Select the *Enable Custom Fields* checkbox; the *Contact Information* and *Address Information* panels appear.
- 2 Locate the *Field Names* that require editing and enter the new caption into the adjacent *Field Caption* box.

To change the location of a *Field Name*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Select the target field name.
- 2 Click on *Move Up* or *Move Down* until the field name arrives at the target destination.

To conceal one or more *Contact* and *Address* fields from user view, carry out the following step:

- 1 Clear the appropriate *Visible* checkbox(es).

Note: This option cannot be carried out for *Field Names* where the *Visible* checkbox has been grayed out.

- 1 To save all settings, click on *OK*.
- 2 To reset the default settings, click on *Reset Defaults*.

Section II: Site

Figure 162: Site

Site is composed of the following elements:

- **Contact Information** – Enables the Print Provider to enter Print Provider contact information. The Print Buyer is able to contact the Print Provider through this information
- **Print Provider Accounts** – List of Print Provider *FreeFlow Web Services* system *Users*
- **Terms and Conditions** – Allows the Print Provider to enter the terms and conditions of working with the Print Provider and enables determining the language of the text

Contact Information

All Print Provider information is entered into the *Contact Information* window. It is necessary to enter this information when initiating the application for the first time.

Contact Information is composed of the following elements:

- **Print Provider Name** – The name of the Print Provider
- **Contact Person** – The Print Provider contact employee that the Print Buyer can contact when necessary
- **Phone** – The contact phone number
- **Fax** – The fax number
- **E-Mail** – The contact e-Mail address
- **Street, City, Country, Zip Code, State (in the USA)** – The Print Provider's address information

Note: *Print Provider Name* and the *Zip Code* must be completed, as indicated by the asterisk. These fields will enable calculating shipping costs and locating related taxes, according to the locations identified through the *Zip Codes*.

Print Provider Accounts

The screenshot shows the 'Print Provider Accounts' window. On the left, there's a search bar labeled 'Search for users named:' with 'Search' and 'Reset' buttons. Below it is a list of users, with 'System Administrator' selected. At the bottom of the list are 'Add' and 'Delete' buttons. On the right, there's a form for editing user parameters. The form includes fields for 'First Name' (System), 'Last Name' (Administrator), 'Login Name' (Printer), 'Password' (masked with dots), 'Privilege Level' (System Admin), 'IP Filter', 'E-Mail' (177vmadmin@press-sense.com), and 'Phone'. At the bottom of the form are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Figure 163: Print Provider Accounts

Print Provider Accounts allows the Print Provider to create use accounts for all the members of the Print Provider organization who work with the *Web Services* system. Each user is provided with a *Login* name and a *Password* and is designated a *User Privilege*.

The *Print Provider Accounts* window contains the following elements:

- **Users Pane** A list of *Web Services* users within the Print Provider organization
- **User Parameters Panel** Print Provider *User* parameters
- **OK Button** Saves the settings
- **Cancel Button** Deletes any setting modifications

Users Pane

In the *Users* pane, the Print Provider lists all of the Print Buyer staff members, of each specific customer, that are involved with the *Web Services* system. The list is open, enabling the Print Provider to add and remove users from the list. The *Users* pane is provided with a search engine for finding a specific user or for narrowing the *User List*.

Note: The Print Buyer has access to the same *Users* list and can also add and remove staff users.

The *Users* pane contains the following operation buttons:

- **Search** – Activates the search engine
- **Reset** – Replaces the 'searched' *User List* with the comprehensive list
- **Add** – Adds a new user to the *Users List*
- **Delete** – Permanently deletes a user from the *User List*

Searching for a User

In order to search for a specific *User*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Enter a partial or complete target name into the *Search for users named:* field box.
- 2 Click on *Search*; the targeted user(s) name(s) appears in the *Users List*.
- 3 To return the comprehensive *Users List*, click on *Reset*.

Adding a New User to the Users List

In order to add a new *User* to the system, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on *Add*; the 'New User' name appears in the *Users List*.
- 2 Enter a new name in place of the *New User* name.
- 3 Enter the correct parameters into the *Users Information* panel fields.
- 4 Click on *OK* to confirm the new information.

Note: Every user must have a unique *Login* name. When a previously used *Login* name is entered for a new user, an *Alert* message pops up after the user clicks on the *OK* button. The new user will not be added to the list until a unique *Login* name is entered.

Removing Users From the User List

In order to remove a user from the *Users* list, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Select a target user and click on *Delete*; the *Remove User* dialog box appears.
- 2 Click on *Yes*; the user is removed from the list.

Note: When attempting to remove a user currently logged into the system, the Print Provider receives an alert message and the action is denied.

User Parameters Panel

In the *Users Parameters* panel, the Print Provider enters the appropriate information concerning each Print Provider *User*.

The *Users Parameters* panel contains the following *Information* fields:

- **First Name** – The first name of the *User*
- **Last Name** – The last (family) name of the *User*
- **Login Name** – A login name that the *User* must enter into the *Login* field on the *Home Page* in order to access the system
- **Password** – *User's* password, displayed in asterisks (***) instead of the typed characters. The *User* uses this password to access the system from the *Home Page*

Note: The *Password* is case-sensitive and must be entered in the same way as when logging into the system.

- **Privilege Level** – A dropdown menu, where the Print Provider provides the *User* with the following privileges:
 - **System Administrator** This *User* has access to all *Print Provider* interface windows.
 - **Operator** This *User* has access to the *Tasks* windows and can take responsibility for the operation of the workflow of the system.
 - **Manager** This *User* can view the *Info Center* as well as the *Task* and *Management* parameters and can create new *Job Types*, modify templates and modify pricing.
- **IP Filter** – *IP* is an *Internet Protocol* that regulates computer *Internet* connections. The *IP Filter* allows access to the system only from a computer with the specified *IP*
- **E-Mail** – The *User's* e-Mail address
- **Phone** – The *User's* phone number

Terms and Conditions

The *Terms and Conditions* window is composed of the following elements:

- **Language Pane** – Displays the list of languages available to the system
- **Terms and Conditions Text Panel** – Used for entering and editing terms and conditions text.
- **Save Settings Buttons** – Clears or saves text.

In the *Terms and Conditions Text* panel, the Print Provider can define its terms and conditions in several languages. The *Terms and Conditions* panel can be used for entering text that reflects both the Print Provider and the Print Buyer responsibilities. The number of added text lines and words is unlimited.

Note: To apply character and paragraph formatting to the *Terms and Condition* text, use *HTML* conventions while typing the Print Provider's text. The system saves the text in the *HTML* format.

Adding Text

In order to add text, carry out the following steps:

- 1 In the *Language* box, select the desired language; the selected language is highlighted blue.
- 2 Enter the text into the *Text* pane or copy/paste a ready text from a text editor.
- 3 Click on *Save*.
- 4 When a second language is required, select the second language.
- 5 Enter the text in the language selected.
- 6 Click on *Save*.

Section III: Output Devices

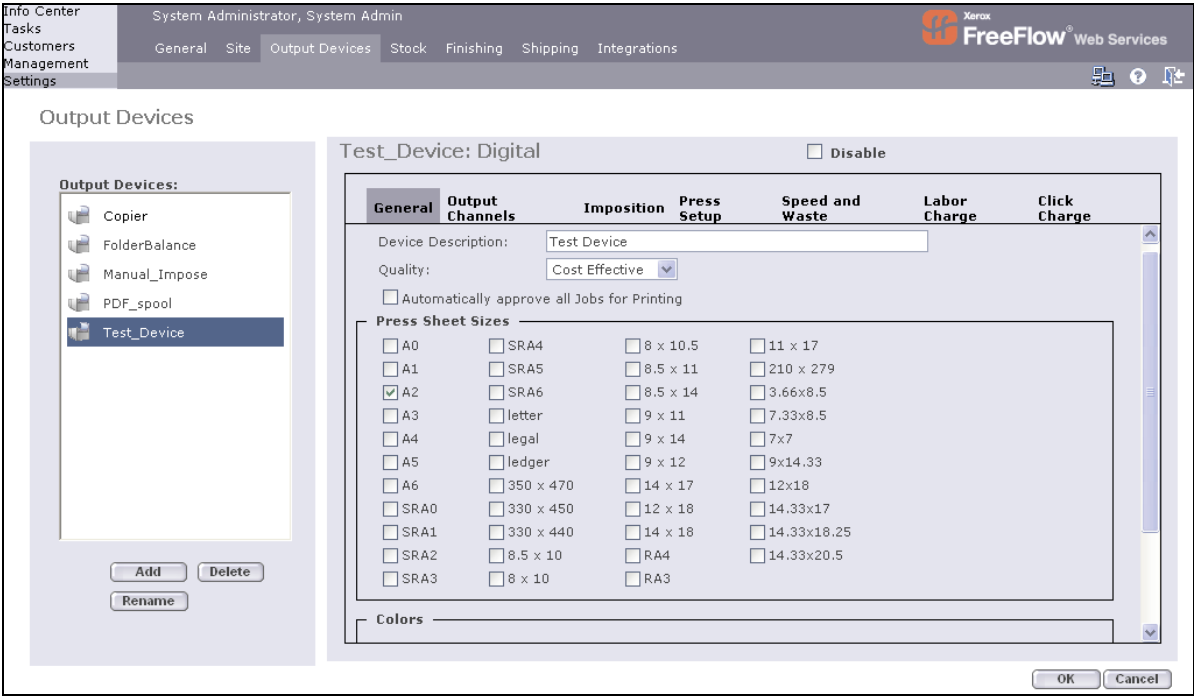


Figure 164: Output Devices

In the *Output Devices* window, the Print Provider defines the *Output Devices* parameters. For each output device, the Print Provider chooses the output channels, *Press Sheet* sizes, margins, color bars and imposition method etc.

The *Output Devices* window contains the following elements:

- **Output Device List Pane** – List of all of the output devices in the Print Provider site.
- **Output Device Parameters Panels** – Series of panels that allows the Print Provider to enter the various parameters of each output device.

Note: *FreeFlow Web Services* recognizes the following three different *Output Device* machine types:

- Digital
- Offset
- Copier (*Copier* is similar to *Digital* but does not support spot colors).

Output Devices Pane

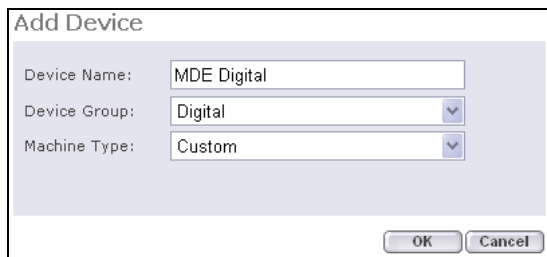


Figure 165: Output Devices Pane

In the *Output Devices* pane, the Print Provider defines the output devices to be used in the system. The output device name can refer to a folder where Jobs are transferred, or to an output device that receives and prints Jobs automatically. The output device name can be any name that the Print Provider chooses. By default, the *Output Devices* pane contains a *Manual Impose* option. The *Manual Impose* feature is described in *Manual Impose Panel*, on page 226.

Adding an Output Device Name to the Output Devices Pane

In order to add an *Output Device* name to the *Output Devices* pane, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the *Add* button under the *Output Devices* box; the *Add Device* dialog box appears.
- 2 In *Device Name*, enter the output device name.
- 3 In the *Device Group* dropdown box, select a machine class.
- 4 In the *Device Type* dropdown box, select a machine type.
- 5 Click on *OK*; the new *Output Device* name is added to the *Output Device* list.

Removing an Output Device Name from the Output Devices Pane

In order to remove an *Output Device* name from the *Output Device* pane, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on an *Output Device* name.
- 2 Click on *Delete*; the *Delete* confirmation dialog box opens.
- 3 Click on *OK*.

Renaming an Output Device

In order to rename an output device, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on an *Output Device* name in the *Output Devices* pane.
- 2 Click on *Rename*; the *Rename* dialog box appears.
- 3 Enter the new name into the *Device Name* box.
- 4 Click on *OK*; the new name appears in the *Output Devices* pane.

Output Device Parameters Panels

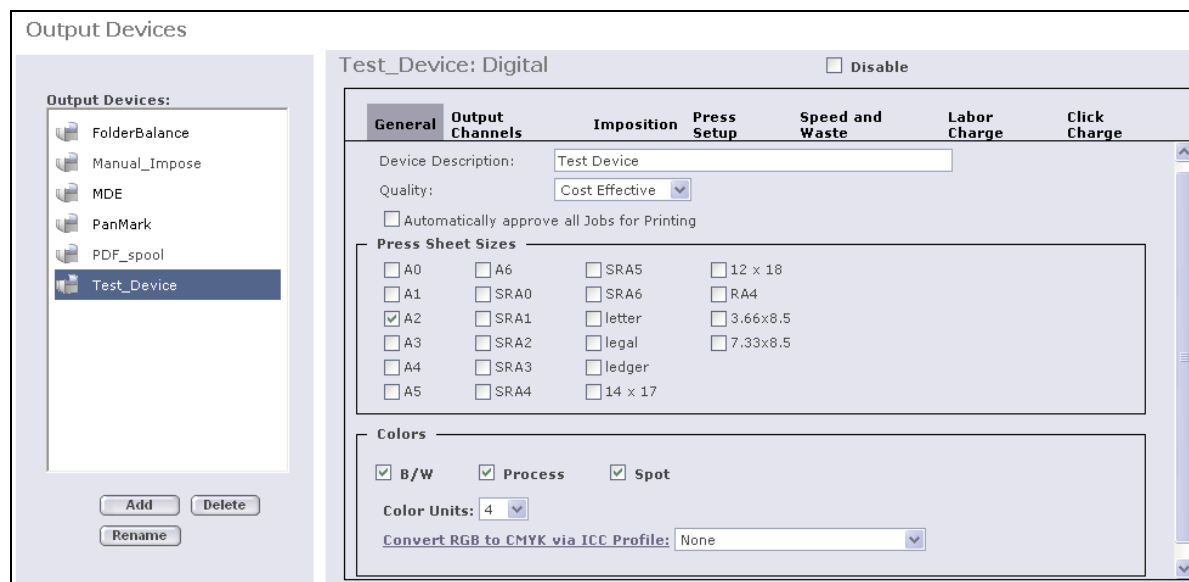


Figure 166: Output Devices Panel

The *Output Device Parameter* panel is composed of the following elements:

- **Machine Panel** – Used for pre-defined, specific *Digital* machine settings. This tab will not be present for *Custom* machines
- **General Panel** – Used for defining general settings for the selected output device
- **Output Channels Panel** – Used for defining settings for the automatic *PDF Spool* channel when a PostScript file is sent to the output device, or for sending the approved-for-printing Jobs as a single, imposed *PDF* file to target folders
- **Imposition Panel** – Used for choosing imposition orientation and optimization (depending on the output device). Also used for defining *Press Sheet* sizes, margins and for adding a color bar
- **Press Setup Panel** – Enables entering the various setup times

Note: *Setup Time (Make Ready)* refers to the time from the last good sheet of the previous Job to the first good sheet of the next Job.

Pass Setup Time refers to the setup time necessary for extra runs (overprint).

Print Head Setup Time refers to the time necessary to set up the print heads (Towers).

- **Speed and Waste Panel** – Used for defining speed and waste properties for a selected output device. The sub-panel interface changes according to the output device type: either an *Offset* output device or *Copier/Digital* output device

- **Labor Charge Panel** – Used for entering the costs of labor as a definite, cost-per-time charge

Note: With an *Offset Device*, the *Labor Charge* is defined as the sum total of the following costs:

- Plate Fee
- Labor Cost
- Process Wash-up Cost
- Spot Wash-up Cost
- **Click Charge Panel** – The cost charged for each sheet that is printed. The cost is either expressed as a mark-up or as a definite cost according to the size of paper
- **Disable Checkbox** – Enables the Print Provider to temporarily disable the selected output device. When an output device is disabled, the system does not consider it when choosing the most cost-effective output device
- **Add, Delete and Rename Buttons** – Allows the Print Provider to add, delete and rename the output device
- **OK Button** – Clicking on *OK* saves all of the settings
- **Cancel Button** – Clicking on *Cancel* deletes all of the settings

Manual Impose Panel

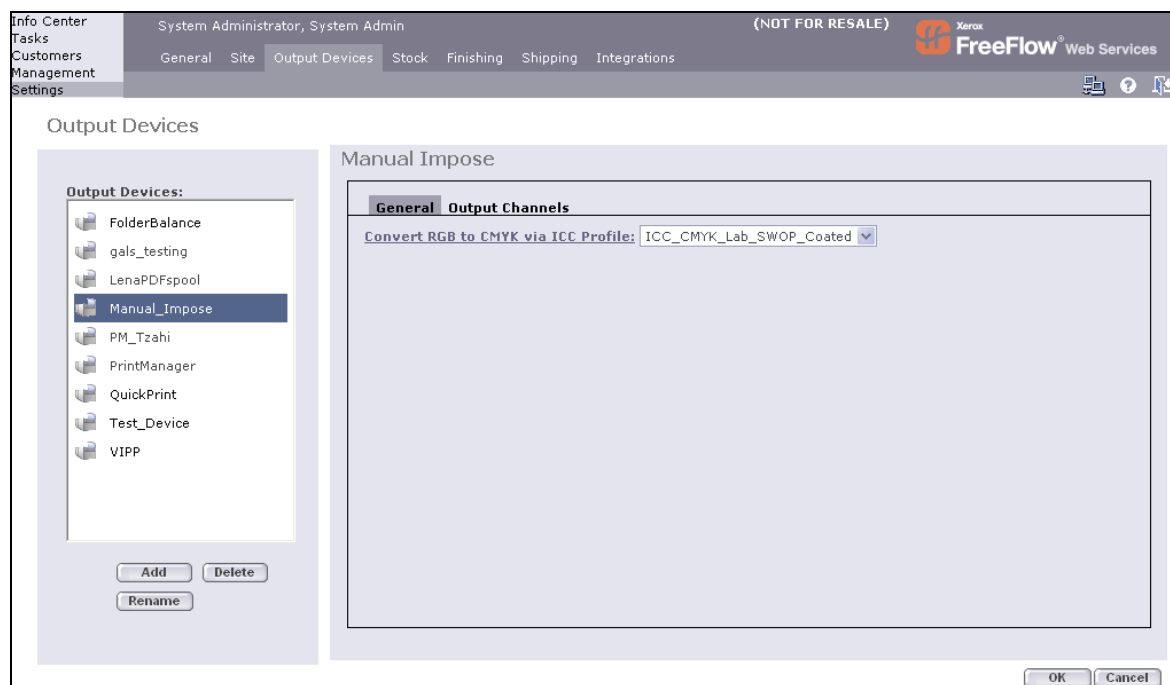


Figure 167: Manual Impose Panel

Web Services enables the Print Provider to manually impose the Job. This option is automatically selected when a Job cannot be imposed by the system and requires manual stripping. The Print Provider can also select the ‘*Manual Impose*’ option, from the *Option Devices* list, when imposition must be carried out by a third-party impositioning tool. The system saves the Job as a non-imposed *PDF*.

The *Manual Impose* panel contains two options, which are accessed by clicking on the associated panel tabs:

- **General:** For setting the Convert RGB to CMYK via ICC Profile option
- **Output Channels:** For enabling the Print Provider to save the “Approved for Printing” *PDF*’s in a folder, rather than sending them directly to an output device.

Enabling Manual Imposition

In order to enable *Manual Imposition*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on *Manual Impose* in the *Output Devices* pane; the *Manual Impose* panel appears.
- 2 To convert *RGB* colors to *CMYK* colors via the *ICC Profile*, click on the *General* tab; the *General* pane appears.

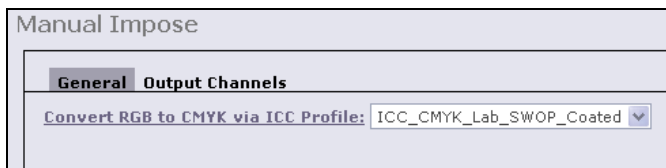


Figure 168: Manual Impose: General Panel

- 3 In the dropdown box, select *ICC_CMYK_Lab_SWOP_Coated* and then click on *OK*.
- 4 Click on the *Output Channels* tab; the *Output Channels* panel appears.

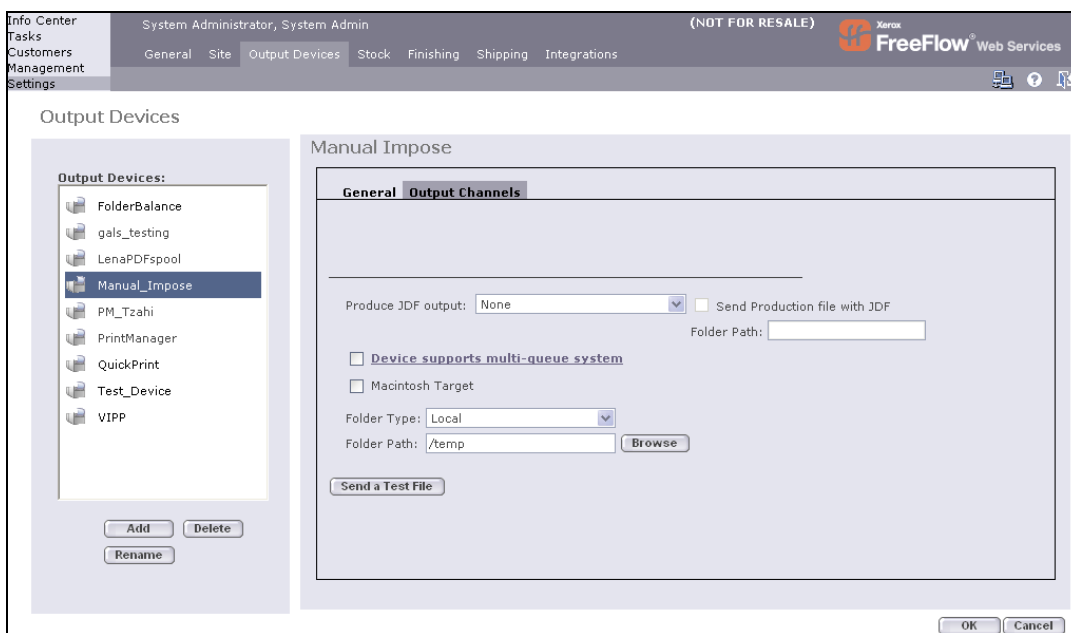


Figure 169: Manual Impose: Output Channels Panel

Machine Panel

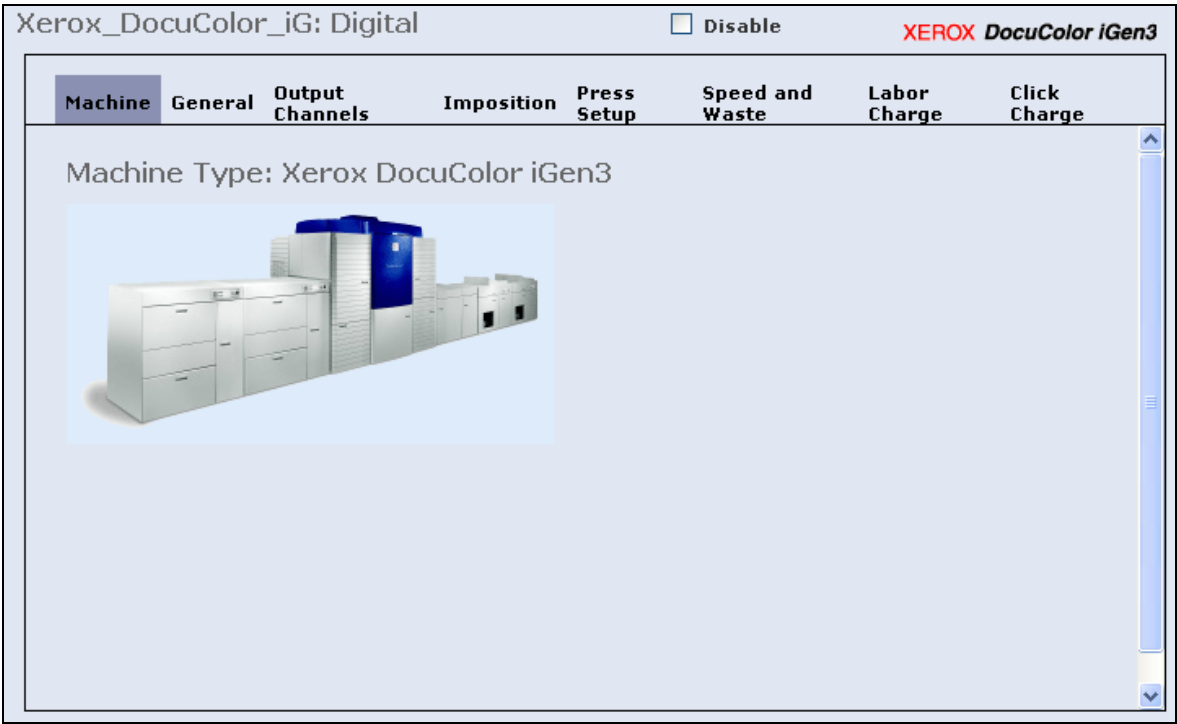


Figure 170: Machine Panel

The *Machine* panel appears only for pre-defined machines and serves to provide a visual representation of the machine.

General Panel

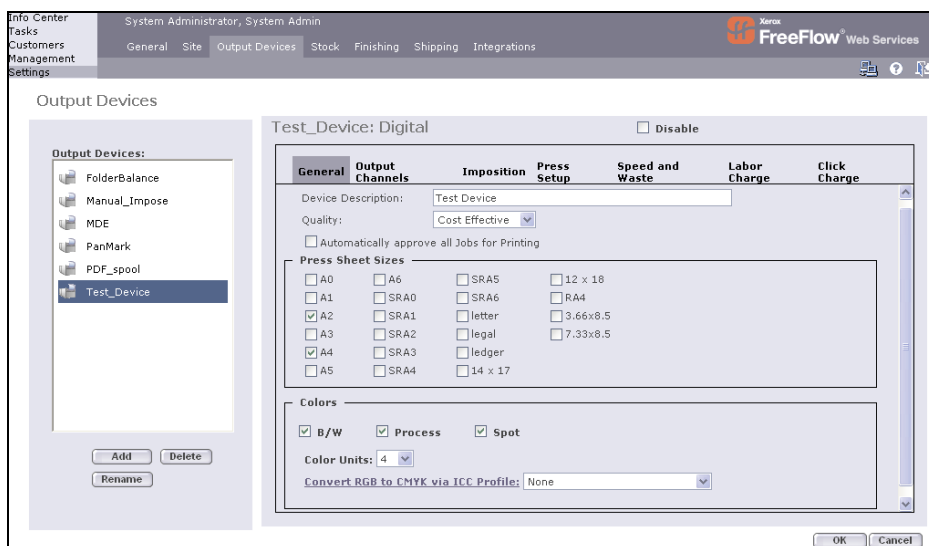


Figure 171: General Panel

In the *General* panel, the Print Provider defines the printing quality, *Press Sheet* sizes and color support for each output device. The Print Provider can also define the *ICC Profile* for the device.

The *General* panel is composed of the following elements:

- **Device Description** – Used for specifying the type of output device and for providing a name that will be recognized and used by the Print Buyer
- **Quality Dropdown Box** – Used for specifying either standard or premium quality for the selected output device. Only one quality type can be chosen for one output device. This is one of the factors the system uses while choosing the most cost-effective output device
- **Automatically Approve All Jobs For Printing** – When the checkbox is selected, all Jobs receive automatic approval by the system and when sent to *Production*, the Job appears in the *Printing* queue rather than the *Approval* queue
- **Press Sheet Sizes** – Contains *Press Sheet* sizes supported by the chosen output device
- **Color Support Checkboxes** – Refers to the *B/W*, *4/C*, and *Spot* ink colors that the printing device supports. All checkboxes are checkmarked by default
- **Color Units** – The maximum number of color units that are supported by the output device.

Note: Where the output device is an *Offset* press, the color units are the number of printing towers.

- **Convert RGB to CMYK via ICC Profile** – Dropdown box for selecting the *ICC* profile for converting *RGB* to *CMYK*

Note: For adding *ICC Profiles*, see *Adding Additional ICC Profiles* below.

The *Press Sheet* sizes are configured by the Print Provider in the *Paper Sizes* window (see *Paper Sizes Window*, page 210).

Press Sheet Sizes Sub-panel

Press Sheet sizes, that are to be used by the selected output device, must appear in the *Press Sheet Sizes* sub-panel (*Press Sheet* sizes have been configured in the *Settings: General* window).

Caution: When defining a sheet size for a specific *Output Device*, ensure that the size or a larger size (*Parent* size that can be cut into a *Press Sheet* size) has been configured in the *Settings: Stock Library* window and is not listed as “*Not In Stock*”.

Defining Press Sheets Sizes for a Particular Output Device

In order to define *Press Sheet* sizes, select the checkboxes of those sizes to be set for the given output device.

Caution: The *Press Sheet* sizes that are selected must be equal to or smaller than the *Parent* (prepress) *Sheet* sizes defined in the *Settings: Stock Library* window (i.e. if A4 has been selected for the given *Output Device*, ensure that A4 or larger parent sheets in the *Settings: Stock Library* window have been defined).

Adding ICC Profiles

The *Web Services* system allows the Print Provider to add ICC profiles, based on the *LAB* profile connection space. To add these ICC profiles, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Open the following directory: *D:\NewEdition\IPanel\Db\ICCProfiles*.
- 2 Copy the target *.icm file into the above folder.
- 3 Close the file system; the ICC profile has been added to the *Convert RGB to CMYK via ICC Profile* dropdown box and can be configured from the *General Panel* window (see page 229) and from the *Edit Imposition* window (see page 29).

Output Channels Panel

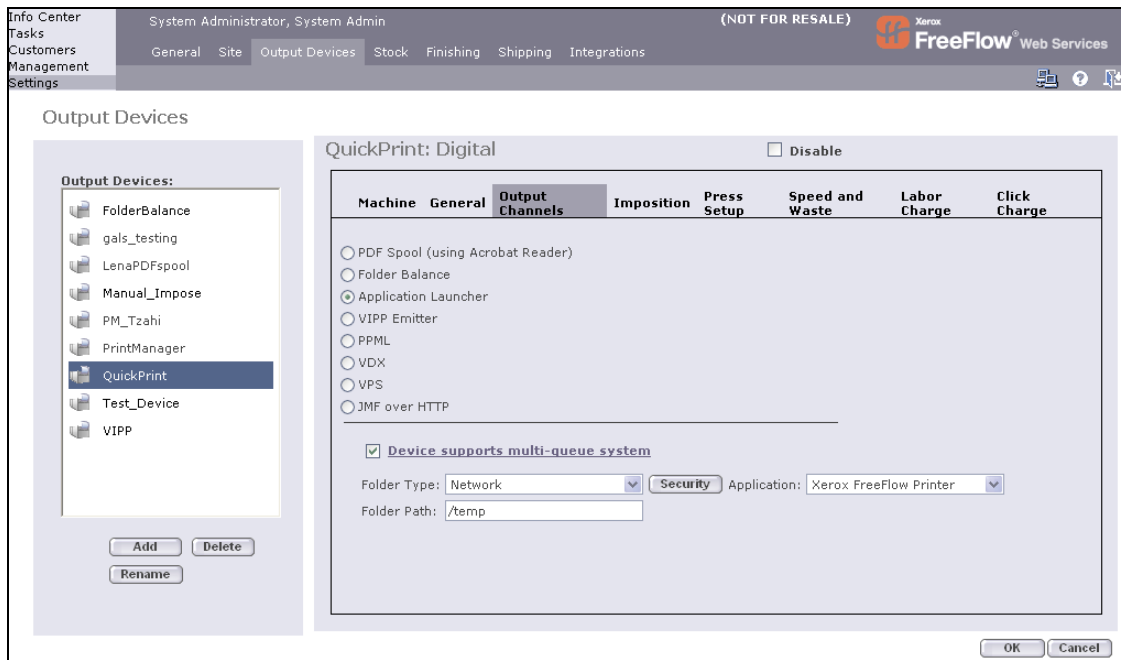


Figure 172: Output Channels

The *Output Channels* panel offers the following interface options, which are accessed by clicking on the associated radio button:

- PDF spool (output will be a postscript file)
- Folder Balance (output will be a PDF)
- Application Launcher
- VIPP Emitter
- PPML
- VDX
- VPS
- JMF over HTTP

PDF Spool Sub-panel

The *PDF Spool* sub-panel is used to automatically transfer a Job to the chosen output device/RIP in the *PostScript* format.

The *PDF Spool* sub-panel is composed of the following elements:

- **File Path Checkbox** – Activates *Browse*.
- **Browse** – Button that allows browsing to a specific location. The target folder is restricted to the *D:* drive (or any drive that houses the *Web Services* application).
- **Device Name Dropdown Box** – Selection of all available output devices that were installed on the *Web Services* server.
- **Print Method Dropdown Box** – Selection of the *PostScript* printing level.
- **Output Options Checkboxes** – Selection of *Output* options. Each checkbox is checkmarked for adding copies, half tones and duplex mode parameters to the automatic spooling as well as for downloading Asian fonts. The checkboxes are unchecked by default.

Note: *Asian* fonts are downloaded to the output device only when they are not embedded in the uploaded *PDF*.

- **Print Test Page Button** – Enables sending a test page to the selected *Output Device* channel.

Automatic Spooling

In order to enable automatic spooling, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Activate the *PDF Spool* radio button.
- 2 Select a device name from the *Device Name* dropdown box.
- 3 Select a print method form the *Print Method* drop down box.
- 4 Select one or more of the following checkboxes:
 - **Use Printer Halftone Screens** – (when this option is selected, the *Halftone* screening is performed using the printer's screening mechanism).
 - **Download Asian Fonts** – (it is necessary to download Asian fonts to the output device when a *PDF* with *Asian* fonts is uploaded but the fonts are not embedded).
 - **Attach Copies Parameter** – Attach the number of copies automatically; one copy is attached when the checkbox is clear.
 - **Attach Duplex Mode Parameter** – Include all of the *Duplex Mode* parameters with the Job. The Print Provider clears the checkbox when the output device does not support the duplex mode or when the Print Provider wants to set this parameter manually.

Note: The *Duplex Mode* can be selected in the *Production/Edit Imposition* window from the dropdown menu. The *Duplex Mode* options are *Top-Top*, *Top-Bottom*, *Centered* and *Off*.

Print to File Option

In order to save the Job as a *PostScript* file, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Checkmark the *File Path* checkbox.
- 2 Click on the *Browse* icon; the *Select Folder* dialog box appears.
- 3 Select the target folder.
- 4 In the *Select Folder* dialog box, click on *OK*; the target folder appears in the *File Path* text box.
- 5 In the *Output Devices* window, click on *OK* to save the settings.

Note: The target folder is restricted to the *D:* drive (or any drive which houses the application).

Printing a Test Page

In order to print a test page, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Ensure that the spooling path has been selected from the *Device Name* dropdown box.
- 2 Click on the *Print Test Page* button; the *Output Channels* dialog box appears.
- 3 Click on *Yes* in order to print the test page using the selected output device.
- 4 In the following dialog boxes, click on *OK*.

Folder Balance Sub-panel

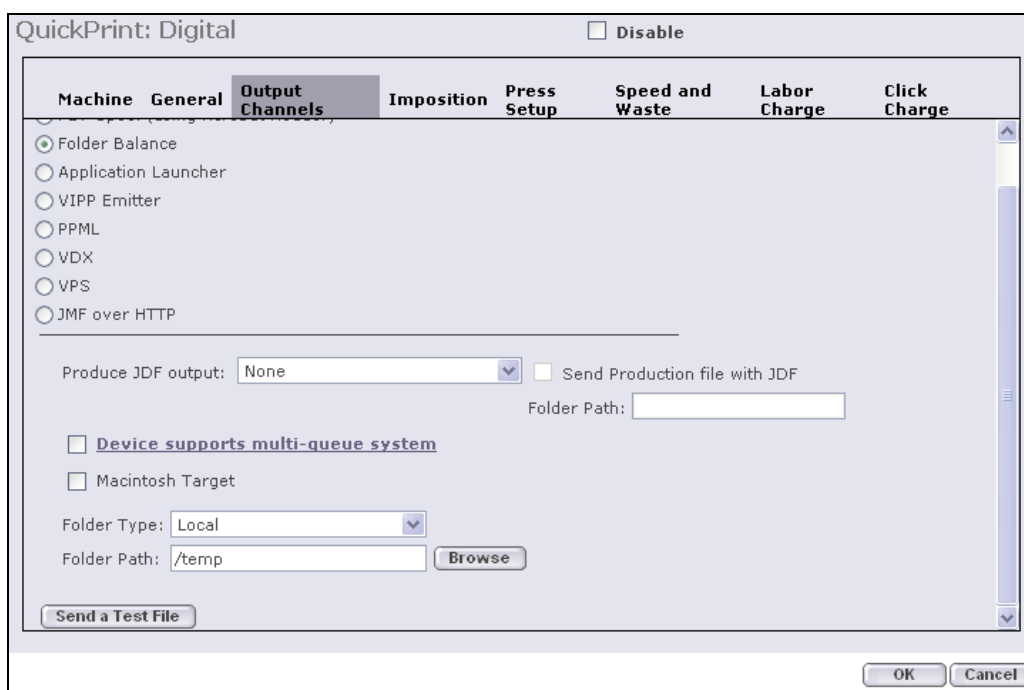


Figure 173: Folder Balance Sub-panel

The *Folder Balance* sub-panel enables the Print Provider to send the 'approved for printing' files, in a *PDF* format, to any target; locally, through the network, or through an *FTP* site.

The *Folder Balance* sub-panel is composed of the following elements:

- **Produce JDF output** – Enables selecting *JDF Process* or *JDF Intent*
- **Device supports multi-queue system** – Enables selecting the multi-queue system. The link accesses the *Device* queues dialog box for adding, editing, or deleting queues.
- **Macintosh Target Checkbox** – When transferring Jobs to *Mac* platforms, the Print Provider must checkmark the *Macintosh Target* checkbox; the system compresses any Job name to less than 30 characters
- **Folder Type Dropdown Box** – Enables the Print Provider to store Jobs using one of the following methods:
 - Local: used for specifying an absolute folder path within the local server.
 - FTP: used for specifying the full ftp path for transferring Jobs via the Internet to any remote computer (i.e. format: ftp://www.print-provider.com).
 - Network: used for transferring Jobs to any computer within the local network (the network server directory must be specified as the following: \ ...)
- **Folder Path Box** – Used for entering a full folder path. The folder path depends on a method chosen from the *Folder Type* dropdown box
- **Browse Button** – Enables browsing a folder directory

Note: The *Browse* button appears in the *Folder Balance* panel only when the *Local* method is chosen in the *Method* dropdown menu. The *Browse* button enables browsing only inside the *D:/* directory; all other directories must be specified.

- **Security Button** – When selecting *FTP* or *Network* from the *Folder Type* dropdown box, the *Security* button appears. *Security* opens a *Login: Security Setup* dialog box (see Figure 175: Login: Security Setup Dialog Box, below).
- **Send a Test File** – Used for sending a test file to the target folder appearing in the Folder Path box.

Produce JDF Output

The *Produce JDF Output* feature provides the following options:

- **None** – *JDF* output is not enabled (the *Send Production file with JDF* checkbox is disabled)
- **JDF Process** – The Job is converted to the *JDF* format and includes production settings for this specific Job and a link to the production file
- **JDF Intent** – The Job is converted to the *JDF* format and includes certain Job property settings for this specific Job and a link to the production file
- **Send Production File with JDF** – When a *Produce JDF output* option has been selected, enables sending the production file together with the *JDF* (in addition to the link to the production file)
- **Folder Path** – Enables entering a path for transferring the *JDF* to the target folder

Multi –queue System: Queue Selection

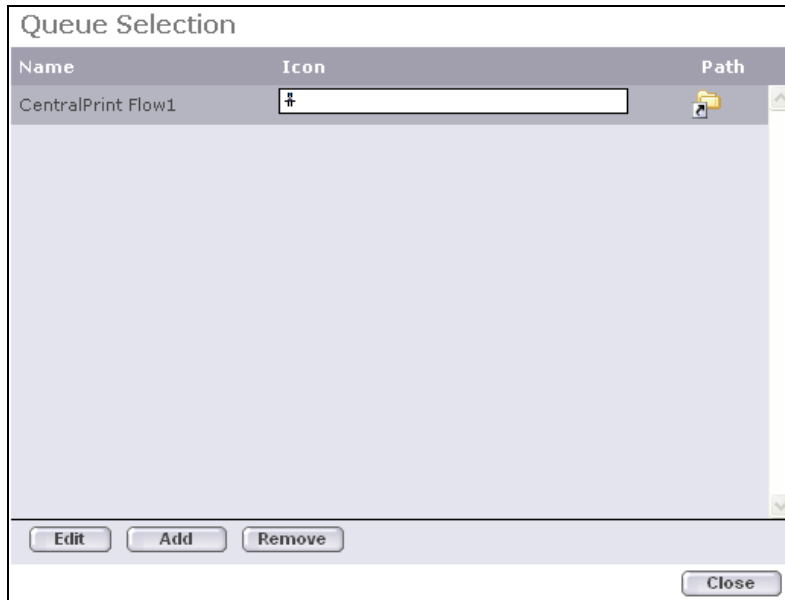


Figure 174: Queue Selection

Queue Selection enables the Print Provider to create workflows for electronically transporting the Job file to target folders.

Adding a Workflow

To add a workflow to the *Queue Selection* list, carry out the following steps:

- 1 In *Queue Selection*, click on *Add*; the *Add Workflow* dialog box appears.
- 2 Enter a workflow name, choose an icon and enter a path and then click on *OK* to save the settings; the new workflow appears in the *Queue Selection* list.
- 3 To enter a new icon to the icon list, click on the *Workflow Icon* link; the *Images Folder: Workflow Icons* dialog box appears.
- 4 Carry out the instructions and click on *Select Image*, the image appears in the *Workflow Name* row.

Editing a Workflow

- 1 To edit a workflow, select a target workflow and click on *Edit*; the *Edit Workflow* dialog box appears.
- 2 Enter the changes and click on *OK*.

Removing a Workflow

- 1 To remove a workflow, select a target workflow and click on *Remove*; the *Remove Workflow* dialog box appears.
- 2 Click on *Yes*.

Setting Folder Balance

In order to set *Folder Balance*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the *Folder Balance* radio button.
- 2 Select an option from the *Produce JDF output* dropdown box.
- 3 Choose a type from the *Folder Type* dropdown box.
- 4 For a folder path, click on the *Browse* button; the *Select Folder* dialog box appears.
- 5 Click on the target folder; the folder name appears in the *Folder Path* box.
- 6 Click on *OK* in order to enter the folder.

Login: Security Setup Dialog Box

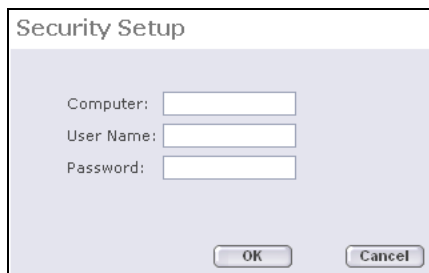


Figure 175: Login: Security Setup Dialog Box

The *Security* dialog box automatically appears when choosing the *FTP* or *Network* options from the *Method* dropdown box. The Print Provider must enter the computer *IP*, the *User* name and the password into the dialog box.

Caution: To access the *FTP* or network location, the login security settings must be entered.

Entering Security Settings

In order to enter *Security* settings, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Choose *FTP* or *Network* protocol; the *Login: Security Setup* dialog box appears.
- 2 Enter the *FTP* address or the *IP* of the target computer into the *Computer* box.
- 3 Enter the *User* name into the *Username* box.
- 4 Enter the password into the *Password* box.
- 5 Click on *OK* in order to save the settings and close the dialog box.

Modifying the Security Settings

In order to modify the *Security* settings, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the *Security* button; the *Login: Security Setup* dialog box appears.
- 2 Enter the required changes into the respective boxes.
- 3 Click on *OK* in order to save the settings and close the dialog box.

Sending a Test File

In order to send a file to a folder, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the *Send Test File* button; the *Output Channels* dialog box appears.
- 2 Click on *Yes*; the *Output Channels* confirmation box appears.
- 3 Click on *Yes*, a second *Output Channels* confirmation box appears.
- 4 Click on *Yes*; the file is sent to the folder.

Local Folder Type

Note: *Local Folder Type* refers to folders that reside in the *Web Services* server while *Network Folder Types* refers to the folders residing in the organization's network.

For the *Local Folder Type*, continue with the following steps:

- 1 Click on the *Folder Type* dropdown box and select *Local*.
- 2 For a folder path, click on the *Browse* button; the *Selected Folder* dialog box appears.

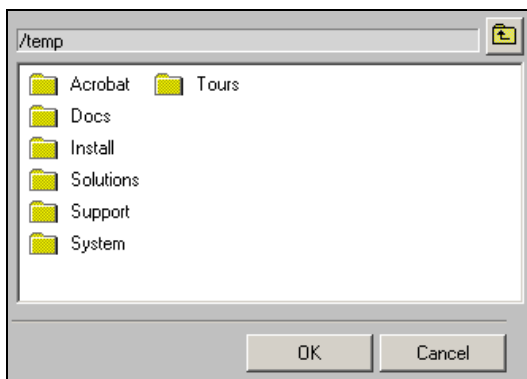


Figure 176: Selected Folder Dialog Box

- 3 Click on the target folder; the folder name appears in the *Folder Path* field.
- 4 Click on *OK* to enter the folder into the *Output Channels* panel.

FTP and Network Folder Type

For *FTP* and *Network Folder Types*, continue with the following steps:

- 1 Click on the *Folder Type* dropdown box and select *FTP* or *Network*; the *Browse* button disappears and the *Security* button appears.
- 2 Click on the *Security* button; the *Security Setup* dialog box appears.

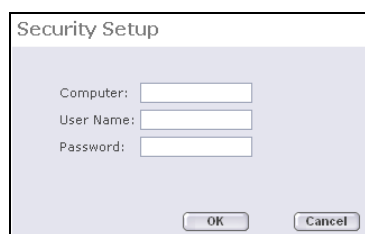


Figure 177: Security Setup Dialog Box

- 3 Enter the correct computer *IP*, *Username* and *Password* and then click on *OK*; the *Output Channel* panel reappears.
- 4 Click on *Send a Test File*; the *Output Channels Test File* dialog box appears.
- 5 Click on *Yes*; the file is sent to the folder.
- 6 Click on *OK* in the confirmation box.
- 7 Click on *OK* in the *Manual Impose* panel to close the window.

Cost-effective Output Device Selection

Cost-effective Output Device Selection is a pricing model that is automatically carried out by the system. After the output device has been selected, the system continues to calculate the Job price and the imposition scheme. The *Cost-effective* model is one of 4 differing pricing models and is only enabled when the *Production Cost* model is enabled. The *Cost-effective* model cannot be overridden by other pricing models, such as *Job Ticket Price* or *Template Price*.

The following steps describe *Cost-effective Output Device Selection*:

- 1 In the various *Output Devices* panels, the Print Provider defines the process quality, *Press Sheet* sizes, color model and speed, separately for each output device. In the *Settings: Stock Library* window, the Print Provider enters definitions for the paper weight available in the stock.
- 2 The Print Buyer selects the process quality, *Press Sheet* size, color model, paper weight and the number of Job copies from the dropdown boxes of the *Edit Properties* window in the *Customer* interface.
- 3 After the Print Buyer clicks on the *Get Price* button in the *Shopping Cart* to receive the price estimate, the system sorts out all output devices that do not match the selected process quality, color model and *Press Sheet* size.
- 4 The system considers the speed definitions specified for the remaining output devices and chooses the output device that is most cost-effective for printing the selected number of Job copies. This output device and the matching definitions appear in the *Job Information* panel of the *Tasks: Production* window.

Imposition Panel

QuickPrint: Digital ☐ Disable

Machine **General** **Output Channels** **Imposition** **Press Setup** **Speed and Waste** **Labor Charge** **Click Charge**

Imposition Info:
 Imposition Preferences:
 Imposition Orientation:
 Imposition Optimization:
 Color Bar File:

Label and Marks:
☐ Job Info
☐ Registration Marks
☐ Color Bars and Separation Names
☐ Crop Marks and Folding Info
☐ Gutters, Job Width and Height

Margins and Custom Color Bar Position:

Sheet Size	Margins (Inches)				Custom Color Bar Position/Dimensions (Inches)			
	Left	Right	Top	Bottom	X	Y	W	H
Default:	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	1	0.1	0.05	0.05

Diagram: A rectangle representing a sheet with a color bar at the bottom right. The origin (0,0) is at the top left. The color bar has width W and height H.


Figure 178: Imposition Panel

In the *Imposition* panel, the Print Provider chooses imposition orientation and optimization, depending on the output device. The system automatically imposes Job pages into signatures (a unit of Job arrangement within the imposition).

Note: When a Job cannot be automatically imposed by the system, *Web Services* enables the Print Provider to manually impose the Job. See *Manual Impose Panel*, page 226.

In the *Imposition* panel, the Print Provider chooses whether or not to use a color bar and can determine for each sheet size, the margins and color bar position/dimensions.

The *Imposition* panel is composed of following elements:

- **Imposition Preferences** Allows the Print Provider to determine whether or not to impose all Jobs.
- **Imposition Orientation** Enables the Print Provider to choose *Vertical* or *Horizontal* imposition orientation, or allows the system to choose which imposition orientation is most cost-effective (the *Best Match* option).
- **Imposition Optimization** Enables the Print Provider to choose the most cost-effective imposition, depending on the type of the output device (copier/digital or offset). The system optimizes the Job imposition either *By Job*, *By Plate* or *Sheet Wise*.
- **Color Bar File** Provides the Print Provider with a selection of the following color bar types: *Horizontal / Vertical* and *CMYK / Grayscale*.
- **Label and Marks Checkboxes** *Label* and *Marks* options that accompany the *Color Bar*. All options are selected by default.
- **Sheet Size** Allows the Print Provider to determine the *Press Sheet* size to which the margins and color bar positions/dimensions will be set.
- **Margins** Used for entering *Press Sheet* margin dimensions for a specific sheet size
- **Custom Color Bar Position/Dimensions** Used for entering a color bar position and dimensions for a specific sheet size.
- **Add Button** Adds a new row for defining margins and color bar position/dimensions in a different *Press Sheet* size.
- **Delete**  Deletes a row that defines margins and color bar position/dimensions in a different *Press Sheet* size.

Imposition Orientation

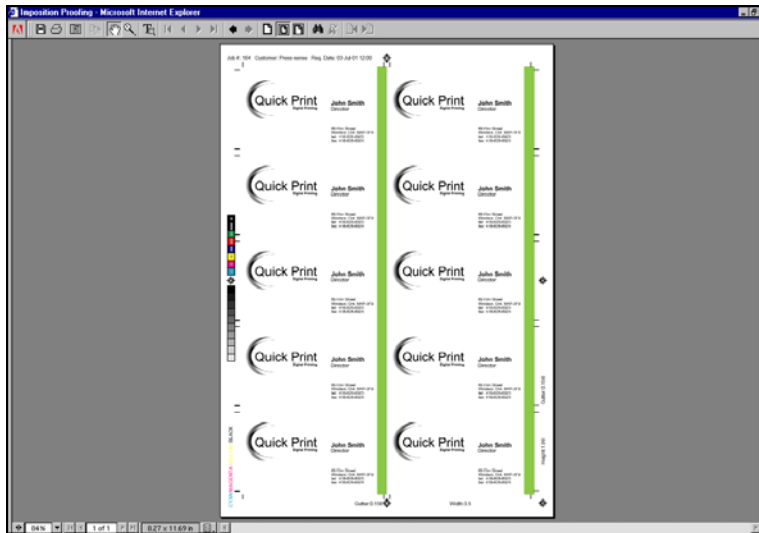


Figure 179: Horizontal Imposition Orientation

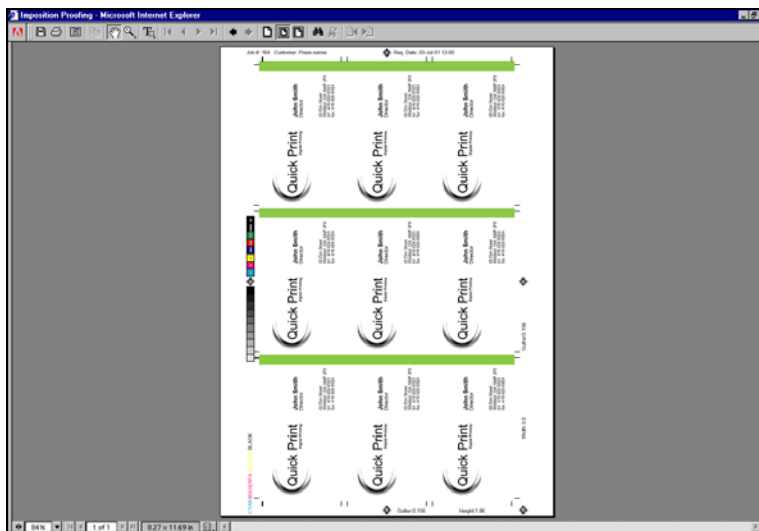


Figure 180: Vertical Imposition Orientation

In order to set the imposition orientation, carry out the following steps:

- 1 In Imposition Preferences, select *Impose all Jobs*.
- 2 Click on the *Imposition Orientation* dropdown button.
- 3 From the dropdown menu, select one of the following options:
 - Vertical: all Job pages on the *Press Sheet* are arranged vertically.
 - Horizontal: all Job pages on the *Press Sheet* are arranged horizontally.
 - Best Match: the system decides what is the best Job imposition orientation on the *Press Sheet* (i.e. vertical or horizontal).

Imposition Optimization by Job

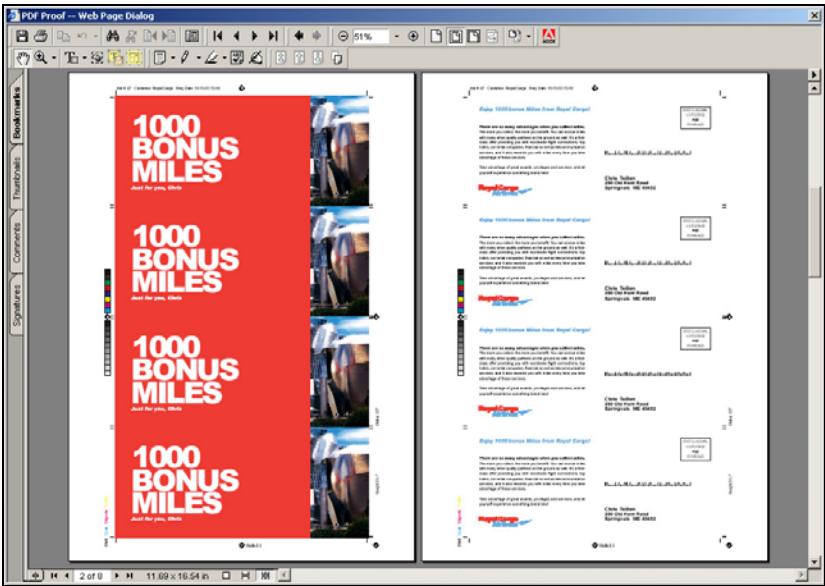


Figure 181: Imposition By Job

The *By Job* option is selected when using a *Copier* or a *Digital* output device. By Job enables printing one Job page that has been repeated throughout the *Press Sheet*.

Imposition Optimization by Plate

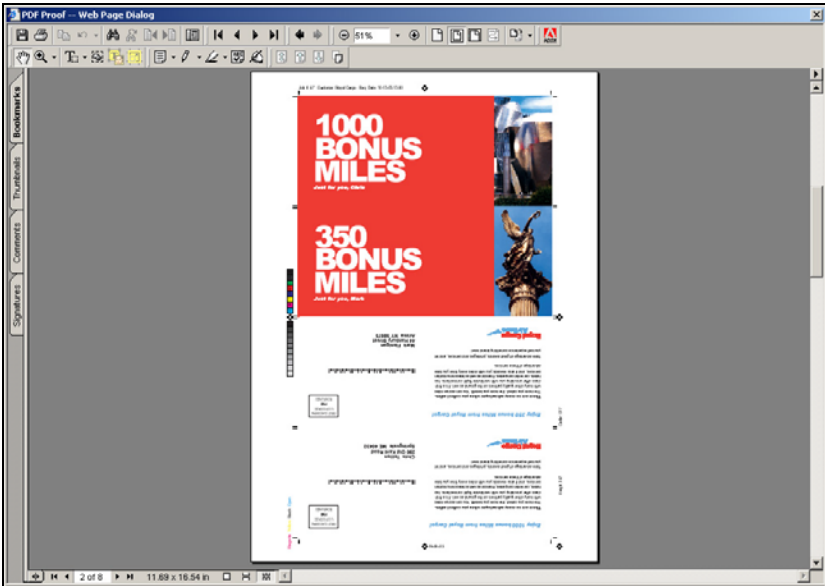


Figure 182: Imposition By Plate

The *By Plate* option is selected when working with an *Offset* output device. In two-sided printing, the system imposes all Job pages on one plate, if possible. The pages on the plate are arranged in the correct order: back pages are flipped in the imposition scheme.

Sheet Wise Imposition Optimization

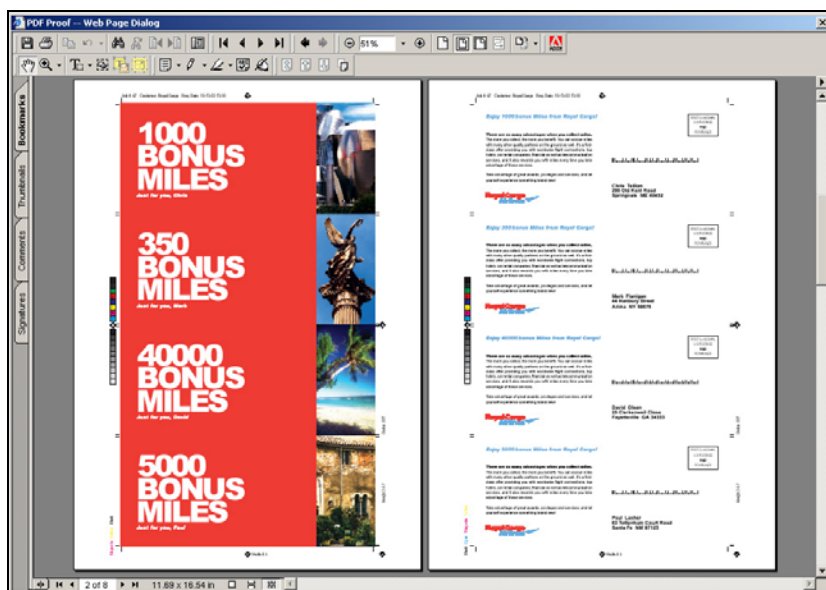


Figure 183: Sheet Wise Imposition

The *Sheet Wise* option is selected for two-sided printing. The system prints all front Job pages on one side of the *Press Sheet* and all back Job pages on the other side.

Label and Marks

Label and Marks are information items that are included with the *Imposition* layout. *Web Services* supplies the following five items which are checkmarked by default:

- Job Info
- Registration Marks
- Color Bars and Separation Names
- Crop Marks and Folding Info
- Gutters, Job Width and Height

Note: When, for example, the Print Provider wants to impose the A3 *Job Page* size on an A3 *Press Sheet* size, all margins, gutters and bleeds should be set to 0. All labels and marks will be unchecked by default.

Deleting Label and Marks Items From the Color Bar

To delete one or more *Label and Marks* items from the *Color Bar*, carry out the following step:

- Uncheck the target *Label and Marks* item(s).

Press Sheet Margins

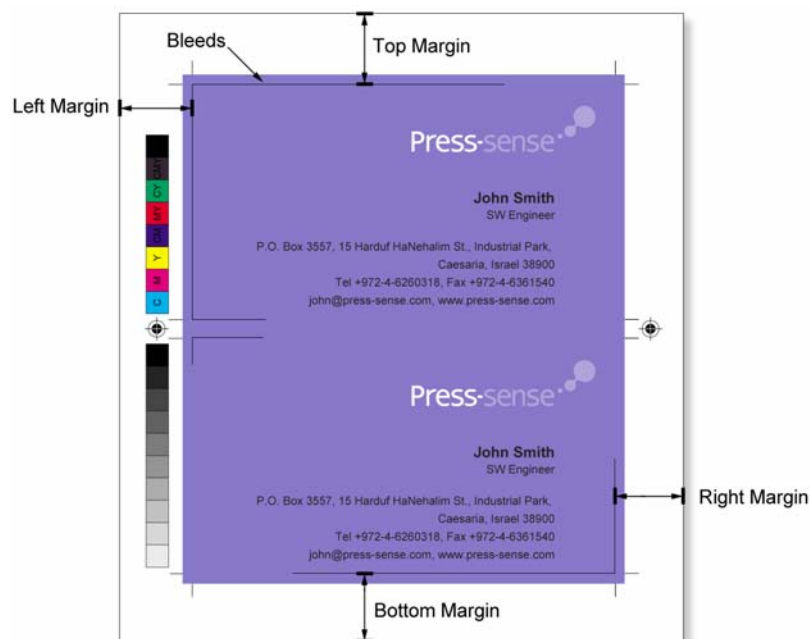


Figure 184: Press Sheet Margins

In the *Press Sheet Margins* boxes, the Print Provider enters the *Press Sheet* margin dimensions in order to leave room for Job information, color bars, crop, fold and registration marks.

Changing Margin Defaults for all Press Sheet Sizes

In order to change margins defaults for all *Press Sheet* sizes, carry out the following step:

- Enter the new default margin dimensions into the *Left/Right/Top/Bottom* boxes; these parameters are applied to all *Press Sheet* sizes in the *Sheet Size List* box.


Setting Press Sheet Margins for Selected Press Sheet Sizes

In order to set *Press Sheet* margins for selected *Press Sheet* sizes, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the *Add* button; a *Sheet Size* box appears below the *Default* label.
- 2 Click inside the empty *Sheet Size* box; the *Define Sheet Size* dialog box appears.
- 3 In the dialog box, select the required sizes in order to specify new margin dimensions.
- 4 Click on *OK*; the selected sizes appear in the *Sheet Size* box.
- 5 Enter new margin parameters into the *Left/Right/Top/Bottom* boxes, when required.
- 6 Repeat the above steps in order to set margin dimensions for another sheet size.

Deleting Margin Settings

In order to delete margin settings, carry out the following step:

- Click on the *Delete*  button; the *Press Sheet* sizes are again assigned default margin parameters.

Note: In the *Press Sheet Sizes* dialog box, unchecked checkboxes (marked gray) indicate that new margins for these sizes have already been specified for another *Press Sheet* size.

Additional Color Bar

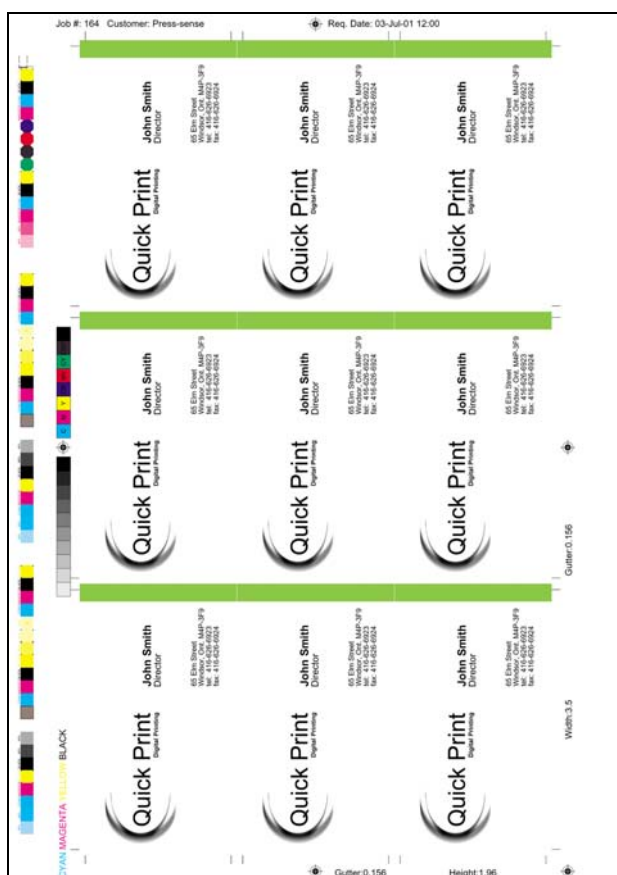


Figure 185: Additional Color Bar

In the *Color Bar File* dropdown boxes, the Print Provider selects a *Color Bar* type. The *Color Bar* dimensions and position can be set by the Print Provider.

Note: Ensure that the *Color Bar* fits into the *Press Sheet* margins and doesn't overlap the imposed Job pages.

By default, the imposition mechanism enters a color and gray scale *Color Bar*.

Selecting a Color Bar for the Press Sheet Margin

In order to select a *Color Bar* for the *Press Sheet* margin, carry out the following steps:

- 1 In the *Color Bar File* dropdown box, select and click on a *Color Bar* name.
- 2 When no *Color Bar* is desired, select *None*.
- 3 Click on *OK* to save the settings.

Note: In order to add *Color Bar* options to the dropdown box, copy and paste a new *Color Bar* file to *D:\NewEditon\lpane\Db\Imposition\Colorbars*. Click on the *Output Devices* tab to refresh the list; the Job name appears in the *Color Bar File* dropdown menu.

Press Setup Panel

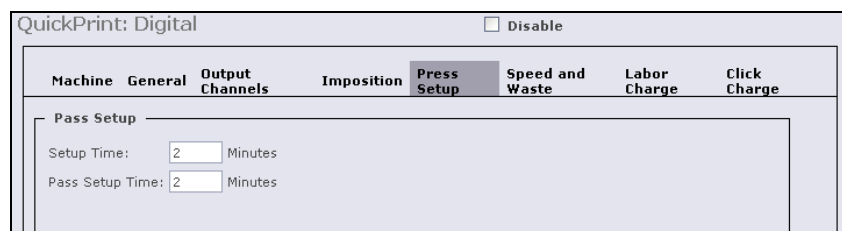


Figure 186: Press Setup Panel

The *Press Setup* pane contains the following elements:

- **Setup Time** – The time that elapses from the last good sheet of the previous Job until the first good sheet of the succeeding Job (also known as *Make Ready*).
- **Pass Setup Time** – Additional setup time for extra runs (overprinting and duplex).
- **Print Head Setup Time** – Time that is added to the *Pass Setup* time and is necessary for the setting up of each *Print Head* (Tower) in the *Press*.

Note: The *Print Head Setup Time* configuration is only available for *Offset* output devices.

In the *Press Setup* sub-panel, the Print Provider can enter the *Setup Time*, *Pass Setup Time*, and *Print Head Setup Time* definitions. *Setup Time* and *Pass Setup Time* settings can be entered for Digital printing, while *Print Head Setup Time* settings can be entered only for *Offset* and *Digital Offset* printing.

Entering the Press Setup Settings

In order to enter the *Press Setup* settings, carry out the following steps:

- 1 In the *Setup Time* field box, enter the setup time (in minutes) necessary for the initial output device setup.
- 2 In the *Pass Setup Time* field box, enter the amount of time necessary to carry out one pass.
- 3 In the *Print Head Setup Time* field box, enter the additional time needed to set up each print head, for each pass.

Speed and Waste

In the *Speed and Waste* panel, the Print Provider enters all speed and waste definitions. There are three independent *Speed and Waste* panels according to the three types of output devices: *Offset*, *Digital*, and *Copier*.

Offset Speed and Waste Panel

The *Offset Speed and Waste* panel is divided into the *Speed and Waste Definitions* panel and the *Production Factors* panels.

MDE_Offset: Offset ☐ Disable

General Output Channels Imposition Press Setup **Speed and Waste** Labor Charge

Speed and Waste Definitions

Fixed Waste: 0 run sheets

Run Length	Speed(Run Sheets per Hour)	Waste
Any	1	1 %

Add

Production Factors

	Speed Factor	Waste Factor
Process Colors:	100 %	100 %
Spot Colors:	100 %	100 %

Paper Weight	Speed Factor	Waste Factor
Any	100 %	100 %

Add

Figure 187: Offset Speed and Waste Panel

The following tables list and describe the *Offset Speed and Waste* pane elements:

Speed and Waste Definitions	Description
Fixed Waste	Used for entering a fixed amount of spoiled sheets resulting from color calibration and registration in pre-printing and in the printing process itself.
Run Length	The number of run sheets to be printed.
Speed	The number of run sheets to be printed per hour.
Waste	Wasted paper as a percentage of the run length.

Production Factors	Description
Speed Factor	<i>Process</i> and <i>Spot</i> color factors that affect the speed of the output devices.
Waste Factor	<i>Process</i> and <i>Spot</i> color factors that affect the waste of the output devices.
Paper Weight	Speed and waste determined according to paper weight.
Speed Factor	The speed factor that can be defined per paper weight.
Waste Factor	Paper weight factor that affects the waste of the output device.

Configuring the Speed and Waste Parameters

In order to configure the *Speed and Waste* parameters of an *Offset Device*, the Print Provider must carry out the following three steps:

- 1 Enter the *Speed* and *Waste* parameters, according to the *Run Length*.
- 2 Enter the *Production Factors*, according to the *Spot* and *Process Colors*.
- 3 Enter the *Production Factors*, according to *Paper Weight*.

Entering the Speed and Waste Parameters, According to the Run Length

In order to define *Run Length: Speed* and *Waste* parameters, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Enter into the *Fixed Waste* box, the approximate number of run sheets that are wasted as a result of output device adjustments, run sheet examination etc.
- 2 Enter into the *Run Length* box, the required number of copies.
- 3 Enter into the *Speed* box, the number of run sheets per hour for the specified *Run Length*.
- 4 Enter the waste percentage into the *Waste* box (this waste refers to run sheets that are wasted in the course of running the output device); the waste is a percentage of the number of printed copies (as defined in the *Run Length*).
- 5 In order to add additional *Run Lengths* and *Speed* and *Wastes* parameters, click on *Add* and carry out steps 2-4.

Note: When waste does not occur in a particular *Run Length*, enter 0 into the *Waste* box.

Entering the Production Factors, According to the Spot and Process Colors

Speed and *Waste* parameters can vary when *Process* or *Spot* colors are used. When *Process* or *Spot* colors do affect the *Speed* and *Waste Factors*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Enter into the *Speed Factor Process Colors* box, the percentage of speed reduction (i.e. in the above panel, 95% has been entered, thereby reducing the speed rate by 5%).
- 2 Enter into the *Speed Factor Spot Colors* box, the percentage of speed reduction (i.e. in the above panel, 90% has been entered, thereby reducing the speed rate by 10%).
- 3 Enter into the *Waste Factor Process Colors* box, the percentage of waste increase (i.e. in the above panel, 100% has been entered, therefore the amount of waste remains the same).
- 4 Enter into the *Waste Factor Spot Colors* box, the percentage of waste increase (i.e. in the above panel, 110% has been entered, therefore the amount of waste increases by 10%).

Note: When speed and waste do not change, enter 100 into the *Speed* and *Waste Factor* boxes.

Entering the Production Factors, According to Paper Weight

Speed and *Waste* can vary between the different paper weights. To add the necessary paper weights and their associated *Speed* and *Waste Factors*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Enter into the *Paper Weight* box, the weight of the paper.
- 2 Enter into the *Speed Factor* box, the percentage of speed reduction (i.e. in the first row of the above panel, 100% has been entered; therefore, there is no speed reduction. In the second row of the above panel, 90% has been entered; therefore, the speed has been reduced by 10%).
- 3 Enter into the *Waste Factor* box, the percentage of waste increase (i.e. in the first row of the above panel, 100% has been entered; therefore the amount of waste remains the same. In the second row of the above panel, 115% has been entered; therefore the amount of waste increases by 15%).
- 4 In order to add additional *Paper Weights* and *Speed* and *Waste Factors*, click on *Add* and carry out steps 1-3.

Note: For sheet waste definitions, use only whole numbers. Do not add decimals or the percentage sign (%) into the box.

Caution: Define at least one speed for the output device. When no speed has been defined, pricing cannot be carried out for this *Output Device*.

Digital Speed and Waste Panel

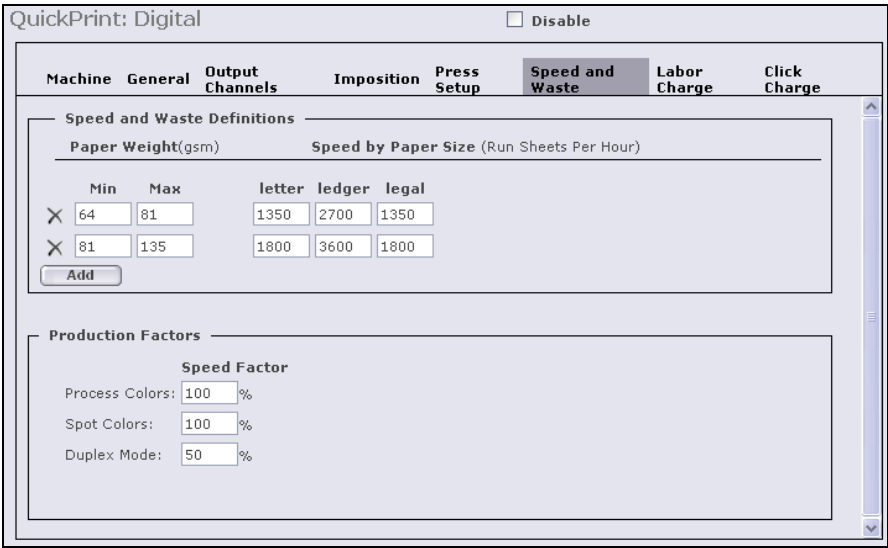


Figure 188: Digital Speed and Waste Panel

The following tables list and describe *Digital Speed and Waste* panel elements:

Speed and Waste Definitions	Description
Paper Weight (gsm)	Minimum and maximum paper weight, as specified by the output device. <i>Note:</i> When setting the <i>Minimum</i> to <i>Maximum</i> value, the maximum value itself is not included.
Speed by Paper Size (Run Sheets Per Hour)	Speed of the run sheets (per hour) according to the paper weight, as specified by the output device manufacturer. <i>Note:</i> The <i>Sheets per Hour</i> boxes reflect the <i>Press Sheet Size</i> selection in the <i>Settings: Output Devices/General</i> panel.

Production Factors	Description
Speed Factor	<i>Process</i> and <i>Spot</i> color and <i>Duplex Mode</i> factors that affect the speed of the output device.

In order to configure the *Speed* parameters of a *Digital* output device , the Print Provider must carry out the following two steps:

- 1 Enter the *Speed* parameters according to the paper weights.
- 2 Enter the *Production Factors* according to the *Spot* and *Process Colors* and the *Duplex Mode*.

Entering the Speed Parameters According to the Paper Weights

Speed can vary between the different paper weights. To add the necessary paper weights and their associated *Speed Factors*, carry out the following steps:

- 1** Enter into the *Paper Weight* box, the minimum and maximum paper weight.
- 2** Enter into the *Speed by Paper Size* box, the number of run sheets per hour for the specified *Paper Weight*.
- 3** In order to add additional paper weights and *Speed* parameters, click on *Add* and carry out Steps 1 and 2.

Entering Production Factors: Spot Colors, Process Colors and Duplex Mode

Speed parameters can vary when *Process* or *Spot Colors* or the *Duplex Mode* are used. When *Process* or *Spot* colors or the *Duplex Mode* do affect the *Speed* factor, carry out the following step:

- Enter into the *Speed Factor* box, the percentage of speed reduction (i.e. in *Process Colors*, 100% has been entered; therefore, there is no speed reduction. In *Spot Colors*, 90% has been entered; therefore, the speed has been reduced by 10%. In *Duplex Mode*, 50% has been entered; therefore, the speed has been reduced by 50%).

Note: For *Paper Weight* and *Speed by Paper Size* definitions use only whole numbers. Do not add decimals or the percentage sign (%) into the box.

Copier Speed and Waste Panel

PanMark: Copier

☐ Disable

General

Output Channels

Imposition

Press Setup

Speed and Waste

Labor Charge

Click Charge

Speed and Waste Definitions

Paper Weight(gsm)

Speed by Paper Size (Run Sheets Per Hour)

Min

Max

A3

A4

letter

8.5 x 11

Add

Production Factors

Speed Factor

Process Colors: 100 %

Duplex Mode: 50 %

Figure 189: Copier Speed and Waste Panel

The following tables list and describe *Copier Speed and Waste* panel elements:

Speed Definitions	Description
Paper Weight (gsm)	Minimum and maximum paper weight as specified by the output device.
Speed by Paper Size (Run Sheets Per Hour)	Speed of the run sheets (per hour) according to the paper weight, as specified by the output device. <i>Note:</i> The <i>Sheets per Hour</i> boxes reflect the <i>Press Sheet</i> size selection in the <i>Press Sheet Setup</i> panel.

Production Factors	Description
Speed Factor	<i>Process</i> and <i>Duplex Mode</i> color factors that affect the speed of the output device.

In order to configure the *Speed* parameters of a *Copier* output device, the Print Provider must carry out the following two steps:

- 1 Enter the *Speed* parameters according to the paper weights.
- 2 Enter the *Production Factors* according to the *Process Colors* and the *Duplex Mode*.

Entering the Speed Parameters According to the Paper Weights

Speed can vary between the different paper weights. To add the necessary paper weights and their associated *Speed Factors*, carry out the following steps:

- 1** Enter into the *Paper Weight* box, the minimum and maximum paper weight.
- 2** Enter into the *Speed by Paper Size* box, the number of run sheets per hour for the specified *Paper Weight*.
- 3** In order to add additional paper weights and *Speed* parameters, click on *Add* and carry out Steps 1 and 2.

Entering Production Factors: Process Colors and the Duplex Mode

Speed parameters can vary when *Process Colors* or the *Duplex Mode* are used. When *Process Colors* or the *Duplex Mode* do affect the *Speed* factor, carry out the following step:

- Enter into the *Speed Factor* box, the percentage of speed reduction (i.e. in *Process Colors*, 100% has been entered; therefore, there is no speed reduction. In *Duplex Mode*, 50% has been entered; therefore, the speed has been reduced by 50%).

Note: For *Paper Weight* and *Speed by Paper Size* definitions use only whole numbers. Do not add decimals or the percentage sign (%) into the box.

Labor Charge Panel

In the *Labor Charge* panel, the Print Provider enters the cost of labor for each specific output device. There are two distinct *Labor Charge* panels:

- Digital Labor Charge panel
- Offset Labor Charge panel

Digital Labor Charge Panel

MDE: Copier ☐ Disable

General	Output Channels	Imposition	Press Setup	Speed and Waste	Labor Charge	Click Charge
<div>Mark-up: 10 % <small>Note: 0% signifies that there is no mark-up on cost</small></div> <div>Labor Cost: 20 (\$ Per Hour)</div> <div>Min Labor: 2 Minutes</div>						

Figure 190: Digital Labor Charge Panel

The *Digital Labor Charge* panel is composed of the following elements:

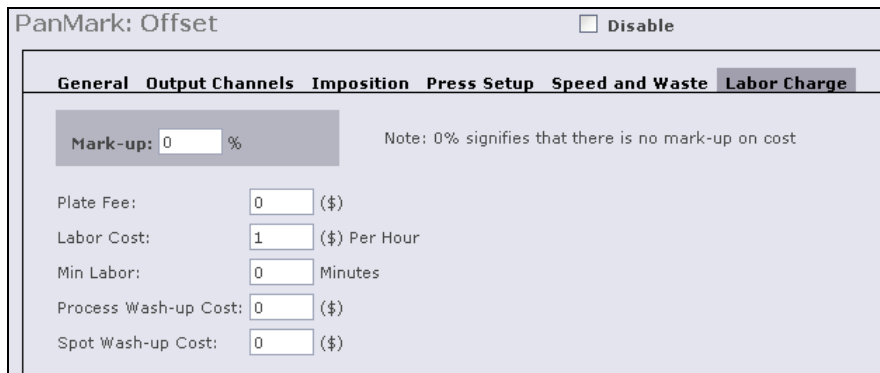
- **Mark-up** – *Labor* surcharge, as a percentage
- **Labor Cost/Hour** – The cost of labor per hour, as determined by the Print Provider
- **Min Labor** – The minimum amount of labor that is charged by the Print Provider

Entering Digital Labor Charge Parameters

In order to enter *Digital Labor Charge* parameters, carry out the following steps:

- 1 In *Mark-up*, enter the increase in the Job’s cost, due to labor, in a percentage.
- 2 Enter the cost of labor, per hour.
- 3 Enter minimum amount of labor that is charged by the Print Provider.
- 4 Click on *OK*, to save the parameters.

Offset Labor Charge Panel



PanMark: Offset ☐ Disable

General **Output Channels** **Imposition** **Press Setup** **Speed and Waste** **Labor Charge**

Mark-up: 0 % Note: 0% signifies that there is no mark-up on cost

Plate Fee: 0 (\$)

Labor Cost: 1 (\$) Per Hour

Min Labor: 0 Minutes

Process Wash-up Cost: 0 (\$)

Spot Wash-up Cost: 0 (\$)

Figure 191: Offset Labor Charge Panel

The *Offset Labor Charge* panel is composed of the following elements:

- **Mark-up** – Increase in the *Labor* cost, as a percentage
- **Plate Fee**– Cost of creating and setting up the plate
- **Labor Cost/Hour** – The cost of labor per hour, as determined by the Print Provider
- **Min Labor** – The minimum amount of labor that is charged by the Print Provider
- **Process Wash-up Cost** – The cost of cleaning the output device after printing with *Process* colors
- **Spot Wash-up Cost** – The cost of cleaning the output device after printing with *Spot* colors

Entering Offset Labor Charge Parameters

In order to enter *Offset Labor Charge* parameters, carry out the following steps:

- 1 In *Mark-up*, enter the increase in the Job's cost, due to labor, as a percentage.
- 2 Enter the plate fee.
- 3 Enter the cost of labor, per hour.
- 4 Enter minimum amount of labor that is charged by the Print Provider.
- 5 Enter the *Process* and *Spot* color wash-up costs.
- 6 Click on *OK*, to save the parameters.

Click Charge Panel

MDE: Copier ☐ Disable

General	Output Channels	Imposition	Press Setup	Speed and Waste	Labor Charge	Click Charge
---------	-----------------	------------	-------------	-----------------	--------------	--------------

Mark-up: 0 %

Note: 0% signifies that there is no mark-up on cost

Click Cost (\$)

	A3	A4	letter
Color Page:	0	0	0
B/W Page:	0	0	0

Figure 192: Click Charge Panel

In the *Click Charge* panel, the Print Provider enters the charge levied each time that a specific output device prints a page.

Note: There is no *Click Charge* for *Offset* output devices.

The *Click Charge* panel is composed of the following elements:

- **Mark-up** – Increase in the Job’s cost, as a percentage
- **Color Page Click Cost** – Cost levied, per page, each time the output device prints a page
- **B/W Page Click Cost** – Cost levied, per page, each time the output device prints a page

Entering Click Charge Parameters

In order to enter *Click Charge* parameters, carry out the following steps:

- 1 In *Mark-up*, enter the increase in the Job’s cost, due to labor, as a percentage.
- 2 Enter the cost levied each time the output device is used to print a colored page.
- 3 Enter the cost levied each time the output device is used to print a b/w page.
- 4 Click on *OK*, to save the parameters.

Note: When the *Click Charge* is not part of the total cost, a zero value must be entered.

Section IV: Stock

Stock Library											
Search: All		Search		Import Stock		Export Stock		Advanced Search		Column Selection	
Catalog ID	Stock Item Name	FrontCoating	Texture	Color	Weight(gsm)	Size	Thickness	In Stock	Cost(\$)	Cost Units	Markup
12345	Test-Gloss	Glossy	Smooth	White	216	A0	241	True	29.0000	150.0000	5
67890	Test-Laid	None	Smooth	White	217	A0	241	True	20.0000	150.0000	5
stock-3	Coated;Gloss;Test-Gloss;White;150	Coated	Gloss	White	150	A0	3	True	100.0000	1000.0000	0.2
stock-4	Uncoated;Laid;Test-Laid;White;80	Uncoated	Laid	White	80	A0	43	True	100.0000	1000.0000	0.2
stock-5	Coated;Gloss;Test-Gloss;White;150	Coated	Gloss	White	150	A0		True	100.0000	1000.0000	0.2
stock-6	Uncoated;Laid;Test-Laid;White;80	Uncoated	Laid	White	80	A0		True	100.0000	1000.0000	0.2
stock-6	Copy Of Uncoated;Laid;Test-Laid;White;80	Uncoated	Laid	White	80	A0		True	100.0000	1000.0000	0.2
stock-16	Coated;Gloss;Test-Gloss;White;150	Coated	Gloss	White	150	A0		True	100.0000	1000.0000	0.2
stock-17	Uncoated;Laid;Test-Laid;White;80	Uncoated	Laid	White	80	A0		True	100.0000	1000.0000	0.2

Figure 193: Stock Window

Stock

Stock facilitates defining, for the *FreeFlow Web Services* system, all paper and other saleable items stored at the Print Providers facilities.

Stock is composed of the following elements:

- **Search Field** Dropdown menu displaying all of the attributes of the *Stock Library*, including the customized fields.
- **Search Value** For all values selected from a predefined range: Vendor, Coating, Texture, Grade, Color, Size, In-stock, etc.
- **Search Button**
- **Import Stock Link** Accesses the *Import Stock* dialog box
- **Export Stock Link** Accesses the *Export Stock* dialog box
- **Advanced Search Link** Accesses the *Advanced Search* dialog box for carrying a very narrow *Stock Item* search
- **Column Selection Link** Accesses the *Column Selection* dialog box for selecting and placing appropriate columns in the *Stock* window
- **New Button** Accesses the *New Item* dialog box
- **Duplicate Button** Enables duplicating a selected *Stock* item
- **Edit Button** Accesses the *Edit Item* dialog box
- **Delete Button** Enables deleting a selected *Stock* item

Import Stock

Import Stock accesses the *Import Stock* dialog box and enables importing a CSV (Comma Separated Values) file containing lists of stock items.

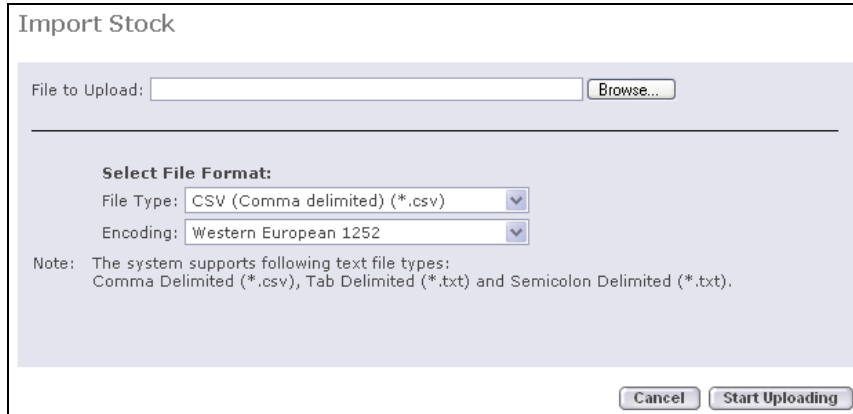


Figure 194: Import Stock

To import a CSV file of stock items, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Enter or browse to the target CSV file.
- 2 Select the appropriate *File Type* and *Encoding* and then click on *Start Uploading*; the *Import Database* window appears.

Note: The *Import Database* dialog box includes the following two options, of which one must be selected:

- Overwrite database
- Add to existing database

- 3 Map the appropriate stock item names to the *Stock Fields* and then click on *Next*; the *Import Finished* window appears;

Export Stock

Export Stock enables generating an excel file listing all of the stock items stored in the *Web Services* system. From the *Excel* file, the user can select target items for export.

New/Edit

The screenshot shows a 'New Item' dialog box with the following fields and options:

- Name:** Text input field.
- Catalog ID:** Text input field.
- In Stock:** A checked checkbox.
- Brand Name:** Dropdown menu showing 'RoyalDeluxe' with an 'Edit List' link.
- Type:** Dropdown menu showing 'Paper' with an 'Edit List' link.
- Vendor:** Dropdown menu showing 'Royal Paper Products' with an 'Edit List' link.
- Front Coating:** Dropdown menu showing 'None' with an 'Edit List' link.
- Back Coating:** Dropdown menu showing 'None' with an 'Edit List' link.
- Texture:** Dropdown menu showing 'Smooth' with an 'Edit List' link.
- Grade:** Dropdown menu showing 'Gloss-coated paper' with an 'Edit List' link.
- Color:** Dropdown menu showing 'White' with an 'Edit List' link.
- Weight(gsm):** Text input field.
- US Weight:** Text input field.
- Size:** Dropdown menu showing 'A0'.
- Thickness(ppi):** Text input field.
- Cost(\$):** Text input field.

Figure 195: New/Edit Dialog Box

When clicking on the *New* button, the *Edit Stock Item* dialog box appears without any parameters. When clicking on the *Edit* button, the *Edit Stock Item* dialog box appears with parameters displayed for the purpose of editing.

The *New/Edit* dialog box is composed of the following elements:

- **Edit List Link** Accesses the *Edit List* dialog box which enables adding appropriate options to or deleting appropriate options from the associated dropdown menu
Note: Selected *Item Values* appear in the associated dropdown menu. Clearing a selected checkbox conceals the *Item* in the associated dropdown menu.
- **Name** Text box for entering the name of the *Stock Item*.
- **Catalog ID** Text box for the name or number of the *Stock Item*, as determined by the Print Provider
- **In Stock** The checkbox is selected by default. The selected checkbox indicates that the stock item is available in the stock. When the stock item is not available, the checkbox must be disabled
- **Brand Name** Brand name of the *Item*
- **Type** Dropdown menu for selecting the type of *Stock Item* (i.e. Paper, Mug, Envelop etc,)
- **Vendor** Dropdown menu for selecting the vendor name.
- **Front Coating** Appears for *Paper* types only
- **Back Coating** Appears for *Paper* types only
- **Texture** Dropdown menu for selecting the vendor name. Appears for *Paper* types only
- **Grade** Dropdown menu for selecting the grade name. Appears for *Paper* types only
- **Edit Grade Link** Accesses the *Edit Grade* dialog box which enables adding or deleting the *Grade* names that will appear in the *Grade* dropdown menu
- **Color** Dropdown menu for selecting the color name
- **Weight (gsm)** Weight of the *Stock Item*. For paper, refers to prepress sheet weight for the given brand and color. Weight is measured in gsm.

- **US Weight** The weight of the *Stock Item*, in the US weight system
- **Size** Dropdown menu for selecting the *Stock Item* size
- **Thickness** Refers to the thickness of the paper sheet (ppi).
- **Cost (\$)** The actual cost of the given number of *Stock Items* defined in the *Cost Units* box, including color and weight specifications
- **Cost Units** The quantity of *Stock Items* of the defined color, weight and size. The *Stock Items* are priced according to this quantity
- **Markup** Allows the Print Provider to enter a *Markup* amount

Buttons

- **Save** Saves all changes without closing the dialog box
- **Close** Reverts the *Stock Item* values back to the values before the changes were made and then closes the dialog box

Section V: Finishing

System Administrator, System Admin

General Site Output Devices Stock **Finishing** Shipping Integrations

FreeFlow Web Services

Pricing Setup: Finishing

Select Finishing Type:

- Cutting
- Collating
- Drilling
- Folding
- Numbering
- Stapling
- Perfect Binding
- Comb Binding
- Laminating

Cutting ☐ Disabled

	Setup(\$)	Cut Setup(\$)	Cut Cost(\$)	Cut Depth(Inches)
Run Sheets:	2.00	2.00	0.10	2
Parent Sheets:	2.00	2.00	0.10	2

OK

Figure 196: Finishing

The *Finishing* window enables the Print Provider to configure the pricing information for all supported finishing types.

The *Finishing* window is composed of the following elements:

- **Finishing Type Pane** – Displays the list of *Finishing* types supported by *FreeFlow Web Services*.
- **Pricing Set-up Panels** – Allows the Print Provider to define settings, separately for each *Finishing* type.
- **OK Button** – Saves all the settings.

Note: Do not enter any settings for a *Finishing* type that is not supported. When supporting a *Finishing* type, complete all of the boxes in the corresponding *Finishing Setup* panel.

Finishing Type Pane

The *Finishing Type* pane contains a fixed list of finishing types currently supported by the system. Clicking on a finishing type opens a *Pricing Set-up* panel for the selected finishing type.

Pricing Setup Panels

In the *Pricing Set-up* panels, the Print Provider enters the finishing cost values. When using *Generic Price Generation* (of production costs), the algorithm takes into account these cost values while calculating the Job price.

Cutting

The Print Provider enters cutting cost values into the *Cutting* panel. The cutting cost values for *Run* (press) sheets and for the *Parent Sheets* are entered separately.

Defining Cutting Cost Values

In order to enter cutting cost values, carry out the following steps:

- 1 In the *Setup* box, enter the set-up cost for preparing the cutting machine.
- 2 In the *Cut Setup* box, enter the cost of setting up the cutting machine for each cut.
- 3 In the *Cut Cost* box, enter the cost of the cut.
- 4 In the *Cut Depth* box, enter the depth of the cut.

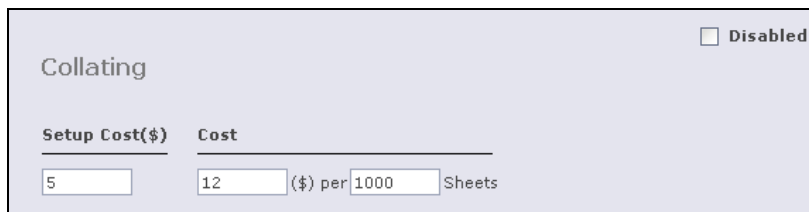
Defining Cutting Cost Values: Detailed Example

The following steps serve as an example and describe the above detailed example:

- 1 2000 *Press Sheets* of the *SRA4* size have been printed.
- 2 The *SRA4* size should be trimmed to *A4*. The cutting machine can cut 500 *SRA4* at a time.
- 3 To trim 2000 *SRA4* into 2000 *A4*, the cutting machine must be set to a different cutting position four times.
- 4 Each cutting position setup costs 2.00.
- 5 There are four batches of 500 *SRA4*, four cuts for each batch are needed: the total number of the required cuts is 16.
- 6 Each cut costs 0.10.

The total cutting price calculated by the system = $2.00 + (2 \times 4) + (0.10 \times 16) = 11.6$

Collating



Collating ☐ Disabled

Setup Cost(\$) Cost

5 12 (\$) per 1000 Sheets

Figure 197: Collating

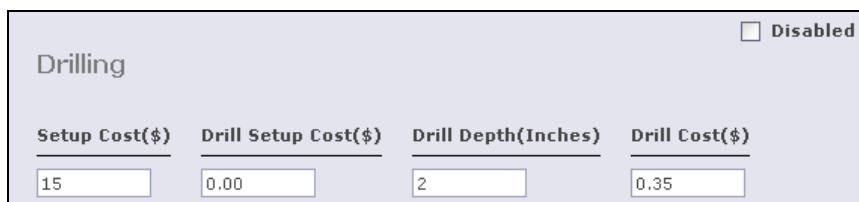
In the *Collating* panel the Print Provider defines cost values for collating.

Defining Collating Cost Values

In order to enter collating cost values, carry out the following steps:

- 1 In the *Setup Cost* box, enter the cost of setting up the collating machine, if needed.
- 2 In the *Cost per Sheets* box, enter the cost of sorting the given number of trimmed pages.
- 3 In the *Sheets* box, enter the number of sorted pages.

Drilling



Drilling ☐ Disabled

Setup Cost(\$) Drill Setup Cost(\$) Drill Depth(Inches) Drill Cost(\$)

15 0.00 2 0.35

Figure 198: Drilling

In the *Drilling* panel the Print Provider defines cost values for drilling.

Defining Drilling Cost Values

In order to enter drilling cost values, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Enter the total setup charges into the *Set-up Cost* box.
- 2 In the *Drill Setup Cost* box, enter the cost of setting up the drill.
- 3 In the *Drill Depth* box, enter the drill depth.
- 4 In *Drill Cost*, enter the cost of drilling.

Folding

Disabled

Folding

Setup Cost(\$)	Fold Setup Cost(\$)	Cost
25	10.00	1.00 (\$ per 100 Sheets

Figure 199: Folding

In the *Folding* panel, the Print Provider enters folding cost values.

Defining Folding Cost Values

In order to enter folding cost values, carry out the following steps:

- 1 In the *Setup Cost* box, enter the cost of setting up the folding machine.
- 2 In the *Fold Setup Cost* box, enter the cost of setting up one fold.
- 3 In the *Cost* box, enter the folding cost according the number of sheets.
- 4 In the *Sheets* box, enter the number sheets to be folded.

Numbering

Disabled

Numbering

	Set-up Cost(\$)	Cost
Regular:	15	2.00 (\$ per 100 Sheets
Crash Numbering:	15	3.00 (\$ per 100 Sheets

Figure 200: Numbering

In the *Numbering* panel, the Print Provider enters numbering cost values. These values are separate for regular and crash numbering types, depending on what numbering type the finishing device supports.

Defining Numbering Cost Values

In order to enter numbering cost values, carry out the following steps:

- 1 In the *Setup Cost* box, enter the setup cost of the numbering machine.
- 2 In the *Cost* box, enter the number cost according to the number of sheets.
- 3 For regular numbering, enter the quantity of numbered sheets into the *Sheets* box.
- 4 Repeat the above steps in order to enter the settings for crash numbering.

Stapling

	Setup Cost(\$)	Staple Setup Cost(\$)	
Flat:	35	0.0	Cost
Saddle Stitching:	35	0.0	Cost

Figure 201: Stapling

In the *Stapling* panel, the Print Provider enters stapling cost values, separately for *Flat* (side and corner) and mechanical *Saddle* stitching.

Defining Stapling Cost Values

In order to enter *Flat Stapling* cost values, carry out the following steps:

- 1 In the *Setup Cost* box, enter the cost for setting up *Flat Stapling*.
- 2 In the *Staples Setup Cost* box, enter the cost of setting up stapling per staple.

In order to enter *Saddle Stitching* stapling cost values, carry out the following steps:

- 1 In the *Setup Cost* box, enter the cost for setting up *Saddle Stitching* stapling.
- 2 In the *Staples Set-up Cost* box, enter the cost of setting up *Saddle Stitching* stapling per staple.

Perfect Binding

	Setup Cost(\$)	Cost(\$)
Hot:	15	0.50
Cold:	15	5.00

Figure 202: Perfect Binding

In the *Perfect Binding* panel, the Print Provider enters the perfect binding cost values, depending on the adhesive, for adhering folded and gathered sections together with the cover. 'Hot' and 'Cold' refer to the gluing method.

Defining Perfect Binding Cost Values

In order to enter *Perfect Binding Cost* values, carry out the following steps:

- 1 In the *Setup Cost* box, enter the machine setup charges for hot glue or cold glue binding.
- 2 In the *Cost* box, enter the cost for perfect bindings.

Comb Binding

Comb Binding ☐ Disabled

Setup Cost(\$)

Plastic: 15 Cost

Aluminum: 15 Cost

Gold: 15 Cost

Figure 203: Comb Binding

In the *Comb Binding* panel, the Print Provider enters the comb binding cost values, separately for plastic, aluminum and gold combs.

Defining Comb Binding Cost Values

In order to enter comb binding cost values, carry out the following steps:

- 1 In the *Cost Setup* box, define the setup cost of the comb-binding machine.
- 2 Click on the *Cost* button; the *Comb Binding Cost* dialog box appears.

Comb Binding Cost: Plastic

Bulk(Inches)	Cost(\$)
5	0.50
6	0.50

Add Row Remove Last Row

OK Cancel

Figure 204: Comb Binding Cost Dialog Box

- 3 Enter the thickness of one Job item that is to be comb bound.
- 4 Enter the cost of comb binding one Job item.
- 5 Click on *OK* to confirm the parameters and exit the dialog box.

Laminating

Laminating		<input type="checkbox"/> Disabled
Setup Cost(\$)	Cost (One Side)	
Gloss: 15	0.10 (\$)	per 1 Sheets
Matt: 15	0.10 (\$)	per 1 Sheets

Figure 205: Laminating

In the *Laminating* panel, the Print Provider defines cost values, separately for gloss and matt lamination of the front sheet side.

Defining Laminating Cost Values

In order to enter laminating cost values, carry out the following steps:

- 1 In the *Set-up Cost* box, enter the cost of setting up the laminating machine.
- 2 In the *Cost* box, enter the cost of lamination.
- 3 In *Sheets*, enter the number of sheets that the lamination cost has been calculated to.
- 4 Repeat the above steps when the machine supports matt lamination.

Disabling a Finishing Type

The Print Provider can disable any or all of the *Finishing* types. To disable a *Finishing* type, carry out the following step:

- Select the *Disabled* checkbox.

Saving the Finishing Settings

In order to save the settings, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Ensure that there are no empty fields.
- 2 Click on *OK* at the bottom of the window in order to save the finishing settings before exiting the *Price List* panels.

Section VI: Shipping

Shipping is composed of the following two tabbed windows:

- Carriers
- Shipping Methods
- Shipping Method Groups

Carriers Window

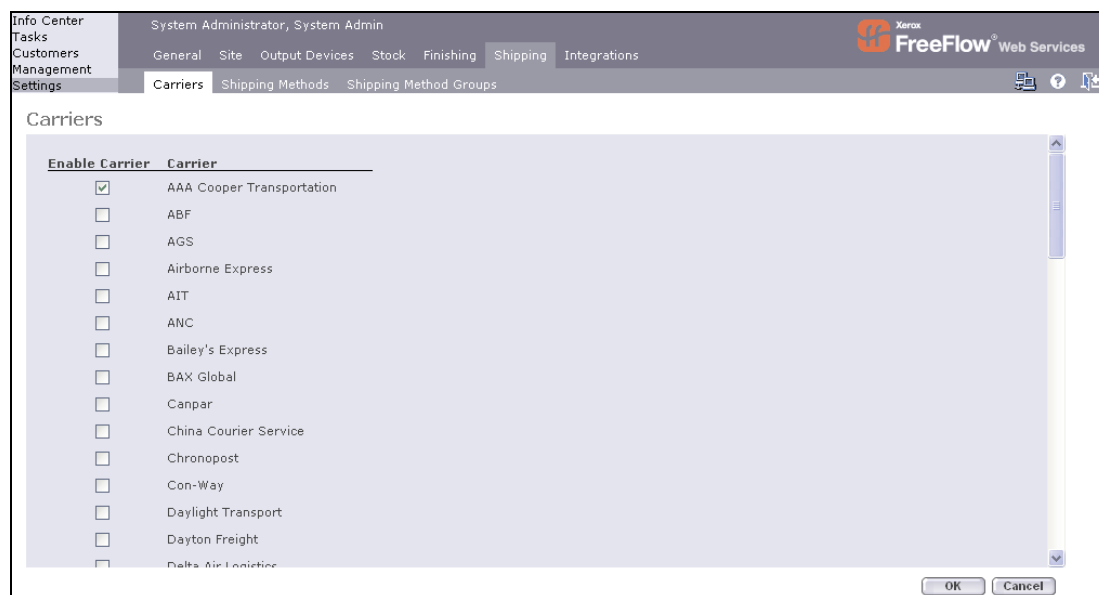


Figure 206: Carriers Window

The *Carriers* window displays a closed list of international carriers that provide tracking as part of their online service. To enable *Carrier Tracking* for one or more of the carriers, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Select the checkbox(es) adjacent to the target carrier(s).
- 2 Click on *OK*, to save the selection(s).

Shipping Methods

Shipping Methods facilitates integration with such carriers as *FedEx*, *USPS*, *DHL* and *UPS* in order to enable receiving online shipping costs and schedules and to track the movements of the shipments.

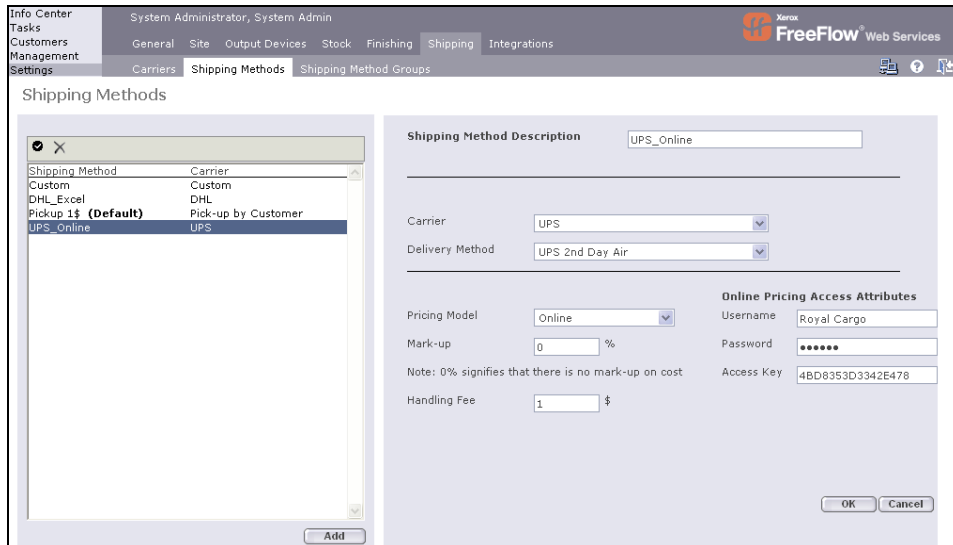


Figure 207: Shipping Methods

The *Shipping Methods* window is divided into the following two sections:

- **The Shipping Method Pane** – Located on the left side and containing the *New Shipping Method* name queue
- **The Shipping Method Description Panel** – Located on the right side and containing the *Name*, *Carrier*, *Price Model*, and *Handling Fee* fields

To set up a new shipping method, carry out the following steps:

- 1 In the *Shipping Method* pane, click on *Add*; the *New Shipping Method* name appears in the queue.
- 2 In the *Shipping Method Description* panel, enter a *Description* name; this name automatically replaces the name in the *Shipping Method* pane.
- 3 In the *Carrier* dropdown box, select an appropriate carrier.
- 4 Depending on the carrier, in the *Delivery Method* dropdown box, select the appropriate method.
- 5 In the *Pricing Model* dropdown box, select a pricing model.

Note: When selecting the *Excel* pricing model:

1. The *Excel File* link appears for accessing the *Pricing Excel File* dialog box and downloading *Excel* files; the downloaded *Excel* files will appear in the *Excel File* dropdown box.
2. The *Markup* field appears
- 6 Where appropriate, select a *Pricing Excel* file.
- 7 Where appropriate, enter a *Markup* percentage.
- 8 Click on *OK* to save the settings.

Shipping Method Groups

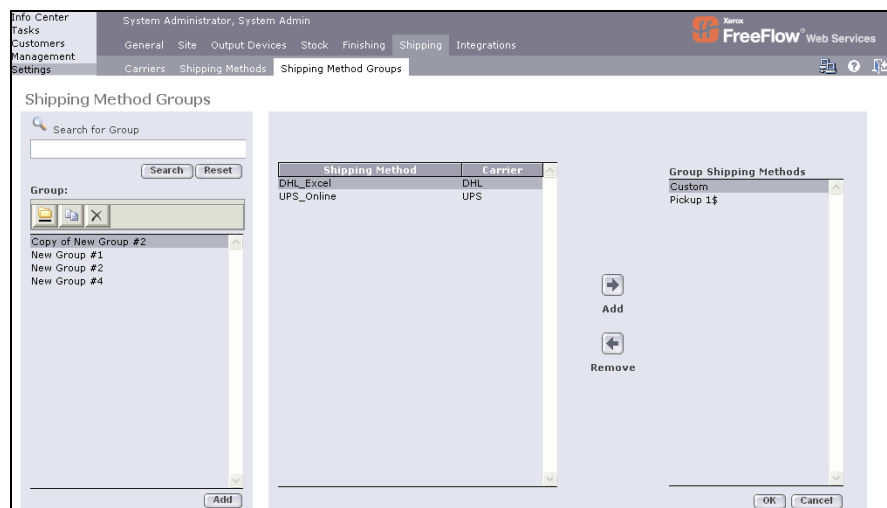


Figure 208: Shipping Method Groups

Shipping Method Groups allows the Print Provider to define groups of shipping methods from among the various available shipping methods defined in the *Shipping Methods* window. Specific groups can then be made available to the Print Buyer during the Job ordering procedure, via the *Customers/Account Shipping Method Groups* window.

Shipping Method Groups is composed of the following three panes:

- **Groups** Lists the various *Shipping Method* groups
- **Shipping Method/Carrier** A list of the *Shipping Method/Carriers* as defined in *Shipping Methods*
- **Group Shipping Methods** List of *Shipping Methods* available to the specific group

Groups

The *Groups* pane is composed of the following elements:

- **Search Engine** Enables narrowing the *Group* list down to one or more *Shipping Method* groups
- **Rename Button** Enables renaming a *Shipping Method* group
- **Copy Button** Enables duplicating the selected *Shipping Method* group
- **Delete Button** Enables deleting the selected *Shipping Method* group
- **Add** Adds a new group to the *Group* list

To create a *Shipping Method Group*, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on *Add*, to add a new group to the list; a list of *Shipping Methods/Carriers* appears in the *Shipping Method/Carrier* pane.
- 2 Select a *Shipping Method/Carrier* and click on *Add*; the *Shipping Method/Carrier* is transferred to the *Group Shipping Methods* pane.
- 3 Repeat previous step for each additional *Shipping Method/Carrier*.
- 4 Click on *OK* to save the settings.

Section VII: Integrations

Integrations is composed of the following windows:

- Data Export
- Credit Card
- External Systems
- Import/Export Resources

Data Export

The screenshot shows the 'Data Export' window within the 'FreeFlow Web Services' application. The window has a title bar with 'System Administrator, System Admin' and a menu bar with 'General', 'Site', 'Output Devices', 'Stock', 'Finishing', 'Shipping', and 'Integrations'. The 'Integrations' menu is open, showing 'Data Export', 'Credit Card', 'External Systems', and 'Import/Export Resources'. The 'Data Export' window itself has a title bar and a list of four external systems, each with an 'Enable' checkbox and a 'Folder Path' text field. The systems are: Nerve: Get Quote, Nerve: Job Order, Nerve: Edit Imposition, and Nerve: Job Shipped. All checkboxes are unchecked, and all folder paths are 'd:\temp'. An 'OK' button is at the bottom right.

Figure 209: Data Export

Data Export facilitates the integration of *FreeFlow Web Services* with various peripheral systems existing in the Print Provider organization (such as *Accounting* and *Estimation*). Transference of information from the *Web Services* database to a peripheral system is accomplished by enabling any or all of the four *External Systems* and by entering a *Folder* path for each independent COM object (transference also requires a third-party integrator who will write the COM object).

Note: *Data Export* is an option that is purchased independently and in addition to the *Web Services* system.

The following four *External Systems* can be enabled or disabled. When enabled, the *System* information is stored in a folder that is placed at the end of a *Folder Path*, as determined by the Print Provider:

- Get Quote
- Job Order
- Edit Imposition
- Job Shipped

Get Quote Link

The *Get Quote* link is activated when a Print Buyer requests a price for one or more Jobs in the *Web Services Shopping Cart*, by clicking on the *Get Quote* button.

Job Order Link

The *Job Order* link is activated when the Print Buyer places an order by clicking on the *Place the Order* button in the *Order Confirmation* window.

Edit Imposition Link

The *Edit Imposition* link is activated when the Print Provider *User* re-imposes the Job in the *Production* queue.

Job Shipped Link

The *Job Shipped* link is activated when the Print Provider *User* approves Jobs for shipping in the *Delivery* window by clicking on the *Approve Selected Deliveries* button.

Credit Card

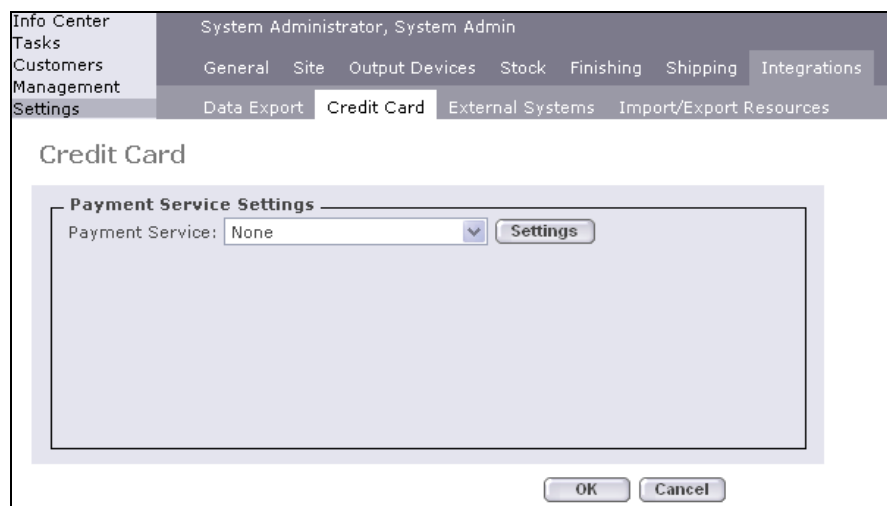


Figure 210: Credit Card

Credit Card enables Print Buyers to pay for Print Provider services using an online payment service. *Credit Card* will be available according to licensing authorization. After the *Payment Service* has been set, the *Payment Method* checkboxes will be enabled in the *Preference* panel of *Management/Customers*.

Currently, *Web Services* supports *Credit Card* payment through several recognized companies.

Note: Documentation for the various *Credit Card* companies can be acquired through your local distributor.

External Systems

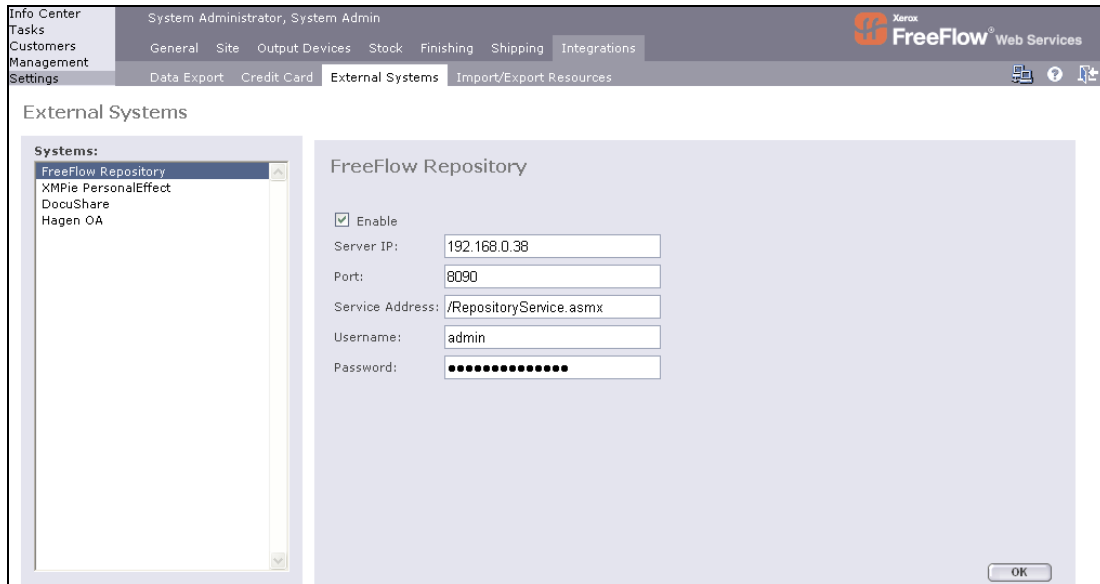


Figure 211: External Systems

External Systems enables integrating *Web Services* with other systems located within the overall Print Provider system.

External Systems is divided into the following two sections:

- **Systems Pane** – Displays the names of all of the systems that can be integrated with the system.
- **External Systems Data Panel** – Contains various open fields for entering such data as *Server IP*, *Username*, *Password* etc.

To enable an external system, carry out the following steps:

- 1 In the *Systems* pane, select a target system.
- 2 In the *External Systems Data* panel, select the *Enable* checkbox and enter into the various fields the appropriate data as received from the company providing the external system.

Import/Export Resources

Figure 212: Import/Export Resources

Import/Export Resources enables the Print Provider to export and import a Print Buyer account with all of its resources (such as templates).

Note: The *Import/Export Customer Account* functionality is enabled by the Print Provider administrator only.

Import/Export Resources is composed of the following elements:

Buttons

- Download Job
- Download Template of the Job
- Export Job
- Download Template
- Export Template
- Refresh Icons
- Import Job
- Sync Templates in Database
- Export Customer Account
- Import Customer Account

Fields and Checkboxes

- Include Resources in Downloads checkbox
- Enter Job # Field
- Enter Template Path Field

Download Job/Template

To download a Job, download a template of a Job or to export a Job to another destination, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Enter the relevant Job #.
- 2 Click on the appropriate button and carry out the instructions in the windows that appear.

Download Template/Export Template/Refresh Icons

To download a template, export a template of a Job or refresh icon, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Enter the relevant template path.
- 2 Click on the appropriate button and carry out the instructions in the windows that appear.

Import Job

To import a Job, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on *Import Job*; the *Import Job* dialog box appears.
- 2 Select the target customer from the dropdown box and click on *Upload Job*; the *Upload File* dialog box appears.

To upload a single file, continue with the following steps:

- 1 Click on the *Single File* radio button, browse to the target zip file and then click on *Continue*; the *Upload Report* appears.
- 2 Click on *Close*.

To upload a multiple file, continue with the following steps:

- 1 Click on the *Multiple File* radio button and carry out the instructions.
- 2 Click on *Continue*; the *Upload Report* appears.
- 3 Click on *Close*.

Sync Templates in Database

After templates have been downloaded to the system, click on *Sync Templates in Database*, in order to add the templates to the system database. When clicking on *Sync Templates in Database*, a report appears, displaying all of the templates and their paths.

Export/Import Customer Account

Export Customer Account enables creating a zip file containing all of the parameters a specific customer. This zip file can then be exported to another server.

Import Customer Account enables importing an already-created package of information into the system.

Chapter Seven: Appendix

Server and Client Specifications

Server Specifications

The following is the minimum recommended configuration for the *FreeFlow Web Services* server installed at the Print Provider's facility.

Hardware

- IBM Compatible PC
- 17" Monitor
- Pentium 4 and up
- 1 G RAM or higher
- 100 GB – hard drive, 2 partitions recommended:
 - First partition (i.e. C: Drive), containing the OS installation (minimum 4 GB)
 - Second partition (i.e. D: Drive), containing the *Web Services* system (the majority of the memory)
- Connection to the production network, TCP/IP or Apple Talk
- USB port
- Permanent Internet connection + Fixed IP address

Note: Through the Xerox web site, you can receive a more accurate list of *Hardware Requirements*, relative to your (the Print Provider) estimation of potential Jobs.

Software

- Windows 2003 Server SP 1 Standard Edition, English version, **including IIS** (see the installation of IIS component below) and FTP
- English Internet Explorer 6 or Explorer 7
- English Adobe Acrobat 7.0 or 8.0 Standard Edition (complete package: Acrobat Distiller)
- Adobe CS2 suite (optional and contains English Adobe Acrobat 7.0 or 8.0 Standard Edition. If installed, the standalone English Adobe Acrobat 7.0 or 8.0 Standard Edition is not necessary)
- MS Office 2003 PRO or MS Office 2007 PRO
- WinZip 9.0 or 8.0
- .Net Framework 2.0
- Microsoft WSE 2.0 SP3 Runtime
- E-Mail software (Outlook or Eudora)

Client (Print Buyer)

PC

- PC capable of running Win 2000 or higher
- 128 MB RAM

Software

- Windows 2000 and up
- Internet Explorer 6.0 and up, FireFox 1.5 and up
- Adobe Acrobat Reader 5.0 and up (to use the Modify PDF and Selective Upload options, the Print Buyer must install the complete Adobe Acrobat program)

Note: Problems with templates created in *Adobe Acrobat* may occur if the *Acrobat* version used by the Print Buyer is more recent than the *Acrobat* version residing in the Print Provider server.

- MS Office 2003 and up

MAC

- Mac OS X v10.2
- FireFox 1.5 and up, Safari 1.3 and up
- Adobe Acrobat Reader 4.0 and up

Note: *FireFox* and *Safari* will not be supported for the Print Provider. However, *FireFox* and *Safari* will be supported for the Print Buyer only, with the following limitations:

1. For the *MAC*: Downloads will not be supported except for the *Print Driver*.
2. *Form Editor* can be used only with IE 6.0 and up for PC.

Checklist

In order to work with *Web Services*, the following must be installed or connected:

- **The Network** If the network was not installed during the Windows 2003 Server or Windows 2000 Server installation, consult the local System Administrator. If the network has already been installed, ensure that the PC has access to all printers
- **Apple Talk** Only when required
- **Internet** Ensure that, at this point, you have a connection to the Internet. If the server will be exposed to external customers, ensure that HTTP/HTTPS requests through Port 80 and 443 are allowed to reach the server
- **Monitor** In order to view the Print Provider-side web pages properly, set the monitor setting of the client PC (any PC that is being used to surf to *Web Services* server) to a minimum of 1024 X 768 pixels. The Font size must be in Normal size (96 DPI). The minimum for viewing the Print Buyer web pages is 800X600 pixels

Generic Pricing Mechanism

Web Services supports a 5-level pricing model. This mechanism comes into action whenever a customer clicks on the *Get Price* button located in the *Shopping Cart* window. In order to calculate and display the price,

- **Production Cost Pricing** This is the basic pricing method. The system calculates the Job price according to the cost of labor, raw materials (paper) and finishing. These parameters are defined in the *Stock Library*, *Finishing*, *Output Devices* windows (see: *Settings*).

Note: The Print Provider has the ability to disable this pricing method.

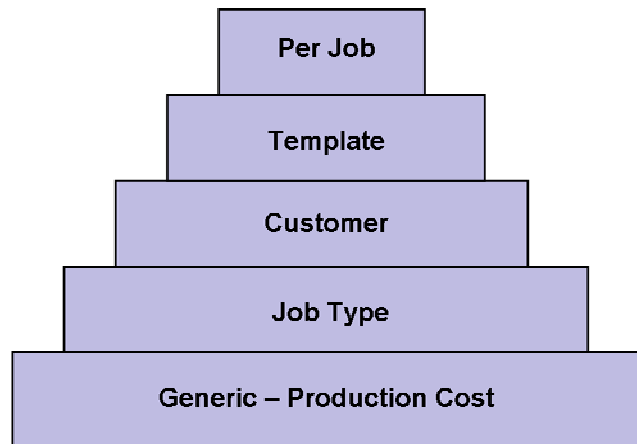
- **Job Type Pricing** – The Print Provider has the ability to price a specific *Job Ticket* (i.e. brochure, one side single fold; see *Section II: Job Type*, on page 142). This method carries out pricing according to *Price Lists*. the system employs one of the following 5 methods:
- **Template Pricing** – Rather than pricing a *Job Type*, the Print Provider can price a specific template for a specific customer. Moreover, the Print Provider has the ability to price the same template differently, for different customers.
- **Per Job Pricing** – For certain Jobs, the Print Provider may not want the Print Buyer to receive an automatic, online pricing. In such cases the Print Buyer will receive a *Price Not Available* message. The Print Provider can view the Job and its properties and only then determine the Job's price. After determining the Job's price, the Print Provider can manually enter the price into the system (*Track Jobs /Saved Jobs* and *Ready to Order Jobs/Pricing*).

Note: *Per Job* pricing is also used in situations where the Print Buyer has changed the default parameters of a *Job Type* (added finishing, changed the size, etc.) and the system cannot produce an automated price. In these cases, *Price N/A* (not available) appears in the *Price* field and the Print Buyer receives a *Contact the Print Provider* message regarding the Job price. The Print Provider then uses the *Per Job* pricing option to price the Job.

- **Customer Pricing** The Print Provider can define a separate pricing for a specific Print Buyer. This pricing option is much more powerful than a standard discount for a Print Buyer, especially since it can be combined with an *Excel*-based price calculation.

Note: In addition to the generic pricing options, *Web Services* offers two more pricing methods, which are a part of the *Web Services Links* optional module and are acquired independent of the system: *Excel Pricing* and *External Pricing*. For more information on these pricing options, consult your local distributor.

The *Web Services* pricing model is hierarchical. The system first verifies the presence of *Per Job* pricing. If *Per Job* pricing exists, this is the price that is displayed to the Print Buyer. If *Per Job* pricing does not exist, the system will first search for *Customer* pricing, then *Template* pricing and finally for *Job Ticket* pricing. If no pricing model has been selected, the system will calculate the price according to production costs.



Production Cost Pricing

As explained in the *Introduction*, where there is no *Customer*, *Job Ticket*, *Template* or *Per Job* pricing, the system calculates the price of the Job according to the following production costs: *Output Device*, *Stock Library*, and *Finishing*.

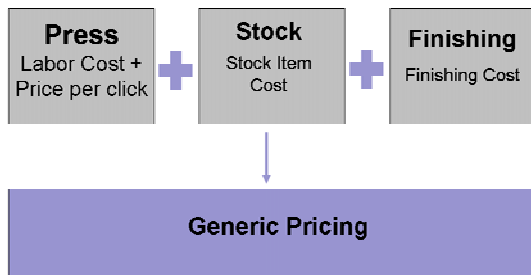


Figure 213: Generic Pricing Model

Output Device Pricing

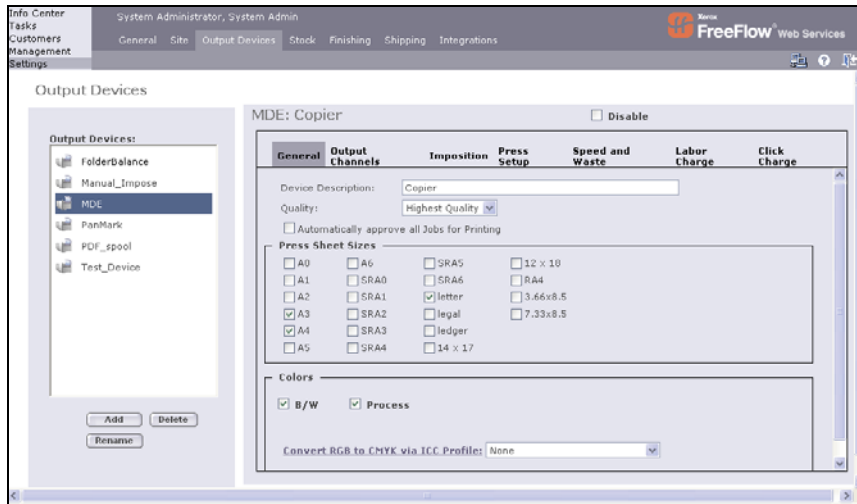


Figure 214: Output Devices

Below are the parameters that are considered in the calculation of the output device price. The parameters are divided into groups according to the various *Output Device* windows:

General Parameters

- **Quality** – The *Quality* type
- **Press Sheet Sizes** – The selected *Press Sheet* sizes
- **Colors** – *Black/White*, *Process Colors* and/or *Spot colors*
- **Color Units** – The number of *Color* units
- **Convert RGB to CMYK via ICC Profile** – Whether or not *RGB* colors are converted to *CMYK* colors

Press Setup Parameters

- **Setup Time** – The initial setup time of the output device
- **Pass Setup Time** – The time necessary to prepare each machine pass
- **Print Head Setup Time** – The time that is added to the *Pass Setup* time and necessary for setting up each *Print Head* in the output device (this configuration is only available for *Offset* output devices)

Speed and Waste Parameters (Offset Machine)

- **Fixed Waste** – The fixed amount of spoiled sheets resulting from color calibration and registration in pre-printing and the printing process itself.
- **Run Length** – The total number of *Press Sheets* for the Job (taken from *Job Ticket*)
- **Speed** (Run Sheets/hour) – The number of *Run Sheets* per hour for a specific *Run* length
- **Run Length Waste Factor** – Wasted paper as a percentage of the run length (*Run* length - the number of run sheets to be printed). The system generates a continuous function that calculates the waste according to the parameters that were entered (these parameters are for a specific quantity, therefore, the system has to create the function).

- **Process Colors Speed Factor** – The percentage of speed reduction when using *Process* colors (i.e. when a value of 95% is entered, the speed is reduced by 5%)
- **Process Colors Waste Factor** – The effect on the *Run Length Waste*, when using *Process* colors (i.e. if the *Run Length Waste* is 5% and *Waste Factor Process Colors* is 110%, then the waste will be: $110\% \times 5\% = 5.5\%$)

Note: This factor affects the *Fixed Waste* as well.

- **Spot Colors Speed Factor** – The percentage of speed reduction when using *Spot* colors
- **Spot Colors Waste Factor** – The effect on the *Run Length Waste*, when using *Spot* colors

Note: This factor affects the *Fixed Waste* as well

- **Paper Weight Speed Factor** – The percentage of speed reduction when using a specific weight of paper (i.e. when a value of 90% is entered, the speed is reduced by 10%)
- **Paper Weight Waste Factor** – The effect on the *Run Length Waste*, when using different weights of paper (i.e. if the *Run Length Waste* is 5% and *Waste Weight Factor* is 120%, then the waste will be: $120\% \times 5\% = 6.0\%$)

Note: This factor affects the *Fixed Waste* as well.

Speed and Waste Parameters (Digital Machine)

- **Paper Weight** – Range determined by *Min* and *Max* parameters
- **Speed by Paper Size** – The number of *Run Sheets* per hour
- **Process Colors Speed Factor** – The percentage of speed reduction when using *Process* colors (i.e. when a value of 95% is entered, the speed is reduced by 5%)
- **Spot Colors Speed Factor** – The percentage of speed reduction when using *Spot* colors
- **Duplex Mode** – The percentage of speed reduction when working in the *Duplex* mode



Formula: $\text{Speed Factor} = \text{Speed Factor Process Colors} \times \text{Speed Factor Spot Colors} \times \text{Speed Factor Paper Weight}$

$\text{Speed} = \text{Speed Factor} \times \text{Machine Speed}$

$\text{Run Sheet Time} = \text{Number of Press Sheets} \times (1 + \text{Waste Rate}) / \text{Speed} \times 60.$

$\text{Pass Time} = \text{Setup Time} + \text{Number Of Passes} \times (\text{Pass Setup Time} + \text{Run Sheet Time})$

$\text{Total Labor Cost} = (\text{Pass Time} + \text{Print Head Setup Time} \times \text{Number Of Plates}) \times \text{Labor}$

$\text{Cost}/60 \times (\text{Per Device Markup}/100) + \text{Plate Fee} \times \text{Number Of Plates} + \text{Process Wash-up}$

$\text{Cost} \times \text{Number Of Process Colors} + \text{Spot Wash-up Cost} \times \text{Number Of Spot Color}$



Formula: $\text{Waste Factor} = (\text{Process Color Waste Factor}) \times (\text{Spot Color Waste Factor}) \times (\text{Paper Weight Waste Factor})$

$\text{Waste Rate} = (\text{Run Length Waste Factor}) + (\text{Fixed Waste} / \# \text{ of Press Sheets}) \times$

Waste Factor

Stock Price = (Cost/Cost-Units) X # of Press Sheets X Total Mark Up X Waste Rate

Labor Charge Parameters

- **Mark-up** – The mark-up, as a percentage, for labor. The margin above the costs of labor (i.e. if the costs of labor amounts to \$100 and the mark-up is 25%, the total price will be: \$100 + \$25% X 100 = \$125)
- **Plate Fee** – The cost of a single *Plate*
- **Labor Cost** – The Print Provider's labor cost per hour
- **Min. Labor** – The Print Provider's minimum labor time per Job
- **Process Wash-Up Cost** – The cost of washing up the *Offset* output device, after using *Process* colors
- **Spot Wash-Up Cost** – The cost of washing up the *Offset* output device, after using *Spot* colors

Note: Plate Fee, Process Wash-Up and Spot Wash-Up parameters are relevant only for Offset machines.

Click Charge Parameters

In the case of a digital output device, below are the parameters that are considered in the calculation of the *Click* charge:

- **Mark Up** – The mark-up, as a percentage, for using the output device (the margin above the *Click* costs that the Print Provider pays to the output device manufacturer)
- **Click Cost** – Costs that the Print Provider pays to the output device manufacturer. These costs take into account *Print Sheet* size and the use of *Color and Black/White* pages.

Stock Pricing

Stock pricing retrieves data according to the parameters that the Print Provider enters into the *Stock Library New Item* and *Edit Item* dialog boxes.

The screenshot displays the 'Edit Item - Web Page Dialog' for a stock item. The dialog is titled 'Edit Item - Web Page Dialog' and has a close button (X). It contains the following fields and options:

- ☒ In Stock
- Brand Name: Warren Lustro (with an 'Edit List' link)
- Type: Paper (with an 'Edit List' link)
- Vendor: Royal Paper Products (with an 'Edit List' link)
- Front Coating: Coated (with an 'Edit List' link)
- Back Coating: Coated (with an 'Edit List' link)
- Texture: Gloss (with an 'Edit List' link)
- Grade: Gloss-coated paper" (with an 'Edit List' link)
- Color: White (with an 'Edit List' link)
- Weight(gsm): 150
- US Weight: 0
- Size: A0 (with a dropdown arrow)
- Thickness(ppi):
- Cost(\$): 100.00
- Cost Units: 1000.00
- Markup: 15%

At the bottom of the dialog are 'Save' and 'Close' buttons. The background shows the 'Stock Library' interface with a search bar set to 'All' and a list of items including 'Test-Laid', 'Coated;Gloss;Test-Gloss;White;3', and 'Uncoated;Laid;Test-Laid;White;80'. The top of the application window shows 'System Administrator, System Admin' and 'FreeFlow Web Services'.

Figure 215: Pricing Setup: Stock

Below are the parameters that are considered in the calculation of the *Stock* price:

- **Markup** – The total markup, as a percentage, for paper. The margin above the *Cost* price (i.e. if the *Cost* price is \$100 and the markup is 25%, the total price will be: $\$100 + \$25\% \times 100 = \$125$).
- **Color** – The *Color* name of the paper
- **Weight, Thickness** – The weight and thickness of the paper, whereby weight is considered in gsm and thickness is considered in ppi
- **Size** – Size of the *Parent Sheet*
- **Cost** – The cost, in the indicated currency, of the paper in bulk
- **Cost Units** – Number of sheets in bulk (see *Estimating Bulk Size*, page 289)
- **Front and Back Coating**
- **Texture**
- **Grade** – The grade of the paper

Finishing Pricing

System Administrator, System Admin

General Site Output Devices Stock **Finishing** Shipping Integrations

FreeFlow® Web Services

Pricing Setup: Finishing

Select Finishing Type:

- Cutting
- Collating
- Drilling
- Folding
- Numbering
- Stapling
- Perfect Binding
- Comb Binding
- Laminating

Disabled

	Setup(\$)	Cut Setup(\$)	Cut Cost(\$)	Cut Depth(Inches)
Run Sheets:	2.00	2.00	0.10	2
Parent Sheets:	2.00	2.00	0.10	2

OK

Figure 216: Pricing Setup: Stock

Below are the parameters that are considered in the calculation of the *Finishing* price:

Cutting Parameters

- **Setup Cost** – The *Setup* cost for preparing the cutting machine, both for *Parent* and *Press Sheets*
- **Cut Setup Cost** – The cost of setting up the cut machine for each cut
- **Cut Cost** – The cost of each cut (each time the knife is activated)
- **Cut Depth** – The depth of each cut (each time the knife is activated)



Formula: Cutting Cost = Setup Cost + # of Cuts Per Job X (Cut Setup Cost + (Bulk/Cut Depth) X Cut Cost)

Note: Independent calculations are entered for both the *Press Sheet* and for the *Parent Sheet*.

Collating Parameters

- **Setup Cost** – The *Setup* cost for preparing the collating machine
- **Collating Cost per Number of Sheets** – The cost of collating a predetermined number of sheets



Formula: Collating Cost = Setup + Collating Cost Per Sheet X # of Copies

Drilling Parameters

- **Setup Cost** – The setup cost for preparing the drilling machine
- **Drill Setup Cost** – The cost of setting up the drill
- **Drill Depth** – The depth of each drill (each time the driller is going down)
- **Drill Cost** – The cost of each drill (each time the driller is going down)



Formula: Drilling Cost = Setup Cost + # of drills per copy X (Drill Setup Cost + (Bulk/Drill Depth) X Drill Cost)

Folding Parameters

- **Setup Cost** – The *Setup* cost for preparing the folding machine
- **Fold Setup Cost** – The cost of setting up one fold
- **Cost Per Sheets** – The cost of folding a predetermined number of sheets



Formula: Folding Cost = Setup Cost + Fold Set-up Cost + Folding Cost for one sheet X # of copies.

Numbering Parameters

- **Setup Cost** – The setup cost for preparing the *Numbering* machine
- **Cost Per Sheets** – The cost of numbering a predetermined number of sheets



Formula: Numbering Cost = Setup Cost + Numbering cost per sheet X # of copies.

Note: Independent calculations are entered for both *Crash* and *Regular* numbering.

Stapling Parameters

- **Setup Cost** – The setup cost for preparing the *Stapling* machine
- **Staple Setup Cost** – The cost of setting up *Stapling*, per staple.
- **Cost (Bulk)** – The cost of stapling in bulk (see *Estimating Bulk Size*, page 289)

Estimating Bulk Size

In order to estimate the *Bulk* size, *Web Services* employs one of the two methods:

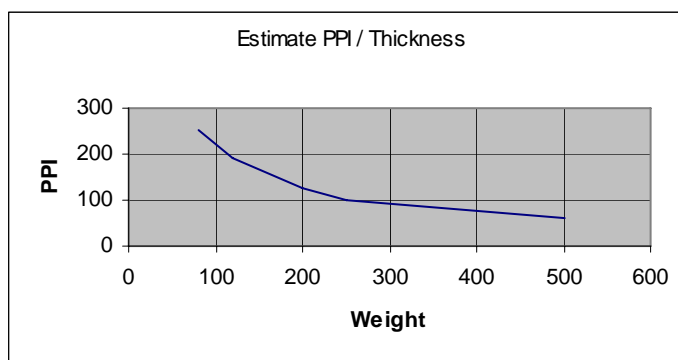
In cases where thickness was entered when defining the paper, the *Bulk* is calculated as: $Bulk = (1/ppi) \times \# \text{ of Sheets}$.

In cases where no thickness was entered, *Web Services* uses a default function in order to estimate the *Bulk* size (i.e. where no thickness was entered and the paper weight is 250 grams, the estimated PPI will be 102).

The default values are as follows:

The function will be:

Paper Weight (gm)	PPI
80	254
120	192
200	127
250	102
500	60



Formula: $\text{Stapling Cost} = \text{Setup Cost} + \# \text{ of Staples per copy} \times (\text{Staple Set-up Cost} + \# \text{ Of copies per Job} \times \text{Bulk})$.

Note: Independent calculations are entered for both *Flat* and *Saddle* stitching.

Perfect Binding Parameters

- **Setup Cost** – The *Machine Setup* charges for hot or cold glue binding
- **Cost** – The cost of *Perfect Binding* for one copy



Formula: $\text{Perfect Binding Cost} = \text{Setup Cost} + \text{Bulk Cost} \times \# \text{ of copies per Job}$.

Note: Independent calculations are entered for both *Hot* and *Cold* binding.

Comb Binding Parameters

- **Setup Cost** – The *Setup* cost of the machine
- **Cost (Bulk)** – The cost of *Comb Binding* according to bulk



Formula: Comb Binding Cost = Setup Cost+ Bulk Cost X # of copies per Job.

Note: Independent calculations are entered for *Plastic*, *Aluminum* and *Gold* binding.

Laminating Parameters

- **Set -up Cost** – The *Setup* cost of the machine
- **Cost (One Side) per Sheets** – The cost of laminating one side of a sheet according to a predetermined number of sheets



Formula: Laminating Cost = Setup Cost + Laminating cost per one side X # of sides X # of copies per Job

Note: Independent calculations are entered for both *Matt* and *Gloss* lamination.

The Job Price

The Job price, when calculated according to the generic pricing model, is the sum total of *Total Press Cost*, *Total Labor Cost* and *Total Finishing Cost* as calculated in the former paragraphs. From this price, the system calculates the customer's discount, where such discounts exist. The system also adds on to this price the cost of urgent or express premium, where such premiums exist, as well as tax rates.

Anti-virus Scanning

In order to carry out an anti-virus scan, without restarting *Web Services*, the following files must be excluded from the scan:

- D:\Newsway\global.asa
- D:\Newsway\setup.inc

To exclude the above files, in the Norton Antivirus Corporate Edition, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Double-click on the *Norton Antivirus* icon (in the *Windows* status bar, on the bottom-right of the screen); the *Norton Antivirus Corporate Edition* window appears.
- 2 Click on *Scan > Scan Computer*; the *Scan Computer* pane appears.
- 3 Click on *Options*; the *Scan Options* window appears.
- 4 In the *Scan Options* window, checkmark the *Exclude files and folders* checkbox and click on *Exclusions*; the *Exclusions* window appears.
- 5 Checkmark the *Check file for exclusion before scanning* checkbox.
- 6 Click on *Files/Folders*; the *Select Items* window appears.
- 7 Browse to and checkmark the appropriate files listed above.
- 8 Click on *OK* in the three opened windows: *Select Items*, *Exclusions* and *Scan Options* and then close the *Norton Antivirus Corporate Edition* window.

For a more detailed explanation regarding the exclusion process and for explanations regarding this process with different anti-virus programs, contact your anti-virus distributor.

Parent Customer

The following section describes the *Parent Customer* feature, which enables Print Providers to determine a “Parent/Son” relationship between Print Buyer customers who are commercially united. With the *Parent Customer* option, the “Parent” customer possesses a library of templates and images, which the “Son” can access in its entirety.

Significant advantages of the *Parent Customer* feature are as follows:

- Saves time in copying and pasting templates from one customer to another
- Saves Print Provider hard disk space as the library resides only once (in the “Parent” folder) and the “Son” goes to this library in order to access templates and images
- When a “Parent” carries out a property change in one of the templates, all of the “Sons” immediately gain access to this change
- More than one “Parent”, with his own “Sons”, can be defined in the system (although a “Son” customer cannot be assigned to more than one “Father” customer)

Print Provider Side

Configuring the “Parent”

The *Parent Customer* dropdown box appears in the *Management Customers Account* window.

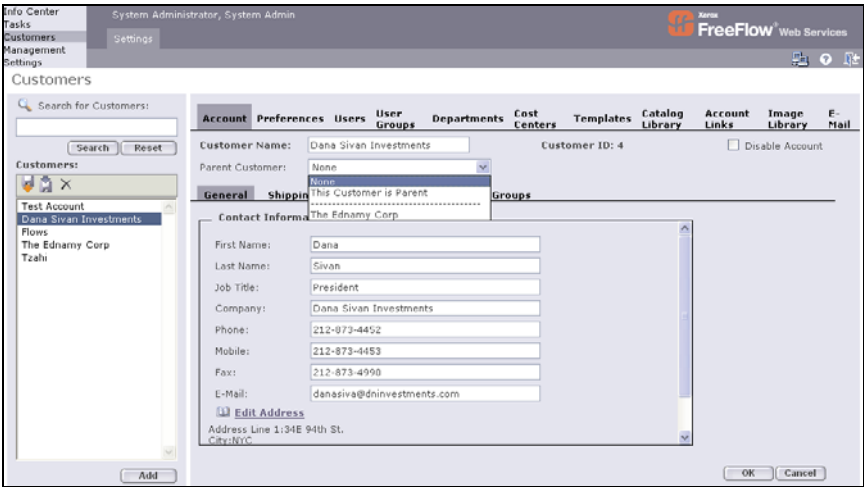


Figure 217: Management Customer Accounts Window

The Print Provider configures which customer is the “Parent” by carrying out the following steps:

- 1 In the *Customers* pane (on the left), click on the customer that has been targeted as the “Parent”; the name of the customer appears in the *Customer Name* field.
- 2 Click on the *Parent Customer* dropdown box; the following *Parent Customer* options appear:
 - **None** – which signifies that the customer is neither a “Parent” nor a “Son”.
 - **This Customer is Parent** – which signifies that the customer is a “Parent”.
 - *Parent Customers* list, which displays all of the customers that have been signified as “Parents”.
- 3 Click on **This Customer is Parent** and then click on **OK** to save the settings.

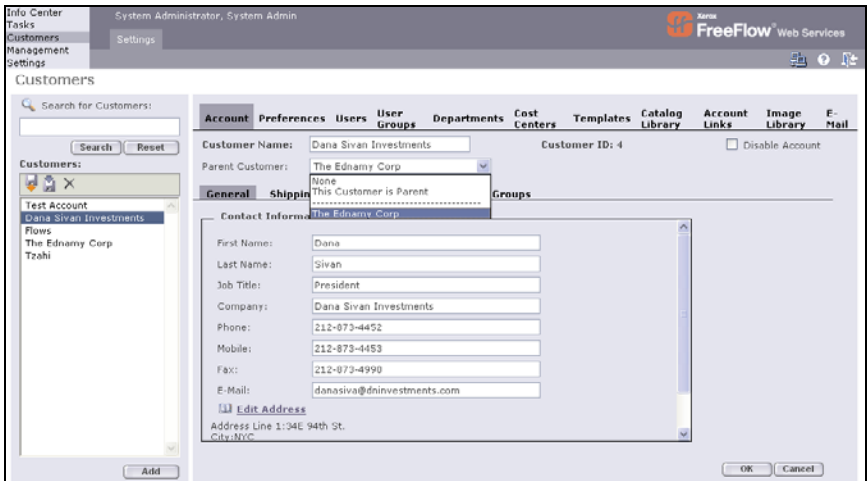


Figure 218: Management Customer Accounts Window – This Customer is Parent

Configuring the “Sons”

The Print Provider configures which customers are the “Sons” by carrying out the following steps:

- 1 In the *Customers* pane (on the left), click on a customer that has been targeted as the “Son”; the name of the customer appears in the *Customer Name* field.
- 2 Click on the *Parent Customer* dropdown box; the following “Parent” options appear:
 - **None** – which signifies that the customer is neither a “Parent” nor a “Son”.
 - **This Customer is Parent** – which signifies that the customer is a “Parent”.
 - *Parent Customers* list, which displays all of the customers that have been signified as “Parents”.
- 3 From the *Parent Customers* list, click on the *Parent Customer* name that has been designated as the “Parent” of this “Son”.
- 4 Repeat steps 1-3, for each “Son”.

Figure 219: Management Customer Accounts Window – Repeat Steps for Each Son

The Print Buyer Side

After a Print Buyer has been designated “Son”, the following tabs appear in the Print Buyer’s *Template Ordering* panel:

- My Templates, which accesses templates that are specific to this Print Buyer only
- Shared Templates, which accesses the “Parent’s” templates

Note: The Print Buyer “Son” cannot change any of the “Parent” template properties

Shared Templates

By clicking on the *Shared Templates* tab, the Print Buyer “Son” can access all of the templates residing in their “Father’s” *Template Library*.

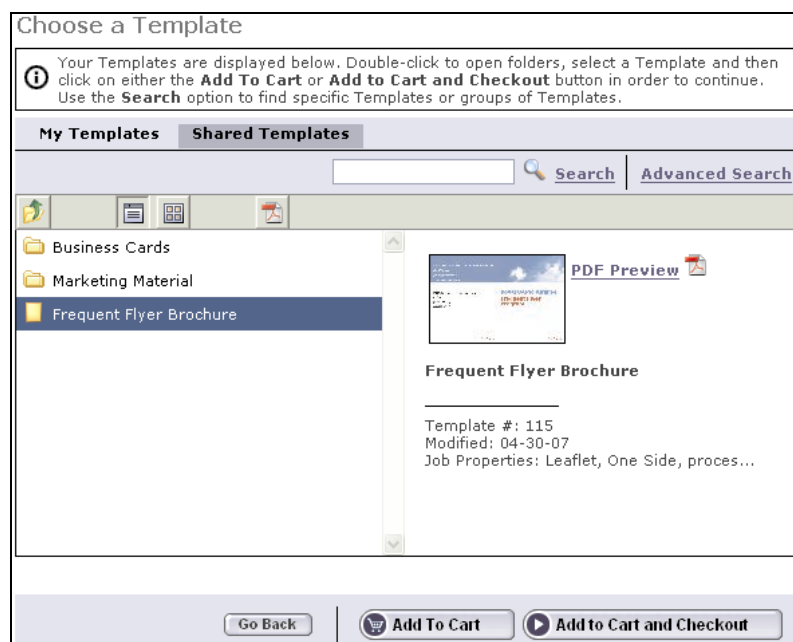


Figure 220: Shared Templates

Images

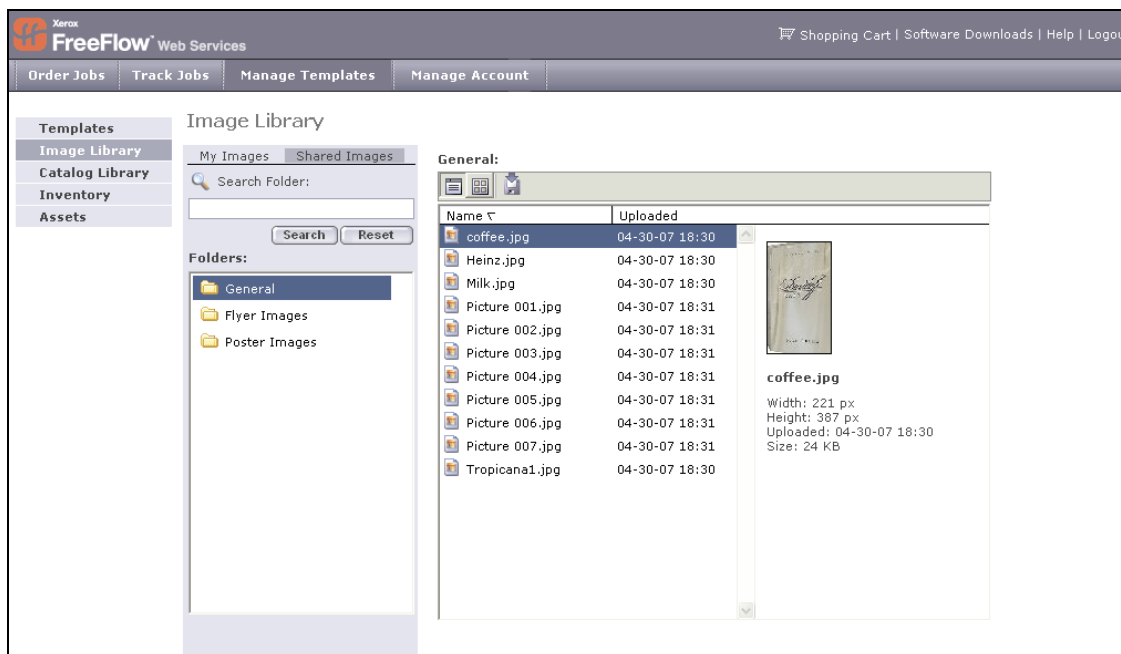


Figure 221: Shared Images

In addition to accessing the “Parent” templates, Print Buyer “Sons” can also access “Parent” images.

To access “Parent” images, carry out the following steps:

- 1 Click on the *Template Admin* button and then the *Image Library* tab; the *Image Library* panel appears.
- 2 Click on the *Shared Images* tab; the “Parent” images can be accessed from the *Folders* pane.

Note: Changes that have taken place as a result of the *Parent Customer* feature, do not affect the “Parent” side; however, the *Shared Images* tab, though non-functional, does appear on the “Parent” side.

Index

A

Access Path..... 82
Account Link 7
Account Link Information 127
Account Link Pane 125, 126
Account Link Panel 125, 127
Account Links..... 69
Address Book 86
Administration User Information..... 90
Administrator Privilege 7
Advanced Search 103, 144, 190
Anti-virus Scanning 308
Approval Queue..... 10, 41, 42, 46
Approval Queue Panel..... 32
Approving a Job for Production..... 46
Asian Fonts 249
Attachments 54
Automatic Spooling 249
Available Fonts Panel 230

B

Based On Production Value Model 220
Batch Order Panel..... 58, 61
Belongs to Group..... 87
Bleeds 41, 227
Branding 82, 137
By Job 259
By Plate 260

C

Calendar Options 217
Carrier Tracking 286
Carriers Window..... 286
Catalog..... 7, 81
Catalog Properties..... 120
Catalogs
 e-Mail Options 124
 Export HTML 120, 193
 Send as e-Mail 120
 Workflow Parameters 121
Change Icon..... 99
Change Image Button 160
Change Job Status Dialog Box 148
Change Status 150
Change Status Button 148
Changing the Account Link Status from Closed to Paid
 127
Changing the Job Status..... 151
Channels Panel 186
Checkbox 7

Checkmark 7
Clean Up 26
Clearing An Account Link 127
Click Charge 242, 274, 303
Close Link..... 126
Collating..... 173
Collating Panel..... 281
Color Bar..... 263
Color Bar File 262
Column Selection..... 103, 191
Column Selection Dialog Box 57
Column Selection Link 139
Column Selection Panel..... 139
Comb Binding Panel..... 284
Comb Binding Sub-Panel..... 174
Combined Job 33
Command Dropdown Menu..... 142
Commit Change 150
Compatibility 231
Concertina (Z-Fold) 171
Concertina Fold..... 167, 171
Configuration Panel 96
Configuring the Speed and Waste Parameters 265
Connections Link 27
Connections Panel..... 215
Contact Information 234
Contacts Pane..... 87
Copier Output Device 7
Copier Speed and Waste Panel 269
Cost Centers 69
Cost-effective Output Device Selection..... 255
Crash Numbering 7, 179
Credit Card..... 76, 80, 291
Credit Card Payment..... 291
Custom Finishing 179
Custom Fold Panel..... 168
Custom Paper Size Panel 228
Customer Administrator Elements 71
Customer List..... 66
Customer Logos..... 82
Customer Pane 65, 66
Customer Panels..... 69
Customer Pricing Model 77, 78
Customer Search Engine..... 66
Customers Window..... 65
Customize Contact and Address Fields..... 233
Customize Link..... 202
Cutting Panel..... 280

D

Data Export 290

Data Export	8
Database Log In	216
Date and Time Format	217
Default Language Dropdown Menu	229
<i>Default Shipping Method</i>	73
Default Template View	81
Defining Expiration Dates for Pricing and the Tax Rate	154
Delivery	26, 122
Delivery Calendar	222
Delivery Window	56
Department List	94
Departments	93
Designer Privilege	7
Dialog Box	7
Digital Labor Charge	272
Digital Labor Charge Panel	272
Digital Output Device	7
Digital Printing Button	105
Drilling Panel	281
Drilling Sub-panel	175
Dropdown Box	7
Duplex Mode	41, 249, 268, 271

E

Edit Address	71, 85
Edit Imposition	41, 52
Edit Imposition Link	291
Edit link	58
Edit Properties	106, 147, 152, 193
Edit Properties Window	192
Electronic Direct Debit	76
E-Mail	132
E-Mail Account Panel	223
Estimating Bulk Size	306
Event	132
Event Contact	225
Event Contacts	133
Excel Pricing	78, 287
Excel Report	140
Export Customer	67
Express Print Time	220
External Customer ID	67
External Systems	292

F

Factor	8
File Upload	216
Finishing Panel	172
Finishing Price	304
Finishing Type Pane	280
Finishing Window	279
Fixed Waste	265
Flat Page Size	8, 168

Flat Page Size Panel	182
Flat Stapling	172, 283
Fold Creation Boxes	168
Folder Balance	8, 253
Folder Balance Sub-panel	250, 251
Folder Type	
FTP	251
Local	251
Network	251
Folding panel	166
Folding Panel	169, 282
Fonts Window	230
Footer Images	218
FreeFlow Web Services	8
FreeFlow Web Services Operation Tabbed Bar	19
FreeFlow Web Services Toolbox	18, 19
FreeFlow Web Services Toolbox Buttons	18
FreeFlow Web Services Version Link	28
FTP and Network Folder Type	255

G

Gap	168
Gate Fold	167, 170, 171
General Pane	165
General Panel	70, 246
General Sub-panel	164
Generic Pricing Mechanism	299
Get Quote Link	291
Group	89
GSM	8
GUI Version	81
Gutters	42, 227

H

Hidden Price	33
Hide Price from Customer	76
Hide Shipping Price	76
Home Page	
Image Parameters	210
Personalizing Texts	210
Supplementary Options	206

I

ICC Profile	246
ICC Profiles	247
Image Library Window	99
Image Folder Images	130
Image Library	129
Import Customers	67
Import/Export Resources	293
Imposition	8
Imposition by Plate	259
Imposition Link	44

Imposition Optimization	259
Imposition Orientation	258
Imposition Panel	256, 257
Imposition Proof	46
Imposition Schemes	45
In Process	143, 146
Info Center	25
Integrations	290
Interface Language Pane	229
Interface Language Window	229
Inventory	137, 189, 197
Inventory Information Dialog Box	196
IP Filter	84, 237

J

JDF Intent	251
JDF Process	251
Job Details Columns	139
Job Expiration	232
Job Info panel	35
Job Info Panel	32, 35
Job Information	147
Job Information Panel	36, 52, 146, 191, 192
Job Order Link	291
Job Page Size	8
Job Price	307
Job Shipped Link	291
Job Status Bar Tabs	138
Job Status Panel	57, 139, 149
Job Subtype List	157, 187
Job Subtype Pane	158
Job Subtype Toolbar	159
Job Tax Rate	154, 195
Job Thumbnail	33
Job Ticket	8, 32, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 153
Job Ticket Creation	38
Job Ticket Creation Window	37, 153
Job Ticket Footer	40
Job Ticket Groups	187
Job Ticket Header	40
Job Tracking	138
Job Type Icon	160, 161
Job Type Library	157
Job Type Library	137, 156
Job Type Library Taskbar	163
Job Type Pane	157
Jobs for Delivery	57
Jobs for Delivery Panel	57, 60
Jobs For Delivery Panel	57
Jog	105

L

Label and Marks	260
-----------------------	-----

Labeling an Order Package	61
Labels and Marks	44
Labor Charge	242
Labor Charge Panel	272
Labor Cost/Hour	272, 273
Laminating	177
Laminating Panel	285
Launch Pad	8, 81
Layout Image	168
Layout Information Panel	51
Layout Maker	36, 51, 52
Local Folder Type	254
Local System Messages	25
Local System Messages Panel	25
Low-res PDF	147

M

Machine Panel	245
MailToPrint	
Approval Parameters	113
e-Mail Options	114
Make Ready	263
Management Window	137
Manager Privilege	9
Manual Impose	9, 43
Manual Impose Panel	243, 244
Manual Pricing	9
Margins	41
Mark as Paid	126
Markup	9
Mark-up	272
Mark-up	273
Min Labor	272, 273
Mismatch	33, 106
Mismatch Warning	226

N

New Account Link	126
New Link	126
Notes	40
Numbering Panel	282
Numbering Sub-panel	178

O

Oblige PO Number	76
Offset Labor Charge	273
Offset Labor Charge Panel	273
Offset Output Device	9
Offset Speed and Waste Pane	265
Offset Speed and Waste Panel	264
Operator Privilege	9
Order Change Dialog Box	150
Order Jobs Page	81

Ordering From Inventory	194
Output Bin.....	105
Output Channel	9
Output Channels Panel.....	248
Output Device	9
Output Device Machine Types.....	239
Output Device Parameter Panel	241
Output Devices	240
Output Devices Pane.....	240
Output Devices Window	239
Outsource.....	36, 47, 52
Outsource e-Mail	50
Outsource e-Mail Message.....	48
Outsource e-Mail Sent Dialog Box	48
Outsourcing e-Mail	47
Outsourcing Information.....	49

P

Page.....	9
Page Delivery.....	105
Paper Name.....	160, 161
Paper Selection Panel.....	183
Paper Size List Panel	228
Paper Sizes Window	227
Paper Type	162
Paper Type Sub-panel.....	160
Paper Types Available Panel	160
Paper Weight (gsm)	269
Parent Customer.....	70, 309
Parent Sheet	9
Parent Size	35
Partner Print Provider	47
Pass Setup Time.....	241, 263
Payment Method	76, 143
PDF Preview	74, 147
PDF Proof Icon	33
PDF Spool Sub-panel.....	249
PDF Spooler.....	9
PDF Upload Panel	226
Perfect Binding Panel	283
Perfect Binding Sub-panel	176
Personal Preview Icon.....	165
Personal User	87
Personalizing Images	209
Plate Fee.....	273
PO Payment Method.....	76
Post Script File.....	250
Pre-determined Fold.....	166
Preferences.....	69
Preferences Panel.....	74
Preflight	53
Press Setup Pane	263
Press Setup Sub-panel.....	263

Press Sheet Margins	261
Press Sheet Setup Panel.....	267
Press Sheet Sizes Sub-panel.....	247
Previewing and Printing an Account Link	128
Price Error	33
Price List	285
Price-setting Elements.....	220
Pricing	153
Pricing	76
Pricing Button	109, 184, 194
Pricing Panel	109
Pricing Panel Elements.....	185
Pricing Set-up.....	280
Pricing Setup Panel	280
Print Buyer User-Privileges	21
Print Driver	10, 74
Print Driver Icon	33
Print Head Setup Time	241, 263
Print Provider Accounts	235
Print to File.....	250
Printing Queue Pane.....	48
Printing Queue Panel.....	32, 55
Printing Queue Panel Icons	55
Printing to Inventory	194
Private Messages	25
Privileges.....	231
Problem	36
Process Colors.....	10, 186
Process or Spot Colors	268
Process Wash-up Cost.....	273
Produce JDF Output.....	251
Production	26
Production Cost Pricing	10
Production Factors	268, 271
Production Properties Window	226
Production Window	32
Properties for Job Subtype Panel.....	157, 158
Public Messages	25
Public User.....	87

Q

Quantity.....	180
Quantity Panel.....	180
Quantity Setup.....	181
Queue Selection	252

R

Received Queue	61
Regular Print Time.....	222
Re-impose	10
Remote Support.....	217
Renaming a Job Subtype.....	159
Reprint Window	147

Returning a Job From the Printing Queue to the Approval Queue	46
RIP	10
Root Folder	81
Round Currency to the Closest	220
Run	10
Run Length	265
Run Size	10, 41
S	
Saddle Stitching	172, 283
Search	58, 102, 190
Search By Dropdown Menu	142, 143
Search Engine	87
Search Options	141
Search Window	141
Searching for a User	236
Searching Jobs by Number	143
Searching Jobs by Word/Letter	144
Security Dialog Box	253
Security Settings	253
Selective Upload	10, 74
Self Registration	74
Send e-Mail Panel	224
Server Specifications	297
Setting the Quantity of Flat Pages in the One Side Mode	165
Setting the Quantity of Flat Pages in the Two Sides Mode	166
Settings	213
Settings General Windows	214
Setup Time	263
Setup Time (Make Ready)	241
Sheet Wise	10, 41, 260
Shipped Deliveries Panel	61
Shipped Jobs Panel	60
Shipping	286
Shipping and Billing	72, 86
Shipping Cost Calculator	60
Shipping Costs Calculator	58
<i>Shipping Method</i>	73
Shipping Method Groups	289
Shipping Methods	287
Shipping Window	60
Simple Job Pricing	184
Single Fold	167, 169
Site	234
Skin	82
Special Tax Rate	109
Specific Folder	81
Speed and Waste	266
Speed and Waste Panel	264, 267
Speed and Waste Parameters	265
Speed by Paper Size (Run Sheets Per Hour)	269
Speed Parameters	269
Digital Output Device	267
Speed Parameters According to the Paper Weights	268, 271
Spot Channels	186
Spot Colors	10, 186
Spot Wash-up Cost	273
SSL	216
Stapling Panel	172, 283
Status Bar	19
Status Icon	19
Stock Pricing	303
Super User Privilege	10
Supervisor Privilege	11
Surcharge	11
Surcharge for Urgent Print Time	220
Synchronize with External Repository	104
System Administrator Privileges	237
System e-Mail	223
System Properties Window	215
System User	87
System Users Privileges	20
T	
Template	11
Template Pricing	109
Template Attributes Button	97
Template Library	81
Template Pricing Dialog Box	194
Template Quantity	110
Template Quantity Buttons	110
Template Tax Rate	195
Templates	69
Templates Attributes	104
Templates Panel	97
Templates Toolbar Buttons	98
Terminology	16
Terms and Conditions Text Panel	238
Terms and Conditions Window	238
Track Jobs	138
Tracking Number	58
Type One Fonts	11
U	
Urgency Surcharge	220
Urgent Print Time	220
Use FTP Multi-File Upload	100
User Information Fields	84
User Privilege	11
User Search Engine	84
Users List	83
Users Pane	235
Users Panel	83

Users Parameters Panel..... 237

V

Variable Data Icon 33

Variable Data Job..... 11

Version..... 26

W

Warning.....26

Waste..... 11

Workflow Policy Button97

